wishyou.today learning

chinese hsk 4 in 69 days

The whole course on paper: all 1001 new words with their meanings and examples, every grammar pattern and every dialogue.

Free, with audio, games and progress tracking, at wishyou.today/learning

contents

1. day 1 · what they look like
2. day 2 · who's who
3. day 3 · what are they like?
4. day 4 · better, or not as good
5. day 5 · a life story
6. day 6 · dreams & goals
7. day 7 · Anna's new neighbour
8. day 8 · excuse me…
9. day 9 · at the bank
10. day 10 · rules & notices
11. day 11 · help!
12. day 12 · messages & parcels
13. day 13 · sorting it out
14. day 14 · a very long Monday
15. day 15 · how do you feel?
16. day 16 · what on earth?
17. day 17 · what do you think?
18. day 18 · good friends
19. day 19 · love stories
20. day 20 · making up
21. day 21 · Xiaoming's surprise
22. day 22 · at the market
23. day 23 · cooking at home
24. day 24 · sweet, sour, spicy
25. day 25 · eating out
26. day 26 · a festival dinner
27. day 27 · dinner at Xiaoming's
28. day 28 · running late
29. day 29 · at the station
30. day 30 · how far is it?
31. day 31 · on the road
32. day 32 · a trip away
33. day 33 · seeing the sights
34. day 34 · a weekend in Hangzhou
35. day 35 · how much more?
36. day 36 · shop till you drop
37. day 37 · paying & ordering online
38. day 38 · life online
39. day 39 · business
40. day 40 · is it worth it?
41. day 41 · Anna's online shop
42. day 42 · at the doctor's
43. day 43 · get well soon
44. day 44 · match day
45. day 45 · the winners
46. day 46 · on stage
47. day 47 · books, films & news
48. day 48 · the big match
49. day 49 · family ties
50. day 50 · a flat to rent
51. day 51 · chores
52. day 52 · every morning
53. day 53 · back to the village
54. day 54 · moving house
55. day 55 · exam season
56. day 56 · in class
57. day 57 · university life
58. day 58 · studying well
59. day 59 · job hunting
60. day 60 · at the office
61. day 61 · Anna's first month at work
62. day 62 · weather & climate
63. day 63 · plants & animals
64. day 64 · our planet
65. day 65 · China & the world
66. day 66 · science & discovery
67. day 67 · a trip to Yunnan

The practice exams need sound, so they live online: wishyou.today/learning/language/chinese/hsk-4/exam.html

wishyou.today learning

day 1 what they look like

Chinese HSK 4 in 69 days
unit 1 · people & personality

Describe what someone looks like, and say how much: really, even more, a little, especially, how ...!

Describing people is everyday talk: a colleague in a photo, a friend you are meeting, someone you lost in a crowd.

words

word	pinyin	meaning	example
十分	shífēn	very, really	他对这次的成绩十分满意。 He's really pleased with his results this time.
更加	gèngjiā	even more	你应该更加注意身体。 You should look after your health even more.
稍	shāo	slightly, a moment	请稍等，他马上就来。 One moment, please: he'll be right here.
稍微	shāowēi	a little, slightly	你能说得稍微慢一点儿吗? Could you speak a little more slowly?
尤其	yóuqí	especially	北京的冬天很冷，尤其是晚上。 Winter in Beijing is cold, especially at night.
多么	duōme	how (...!)	今天的天气多么好啊! What lovely weather today!
样子	yàngzi	look, appearance	我不知道他现在长{zhang3}什么样子。 I don't know what he looks like now.
帅	shuài	handsome; cool	你今天穿得真帅! You look really sharp today!
美	měi	beautiful	这里的秋天真美。 Autumn here is really beautiful.
美丽	měilì	beautiful	杭州是一个美丽的城市。 Hangzhou is a beautiful city.
姑娘	gūniang	girl, young woman	那位戴眼镜的姑娘是我的同事。 The young woman with glasses is my colleague.
小伙子	xiǎohuǒzi	young man, lad	这个小伙子工作十分努力。 This young guy works really hard.
戴	dài	wear (glasses, a hat)	外面很冷，戴上帽子吧。 It's cold outside, put a hat on.
眼镜	yǎnjìng	glasses	我的眼镜呢? 我找不到了。 Where are my glasses? I can't find them.
帽子	màozi	hat, cap	这个帽子是我妈妈送给我的。 This hat was a present from my mum.
皮肤	pífū	skin	多喝水对皮肤好。 Drinking plenty of water is good for your skin.
鼻子	bízi	nose	我感冒了，鼻子不舒服。 I've got a cold and my nose is bothering me.
胳膊	gēbo	arm	打了一天篮球，我的胳膊有点儿疼。 After a day of basketball, my arms are a bit sore.

pattern how much: 十分, 更加, 稍微, 尤其, 多么

十分 / 更加 / 稍微 | adjective | (一点儿)

These words sit right before an adjective and say how much. 十分 is a stronger, slightly more formal 很; 更加 is "even more" (a fuller 更); 稍微 is "a little" and likes 一点儿 or 有点儿 with it. 尤其 means "especially", and 多么……啊！ is an exclamation: how …!

这件衣服十分合适。 **zhè jiàn yīfu shífēn héshì** This top fits really well.

她比以前更加努力了。 **tā bǐ yǐqián gèngjiā nǔlì le** She works even harder than before.

请稍等，经理马上就来。 **qǐng shāo děng jīnglǐ mǎshàng jiù lái** One moment, please: the manager will be right here.

你看，大熊猫多么可爱啊！ **nǐ kàn dàxióngmāo duōme kěài a** Look, how cute the giant pandas are!

dialogue anna's new team

xiaoming 这是你和同事们的照片吗？让我看看！
zhè shì nǐ hé tóngshìmen de zhàopiàn ma ràng wǒ kàn kan · Is this you and your colleagues? Let me see!

anna 对，上个星期照的。戴帽子的那个人就是陈经理。
duì shàng gè xīngqī zhào de dài màozi de nàge rén jiù shì Chénjīnglǐ · Yes, we took it last week. The one in the hat is Manager Chen.

xiaoming 陈经理看起来十分年轻啊！
Chénjīnglǐ kàn qǐlai shífēn niánqīng a · Manager Chen looks really young!

anna 是啊。左边那个小伙子是我们的新同事。
shì a zuǒbian nàge xiǎohuǒzi shì wǒmen de xīn tóngshì · Yes. The young guy on the left is our new colleague.

xiaoming 他长得很帅，个子也高，尤其是鼻子，高高的。
tā zhǎng de hěn shuài gèzi yě gāo yóuqí shì bízi gāo gāo de · He's handsome and tall too, especially that nice high nose.

anna 他胳膊长，篮球打得特别好。
tā gēbo cháng lánqiú dǎ de tèbié hǎo · He has long arms, and he's brilliant at basketball.

xiaoming 那个戴眼镜的姑娘呢？她笑得多么开心啊！
nàge dài yǎnjìng de gūniang ne tā xiào de duōme kāixīn a · And the girl with glasses? Look how happily she's smiling!

anna 她是我最好的同事，不但人美，而且十分热情。
tā shì wǒ zuì hǎo de tóngshì búdàn rén měi érqiě shífēn rèqíng · She's my favourite colleague: not only pretty, but really warm too.

xiaoming 你在照片里看起来稍微有点儿累。
nǐ zài zhàopiàn lǐ kàn qǐlai shāowēi yǒudiǎnr lèi · You look a little tired in the photo.

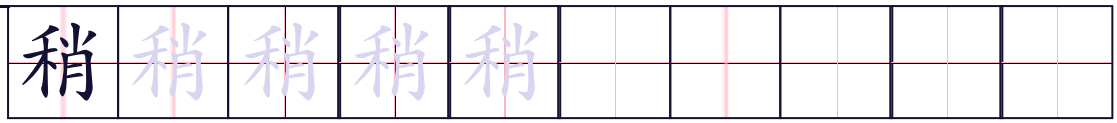
anna 那天我们开了一天的会，当然累了！
nà tiān wǒmen kāi le yì tiān de huì dāngrán lèi le · We'd been in meetings all day, so of course I was tired!

write it trace the grey, then write your own

美
měi
beautiful



稍
shāo
slightly, a moment



good to know · 戴 is for things on your head, face or hands: 戴帽子, 戴眼镜, 戴手表. Clothes and shoes take 穿. 像 (be like) also pairs with 一样: 她像妈妈一样漂亮, she's as pretty as her mum. And 好像 means "seems to".

You can now pick anyone out of a photo, and say it with feeling: 十分帅, 更加漂亮, 多么美啊!
Do this day interactively, with audio and games, free at **wishyou.today/learning**

day 2 who's who

Fill in age, gender and nationality, speak to "everyone", "all kinds" and "anyone", and react with 啊! and 嗯.

Forms, notices and anyone speaking to a group use 各位, 任何 and 年龄 / 性别 / 国籍 all the time.

words

word	pinyin	meaning	example
各	gè	each, every	我们小区住着各国的人。 People from every country live in our neighbourhood.
各位	gèwèi	everyone (polite)	各位，请安静一下。 Everyone, a moment of quiet, please.
各种	gèzhǒng	all kinds of	这家商店有各种水果。 This shop has all kinds of fruit.
各个	gègè	each, every single	各个国家的人都可以参加。 People from every country can take part.
任何	rènhé	any, any at all	你有任何问题，都可以问我。 If you have any questions at all, just ask me.
此	cǐ	this (written)	今天的课就到此结束。 That's the end of today's class.
啊	ā	ah! oh! (surprise)	啊{a1}，我忘了带手机！ Oh! I forgot my phone!
嗯	ńg	mm, uh-huh	嗯，我明白了。 Mm, I see.
年龄	niánlíng	age	请写上你的姓名和年龄。 Please write your name and age.
性别	xìngbié	gender, sex	这里要写性别吗? Do I need to put my gender here?
国籍	guójí	nationality	国籍这里写什么? What do I put here for nationality?
男性	nánxìng	male, men	参加比赛的人里，男性比女性少。 Among the competitors, there are fewer men than women.
女性	nǚxìng	female, women	我们公司女性很多。 There are a lot of women at our company.
男士	nánshì	gentleman, men	跑步比赛男士和女士分开比。 In the running, men and women race separately.
青年	qīngnián	young people, youth	很多青年喜欢在网上买东西。 Lots of young people like shopping online.
少年	shàonián	teenager, youngster	这些少年都喜欢踢足球。 These boys all love playing football.
中年	zhōngnián	middle age	我爸爸已经是中年人了。 My dad is middle-aged now.
老年	lǎonián	old age	公园里有很多老年人在跳舞。 Lots of older people are dancing in the park.

pattern 各, 任何, 此: each, any, this

各位 / 各种 / 各个 | noun | · | 任何 | noun | 都

各 means “each, every”: 各国 (every country), 各位 (everyone here, polite), 各种 (all kinds of), 各个 (each one). 任何 means “any at all” and usually brings 都 or 不 later in the sentence. 此 is a written “this”, as in 到此结束 (it ends here).

各位老师，大家好！ **gèwèi lǎoshī dàjiā hǎo** Hello, teachers!

商店里有各种水果。 **shāngdiàn lǐ yǒu gèzhǒng shuǐguǒ** The shop has all kinds of fruit.

你有任何问题，都可以问我。 **nǐ yǒu rènhé wèntí dōu kěyǐ wèn wǒ** If you have any questions at all, just ask me.

今天的课就到此结束。 **jīntiān de kè jiù dào cǐ jiéshù** That’s the end of today’s class.

dialogue sign-up day

ms zhang 安娜，谢谢你来帮忙！下个星期六我们小区有运动会。
Ānnà xièxie nǐ lái bāngmáng xià gè xīngqīliù wǒmen xiǎoqū yǒu yùndònghuì · Anna, thanks for coming to help! Our neighbourhood has a sports day next Saturday.

anna 不客气。我要做什么?
búkèqi wǒ yào zuò shénme · You’re welcome. What shall I do?

ms zhang 邻居们来的时候，请他们写上姓名、年龄和性别。
línjūmen lái de shíhou qǐng tāmen xiě shàng xìngmíng niánlíng hé xìngbié · When the neighbours come, ask them to write their name, age and gender.

anna 嗯，国籍也要写吗？这里有很多外国人。
ǹg guójí yě yào xiě ma zhèlǐ yǒu hěn duō wàiguó rén · Mm, do they write their nationality too? There are lots of foreigners here.

ms zhang 对，各个国家的人都欢迎。少年、青年、中年、老年，任何人都可以参加。
duì gègè guójiā de rén dōu huānyíng shàonián qīngnián zhōngnián lǎonián rènhé rén dōu kěyǐ cānjiā · Yes, people from every country are welcome. Teenagers, young people, the middle-aged, the elderly: anyone can take part.

anna 老年人也跑步吗?
lǎonián rén yě pǎobù ma · Do older people run too?

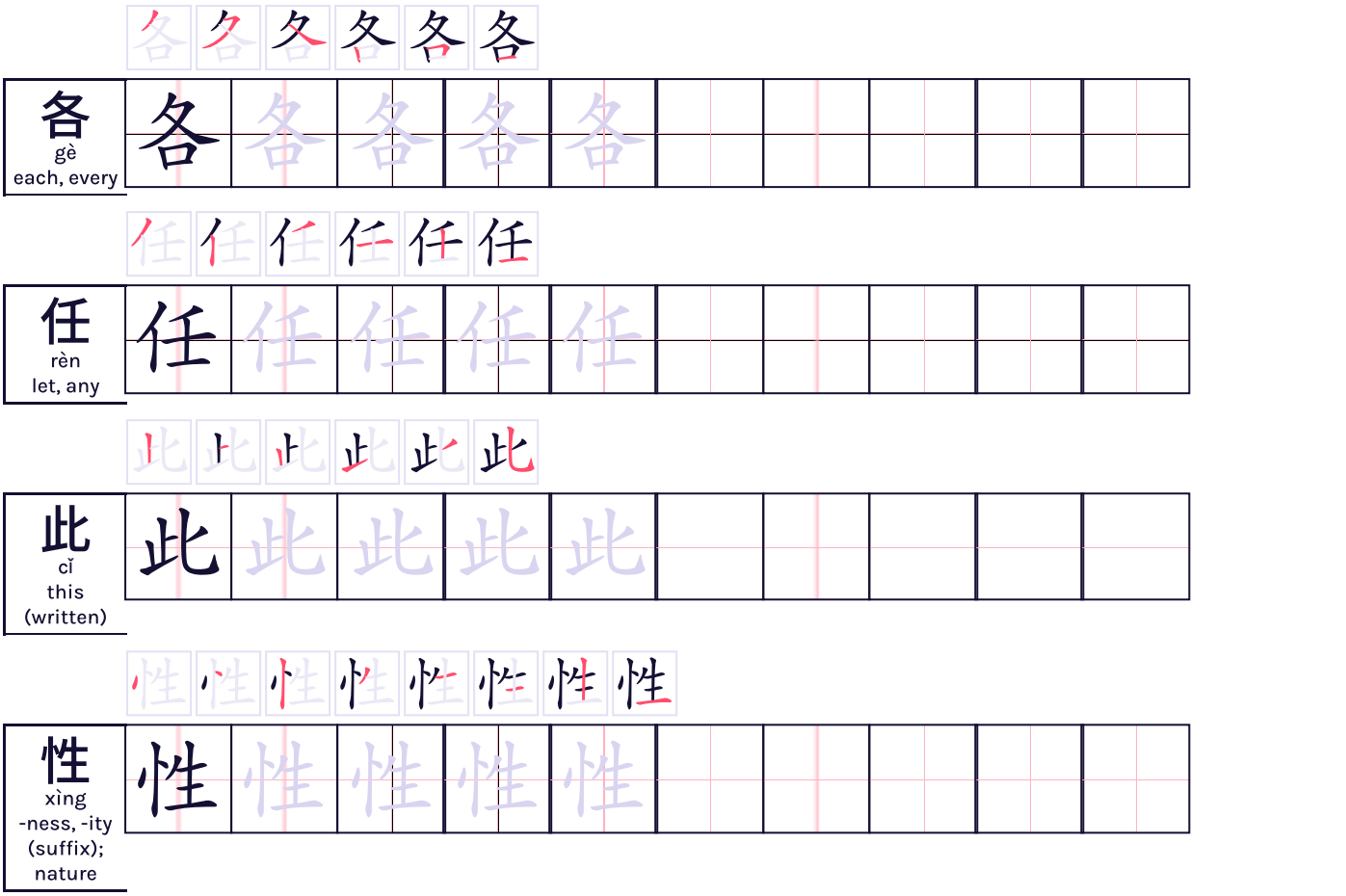
ms zhang 当然！老年人有自己的比赛。跑步的时候，男士和女士分开比。
dāngrán lǎonián rén yǒu zìjǐ de bǐsài pǎobù de shíhou nánshì hé nǚshì fēnkāi bǐ · Of course! Older people have their own races. In the running, men and women race separately.

anna 啊，李医生来了！他也参加吗?
ā Lǐyīshēng lái le tā yě cānjiā ma · Oh, here comes Dr Li! Is he taking part too?

ms zhang 他说他还是“青年”，要跟小伙子们比！
tā shuō tā hái shì qīngnián yào gēn xiǎohuǒzimen bǐ · He says he’s still a “young man” and wants to race the lads!

anna 那他得多锻炼锻炼了！
nà tā děi duō duànliàn duànliàn le · Then he’d better get some training in!

write it trace the grey, then write your own



good to know · 各位 is a polite “everyone” for a group in front of you: 各位好, 各位邻居. 大家 is the everyday word. On forms: 姓名 (full name), 年龄 (age), 性别 (gender: 男 / 女), 国籍 (nationality).

Next time a speaker starts with 各位, you’ll know they mean you, and you can answer any form at the door.
Do this day interactively, with audio and games, free at **wishyou.today/learning**

day 3 what are they like?

Say what people are like, from patient and honest to lazy and careless, and use 却 (yet) and 敢 (dare).

Personality is what friends really talk about, and 却 lets you say the surprising part: lively at home, yet shy at school.

words

word	pinyin	meaning	example
却	què	but, yet	他很忙，却每天都锻炼。 He's busy, yet he exercises every day.
敢	gǎn	dare	我不敢一个人看这个电影。 I don't dare watch this film on my own.
性格	xìnggé	personality, character	她性格很好，大家都喜欢她。 She has a lovely personality; everyone likes her.
脾气	píqi	temper, temperament	我爸爸脾气很好，很少生气。 My dad has an easy temper and rarely gets angry.
幽默	yōumò	humorous, funny	王老师说话很幽默，上课很有意思。 Teacher Wang is funny, so the classes are great fun.
活泼	huópō	lively, outgoing	这个孩子十分活泼。 This child is really lively.
害羞	hàixiū	shy	别害羞，说吧！ Don't be shy, go on!
诚实	chéngshí	honest	他是一个十分诚实的孩子。 He's a really honest child.
勇敢	yǒnggǎn	brave	你真勇敢！ You're so brave!
耐心	nàixīn	patient; patience	王老师对学生很有耐心。 Teacher Wang is very patient with the students.
细心	xìxīn	careful	她做事很细心。 She's very careful in everything she does.
粗心	cūxīn	careless	我太粗心了，又写错了一个字。 I'm so careless, I wrote a character wrong again.
懒	lǎn	lazy	周末我很懒，不想出门。 I'm lazy at weekends and don't want to go out.
笨	bèn	stupid, clumsy	我真笨，又忘了！ How silly of me, I forgot again!
冷静	lěngjìng	calm, cool-headed	冷静一点儿，别着急。 Calm down, don't panic.
积极	jījí	active, positive, keen	他上课很积极，经常回答问题。 He's keen in class and often answers questions.
骄傲	jiāoào	proud; arrogant	考得好也不要太骄傲。 Even when you do well, don't get too full of yourself.

得意	déyì	pleased with yourself	他考了第一名，十分得意。 He came top in the exam and is very pleased with himself.

pattern 却: but, yet (after the subject)

fact A **,** **subject** **却** **surprising B**

却 means “but, yet” and marks a surprising turn. Unlike 但是, it never starts the clause: it goes after the subject, right before the verb or adjective (他却……). 敢 means “dare”: 敢 + verb, and 不敢 + verb for “too scared to”.

外面很冷，他却只穿了一件衬衫。 **wàimiàn hěn lěng tā què zhǐ chuān le yí jiàn chènshān** It’s cold outside, yet he’s only wearing a shirt.

我说了很多次，他却不听。 **wǒ shuō le hěn duō cì tā què bù tīng** I’ve told him so many times, but he won’t listen.

妹妹在家很活泼，在学校却很害羞。 **mèimei zài jiā hěn huópō zài xuéxiào què hěn hàixiū** My little sister is lively at home but shy at school.

你敢一个人去吗？ **nǐ gǎn yí gè rén qù ma** Would you dare go on your own?

dialogue shy at school

anna 妹妹，你今天怎么不高兴？
mèimei nǐ jīntiān zěnme bù gāoxìng · What’s up? You don’t look happy today.

little sister 老师说我太害羞，上课的时候不敢说话。
lǎoshī shuō wǒ tài hàixiū shàngkè de shíhou bù gǎn shuōhuà · My teacher says I’m too shy: I don’t dare speak in class.

xiaoming 奇怪，你在家这么活泼，在学校却这么害羞！
qíguài nǐ zài jiā zhème huópō zài xuéxiào què zhème hàixiū · Funny: you’re so lively at home, yet so shy at school!

little sister 哥哥，你自己那么粗心，还说我！
gēge nǐ zìjǐ nàme cūxīn hái shuō wǒ · Look who’s talking: you’re so careless yourself!

anna 好了，好了。害羞没关系，你是个细心又诚实的孩子。
hǎo le hǎo le hàixiū méi guānxi nǐ shì gè xìxīn yòu chéngshí de háizi · All right, all right. Being shy is fine: you’re a careful, honest kid.

little sister 可是我想变得勇敢一点儿。
kěshì wǒ xiǎng biàn de yǒnggǎn yìdiǎnr · But I want to get a bit braver.

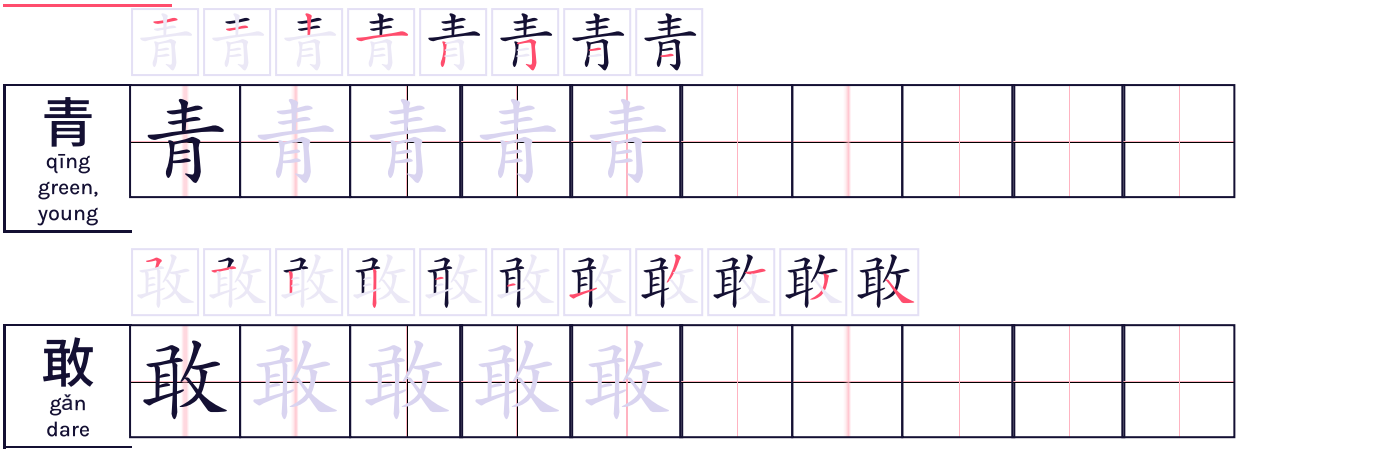
anna 我刚来北京的时候，也不敢说汉语。王老师很有耐心，让我每天说一点儿。
wǒ gāng lái Běijīng de shíhou yě bù gǎn shuō Hànyǔ Wánglǎoshī hěn yǒu nàixīn ràng wǒ měi tiān shuō yìdiǎnr · When I first came to Beijing, I didn’t dare speak Chinese either. Teacher Wang was very patient and had me speak a little every day.

little sister 后来呢？
hòulái ne · And then?

anna 后来我上课越来越积极了。你看，现在我说得多好！
hòulái wǒ shàngkè yuè lái yuè jījí le nǐ kàn xiànzài wǒ shuō de duō hǎo · Then I joined in more and more in class. And look how well I speak now!

xiaoming 安娜，别太得意了！
Ānnà bié tài déyì le · Anna, don’t get too pleased with yourself!

write it trace the grey, then write your own



good to know · 却 vs 但是: 但是 starts a clause (……，但是他……); 却 sits after the subject (……，他却……). You can even use both: 虽然……，他却…… 骄傲 can be bad (别太骄傲, don't be arrogant) or good: 我为你骄傲, I'm proud of you.

Now you can say what people are really like, and the twist in it: 他很忙，却……
Do this day interactively, with audio and games, free at **wishyou.today/learning**

day 4 better, or not as good

Compare people and things: “A isn’t as good as B”, “compared with…”, strengths and weaknesses.

Job hunting, shopping and choosing a flat are all about comparing, and 不如 is how Chinese speakers do it kindly.

words

word	pinyin	meaning	example
不如	bùrú	not as good as	坐出租车不如坐地铁快。 A taxi isn’t as quick as the subway.
相比	xiāngbǐ	compare	跟去年相比，今年冬天更冷。 Compared with last year, this winter is colder.
优点	yōudiǎn	strength, good point	他的优点是很有耐心。 His strength is that he’s very patient.
缺点	quēdiǎn	weakness, shortcoming	粗心是我最大的缺点。 Carelessness is my biggest weakness.
优秀	yōuxiù	excellent, outstanding	她是一个十分优秀的学生。 She’s a truly outstanding student.
特点	tèdiǎn	feature, characteristic	这个城市的特点是很安静。 What stands out about this city is how quiet it is.
能力	nénglì	ability	他的工作能力很强。 He’s very capable at work.
自信	zìxìn	confident; self-confidence	跟以前相比，他自信多了。 Compared with before, he’s much more confident.
强	qiáng	strong	他的汉语比我强。 His Chinese is better than mine.
普通	pǔtōng	ordinary, common	我只{zhi3}是一个普通的学生。 I’m just an ordinary student.
平常	píngcháng	usual; usually	我平常七点起床。 I usually get up at seven.
相同	xiāngtóng	identical, the same	这两个词的意思完全相同。 These two words mean exactly the same.
同样	tóngyàng	the same; equally	我也遇到过{guo}同样的问题。 I’ve had the same problem too.
区别	qūbié	difference	这两个字有什么区别? What’s the difference between these two characters?
完全	wánquán	completely; complete	你说得完全对。 You’re completely right.
好处	hǎochù	benefit, advantage	早睡早起有很多好处。 Early to bed and early to rise does you a lot of good.
坏处	huàichù	harm, disadvantage	每天玩手机对眼睛有坏处。 Being on your phone every day is bad for your

			eyes.
相反	xiāngfǎn	opposite; on the contrary	他没有生气，相反，他笑了。 He didn't get angry. On the contrary, he laughed.

pattern a不如b: a is not as good as b

A | 不如 | B | (adjective)

A不如B means "A isn't as good as B". Add an adjective to say in what way: 我的汉语不如他好. To set up a comparison first, start with 跟……相比 (compared with …), then say what's different.

我的汉语不如安娜好。 **wǒ de Hànyǔ bùrú Ānnà hǎo** My Chinese isn't as good as Anna's.

今天的天气不如昨天好。 **jīntiān de tiānqì bùrú zuótiān hǎo** The weather today isn't as nice as yesterday.

跟北京相比，上海的冬天没那么冷。 **gēn Běijīng xiāngbǐ Shànghǎi de dōngtiān méi nàme lěng** Compared with Beijing, winter in Shanghai isn't so cold.

跟以前相比，他自信多了。 **gēn yǐqián xiāngbǐ tā zìxìn duō le** Compared with before, he's much more confident.

dialogue after the interview

anna 小明，你看起来不太高兴，怎么了？
Xiǎomíng nǐ kàn qǐlai bú tài gāoxìng zěnme le · Xiaoming, you don't look very happy. What's wrong?

xiaoming 今天我去了一家公司，觉得自己不如别人优秀。
jīntiān wǒ qù le yì jiā gōngsī juéde zìjǐ bùrú biérén yōuxiù · I went to a company today, and I felt I wasn't as good as the others.

anna 为什么这么说？
wèi shénme zhème shuō · Why do you say that?

xiaoming 他们的能力都比我强，我太普通了。
tāmen de nénglì dōu bǐ wǒ qiáng wǒ tài pǔtōng le · They're all more capable than me. I'm just too ordinary.

anna 每个人都有优点和缺点。你的特点是做事认真，而且很会跟人聊天儿。
měi gè rén dōu yǒu yōudiǎn hé quēdiǎn nǐ de tèdiǎn shì zuò shì rènzhēn érqiě hěn huì gēn rén liáotiānr · Everyone has strengths and weaknesses. What stands out about you is that you're careful, and great at talking to people.

xiaoming 可是我一点儿也不自信。
kěshì wǒ yìdiǎnr yě bú zìxìn · But I'm not confident at all.

anna 你平常跟我说话的时候，不是很自信吗？
nǐ píngcháng gēn wǒ shuōhuà de shíhou bú shì hěn zìxìn ma · You're confident enough when you chat with me normally, aren't you?

xiaoming 那不同。跟朋友说话和跟经理说话完全不一样。
nà bù tóng gēn péngyou shuōhuà hé gēn jīnglǐ shuōhuà wánquán bù yíyàng · That's different. Talking to a friend and talking to a manager are completely different.

anna 跟你说的相反，我觉得没有很大的区别。经理也喜欢诚实、有意思的人。而且跟去年相比，你自信多了。
gēn nǐ shuō de xiāngfǎn wǒ juéde méiyǒu hěn dà de qūbié jīnglǐ yě xǐhuan chéngshí yǒu yìsi de rén érqiě gēn qùnián xiāngbǐ nǐ zìxìn duō le · I see it the other way round: there isn't much difference. Managers like honest, interesting people too. And compared with last year, you're much more confident.

xiaoming 好吧，下次我试试。谢谢你，安娜！
hǎo ba xià cì wǒ shì shi xièxie nǐ Ānnà · OK, I'll give it a go next time. Thanks, Anna!

write it trace the grey, then write your own



good to know · 不如 is a polite way to compare: 我不如你 (I'm not as good as you) is a classic modest reply to a compliment. 相同 (identical) is mostly used as a predicate or before 的; 同样 (the same, equally) goes straight before a noun or verb: 同样的问题, 同样重要.

Next time someone compares, you can answer kindly: 我不如你, or 跟以前相比，我好多了!
Do this day interactively, with audio and games, free at **wishyou.today/learning**

day 5 a life story

Tell a life story: never, at first, suddenly, from then on, and never again.

Sooner or later every friendship gets to “where did you grow up?”, and a good story needs 本来, 忽然 and 从此.

words

word	pinyin	meaning	example
从来	cónglái	ever (with 不 / 没: never)	我从来没去过{guo}云南。 I’ve never been to Yunnan.
本来	běnlái	originally, at first	我本来不想去，后来还是去了。 I didn’t want to go at first, but in the end I went.
忽然	hūrán	suddenly	我们在聊天儿，他忽然哭了。 We were chatting when he suddenly burst into tears.
当时	dāngshí	at that time, back then	当时我才八岁。 I was only eight at the time.
从此	cóngcǐ	from then on	从此，我每天都跑步。 From then on, I ran every day.
童年	tóngnián	childhood	我的童年是在老家过的。 I spent my childhood in my home town.
儿童	értóng	children	这本书是写给儿童的。 This book is written for children.
经历	jīnglì	experience; go through	那次旅游是我最难忘的经历。 That trip is the most unforgettable thing I’ve ever done.
人生	rénshēng	life (a person’s)	这是我人生中最难忘的一天。 This is the most unforgettable day of my life.
一生	yīshēng	all your life, a lifetime	这件事我一生都不会忘。 I’ll never forget this as long as I live.
回忆	huíyì	recall; memory	我常常回忆童年的事。 I often think back on my childhood.
成为	chéngwéi	become	他成为了一名医生。 He became a doctor.
生	shēng	be born; give birth	我生在南方，长{zhang3}在北京。 I was born in the south and grew up in Beijing.
家乡	jiāxiāng	home town	我的家乡有很多山。 There are lots of mountains in my home town.
老家	lǎojiā	home town, family home	春节我要回老家。 I’m going back to my home town for the Spring Festival.
难忘	nánwàng	unforgettable	那是一个难忘的晚上。 It was an unforgettable evening.
今后	jīnhòu	from now on	今后我再也不迟到了。 From now on, I’ll never be late again.

将来	jiānglái	the future; in future	你将来想做什么工作? What job do you want to do in future?

pattern time words (1): 从来, 本来, 忽然

从来 / 从 | 不 / 没 | verb (过)

从来 means “ever” and nearly always comes with 不 or 没: 从来不 (never, as a habit), 从来没……过 (have never done). 本来 is “at first, originally” (then things changed), and 忽然 is “suddenly”. 再也不 / 再也没 means “never again”.

很多儿童从来没见过大熊猫。 **hěn duō értóng cónglái méi jiàn guo dàxióngmāo** Lots of children have never seen a giant panda.

他从来不喝咖啡。 **tā cónglái bù hē kāfēi** He never drinks coffee.

我本来不想去，后来还是去了。 **wǒ běnlái bù xiǎng qù hòulái háishi qù le** I didn’t want to go at first, but in the end I went.

那次以后，我再也不敢一个人爬山了。 **nà cì yǐhòu wǒ zài yě bù gǎn yí gè rén pá shān le** After that, I never dared climb a mountain alone again.

dialogue why dr li became a doctor

anna 李医生，您是怎么成为医生的?
Lǐyīshēng nín shì zěnme chéngwéi yīshēng de · Dr Li, how did you come to be a doctor?

dr li 这要从我的童年说起。我生在南方的一个小地方，那是我的老家。
zhè yào cóng wǒ de tóngnián shuō qǐ wǒ shēng zài nánfāng de yí gè xiǎo dìfang nà shì wǒ de lǎojiā · That goes back to my childhood. I was born in a little place in the south: my home town.

anna 您的家乡是什么样子的?
nín de jiāxiāng shì shénme yàngzi de · What’s your home town like?

dr li 山很多，路很难走。我八岁那年，有一天晚上忽然病了。
shān hěn duō lù hěn nán zǒu wǒ bā suì nà nián yǒu yì tiān wǎnshang hūrán bìng le · Lots of hills, and the roads were hard going. When I was eight, I suddenly fell ill one night.

anna 当时附近有医院吗?
dāngshí fùjìn yǒu yīyuàn ma · Was there a hospital nearby back then?

dr li 没有。一位医生走了很远的路来我家，一直照顾我，第二天我就好了。
méiyǒu yí wèi yīshēng zǒu le hěn yuǎn de lù lái wǒ jiā yìzhí zhàogù wǒ dì èr tiān wǒ jiù hǎo le · No. A doctor walked a long way to our house and looked after me all night. By the next day I was better.

dr li 从此，我就决定将来也要做医生。
cóngcǐ wǒ jiù juédìng jiānglái yě yào zuò yīshēng · From then on, I knew I’d be a doctor one day too.

anna 那位医生呢? 您后来见过他吗?
nà wèi yīshēng ne nín hòulái jiàn guo tā ma · And that doctor? Did you ever see him again?

dr li 我上大学以后，就再也没见过他。可是那段回忆，我一生都不会忘。
wǒ shàng dàxué yǐhòu jiù zài yě méi jiàn guo tā kěshì nà duàn huíyì wǒ yìshēng dōu bú huì wàng · After I went to university, I never saw him again. But I’ll remember that all my life.

write it trace the grey, then write your own

忽
hū
suddenly



将
jiāng
will, be going to (formal)



good to know · 从 (from) also works alone as “ever” in 从不 and 从没: 我从不喝咖啡 = 我从来不喝咖啡. It sounds a little more written. 老家 is where your family comes from, even if you grew up elsewhere; 家乡 is a warmer, more written “home town”.

You can now tell a real story: how it began (本来), what happened (忽然), and what changed from then on (从此).
Do this day interactively, with audio and games, free at **wishyou.today/learning**

day 6 dreams & goals

Talk about dreams and goals, success and failure, and say “maybe”, “I’m afraid” and “not only … but also”.

Teachers, managers and friends all ask what you’re aiming for, and 不仅……还…… makes any answer sound fluent.

words

word	pinyin	meaning	example
也许	yěxǔ	maybe, perhaps	也许明天会下雨。 It might rain tomorrow.
恐怕	kǒngpà	I’m afraid; probably	已经十点了，恐怕他今天不来了。 It’s already ten. I’m afraid he isn’t coming today.
不仅	bùjǐn	not only	她不仅会说汉语，还会写很多汉字。 She not only speaks Chinese, she writes lots of characters too.
不光	bùguāng	not only (spoken)	他不光会唱歌，还会跳舞。 He can sing, and dance too.
理想	lǐxiǎng	ideal, dream; ideal (adj.)	我的理想是成为一名老师。 My dream is to become a teacher.
梦想	mèngxiǎng	dream; dream of	你小时候有什么梦想? What did you dream of as a child?
梦	mèng	dream	昨天晚上我做了一个奇怪的梦。 I had a strange dream last night.
做梦	zuòmèng	to dream	我做梦也没想到能成功! I never dreamed I’d succeed!
目标	mùbiāo	goal, target	你今年的目标是什么? What’s your goal this year?
目的	mùdì	purpose, aim	你学汉语的目的是什么? Why are you learning Chinese?
成功	chénggōng	succeed; successful	这次比赛我们成功了! We did it in this competition!
失败	shībài	fail; failure	失败一次没关系，再试试。 Failing once is fine; try again.
放弃	fàngqì	give up	别放弃，继续努力! Don’t give up, keep going!
继续	jìxù	continue, go on	休息一下，然后我们继续工作。 Let’s take a break, then carry on working.
达到	dádào	reach, achieve	只要努力，你一定能达到目标。 As long as you work hard, you’ll reach your goal.
获得	huòdé	gain, win, obtain	她在比赛中获得了第一名。 She came first in the competition.
取得	qǔdé	achieve, gain	他这次考试取得了好成绩。 He got good results in this exam.

永远	yǒngyuǎn	forever, always	我们永远是好朋友。 We'll always be good friends.

pattern 不仅 / 不光……，还 / 而且……: not only … but also

不仅 / 不光 **A** ，还 / 而且 **B**

不仅 and 不光 (more spoken) mean "not only"; the second half adds more with 还 or 而且. When both halves share a subject, put it first: 她不仅聪明，而且努力. 也许 (maybe) and 恐怕 (I'm afraid, probably) soften a guess, and 恐怕 hints it isn't good news.

这家饭馆不仅便宜，而且好吃。 **zhè jiā fànguǎn bùjǐn piányi érqiě hǎochī** This restaurant isn't just cheap, it's tasty too.

他不光会唱歌，还会跳舞。 **tā bùguāng huì chàng gē hái huì tiàowǔ** He can sing, and dance too.

也许他忘了，你再给他打个电话吧。 **yěxǔ tā wàng le nǐ zài gěi tā dǎ gè diànhuà ba** Maybe he forgot. Give him another call.

恐怕我们得等一会儿了。 **kǒngpà wǒmen děi děng yíhuìr le** I'm afraid we'll have to wait a while.

dialogue don't give up

teacher wang 安娜，你今年的目标是什么？
Ānnà nǐ jīnnián de mùbiāo shì shénme · Anna, what's your goal this year?

anna 我希望不仅考试成绩好，而且工作的时候能说得更好。
wǒ xīwàng bùjǐn kǎoshì chéngjì hǎo érqiě gōngzuò de shíhou néng shuō de gèng hǎo · I want good exam results, and to speak better at work too.

teacher wang 很好，你的目的很清楚。
hěn hǎo nǐ de mùdì hěn qīngchu · Good. You know exactly why you're doing it.

anna 可是上次考试我失败了，我有点儿想放弃。
kěshì shàng cì kǎoshì wǒ shībài le wǒ yǒudiǎnr xiǎng fàngqì · But I failed last time, and part of me wants to give up.

teacher wang 失败一次没关系。很多人都是失败了很多次才成功的。
shībài yí cì méi guānxi hěn duō rén dōu shì shībài le hěn duō cì cái chénggōng de · Failing once is fine. Lots of people only succeed after failing many times.

anna 也许您说得对。可是我恐怕没有那么多时间。
yěxǔ nín shuō de duì kěshì wǒ kǒngpà méiyǒu nàme duō shíjiān · Maybe you're right. But I'm afraid I don't have that much time.

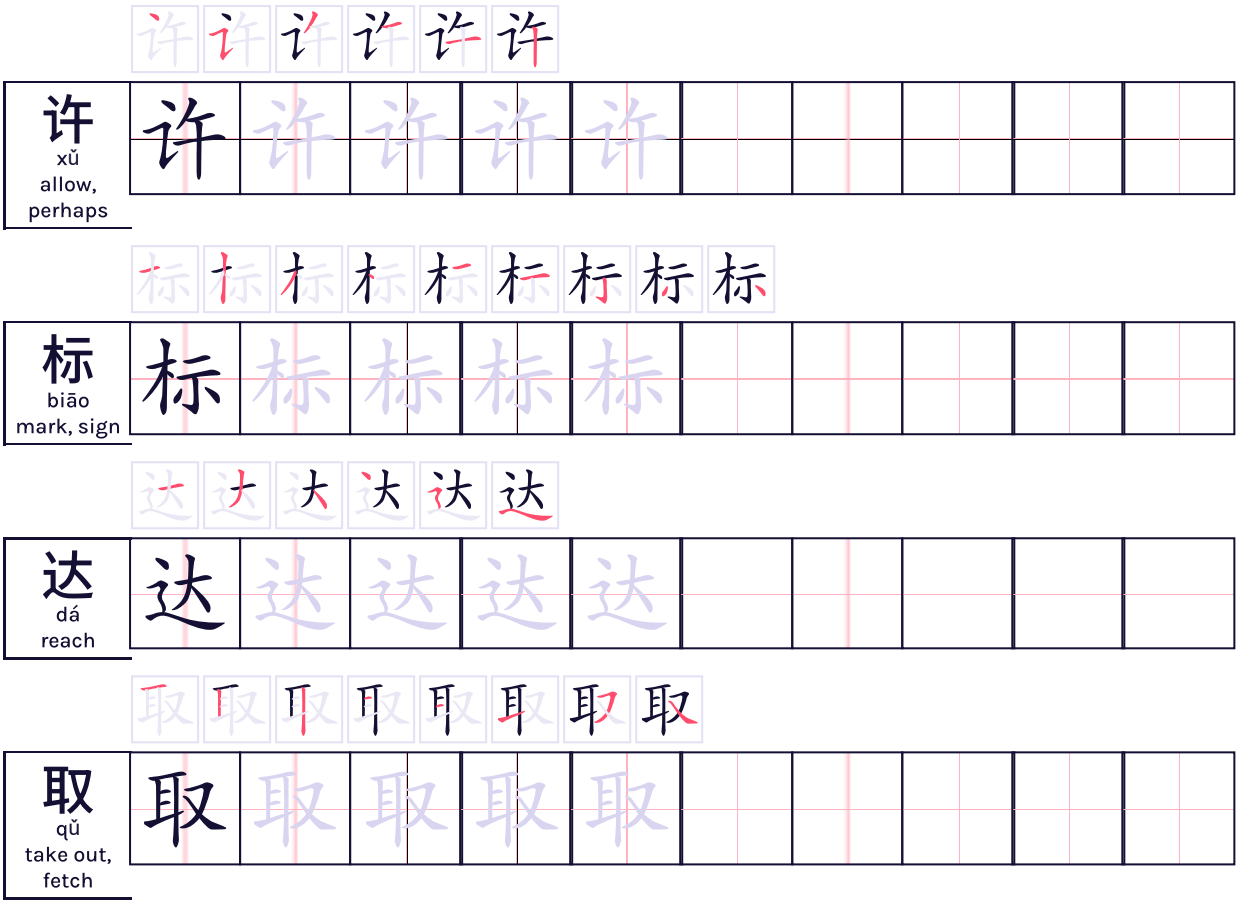
teacher wang 每天学半个小时就可以。只要继续努力，你一定能达到目标。
měi tiān xué bàn gè xiǎoshí jiù kěyǐ zhǐyào jìxù nǔlì nǐ yídìng néng dádào mùbiāo · Half an hour a day is enough. As long as you keep going, you'll reach your goal.

anna 王老师，您年轻的时候有什么梦想？
Wánglǎoshī nín niánqīng de shíhou yǒu shénme mèngxiǎng · Teacher Wang, what was your dream when you were young?

teacher wang 我想成为一名好老师。现在我觉得自己已经取得了一点儿成绩。
wǒ xiǎng chéngwéi yì míng hǎo lǎoshī xiànzài wǒ juéde zìjǐ yǐjīng qǔdé le yìdiǎnr chéngjì · To become a good teacher. And now I feel I've achieved a little of that.

anna 您不仅是一位好老师，还是我永远的朋友！
nín bùjǐn shì yí wèi hǎo lǎoshī hái shì wǒ yǒngyuǎn de péngyou · You're not just a good teacher: you'll always be my friend!

write it trace the grey, then write your own



good to know · 怕 (fear) can also mean “I’m afraid, probably”, like 恐怕: 怕是要下雨了, it looks like rain. 获得 and 取得 both mean “gain, achieve”. 获得 often goes with prizes and chances (获得第一名), 取得 with results and success (取得成绩).

You can now say where you’re heading and why: 我的目标不仅是……，还是……
Do this day interactively, with audio and games, free at **wishyou.today/learning**

wishyou.today learning

day 7 anna's new neighbour

Chinese HSK 4 in 69 days
unit 1 · people & personality

Follow a whole story with a new neighbour: who they are, what they look like and what they're like, their past and their dreams.

This is how real conversations flow: looks, character, comparisons and life stories all in one chat.

chapter 1 moving day

anna
你好！你是新搬来的邻居吗？
nǐhǎo nǐ shì xīn bān lái de línjū ma · Hi! Are you the new neighbour?

reporter zhou
对！我是周记者，在一个新闻网站工作。东西太多了，真不好意思！
duì wǒ shì Zhōujìzhě zài yí gè xīnwén wǎngzhàn gōngzuò dōngxi tài duō le zhēn bù hǎoyìsi · Yes! I'm Zhou, a reporter at a news website. Sorry about all this stuff!

anna
没关系，我来帮你拿吧。你稍微休息一下。
méi guānxi wǒ lái bāng nǐ ná ba nǐ shāowēi xiūxi yíxià · No problem, let me help you carry it. Take a little rest.

reporter zhou
谢谢！你的汉语说得十分好啊！你是哪国人？
xièxie nǐ de Hànyǔ shuō de shífēn hǎo a nǐ shì nǎ guó rén · Thanks! Your Chinese is really good! Where are you from?

anna
我是英国人，在北京住了好几年了。
wǒ shì Yīngguó rén zài Běijīng zhù le hǎo jǐ nián le · I'm British. I've lived in Beijing for quite a few years.

reporter zhou
嗯，那你比我更了解这个小区！这里的环境真美。
ǹg nà nǐ bǐ wǒ gèng liǎojiě zhège xiǎoqū zhèlǐ de huánjìng zhēn měi · Mm, then you know this neighbourhood better than I do! It's really lovely here.

anna
是啊。这里住着各个国家的人，你有任何问题都可以找我。
shì a zhèlǐ zhù zhe gègè guójiā de rén nǐ yǒu rènhé wèntí dōu kěyǐ zhǎo wǒ · It is. People from all over the world live here, and if you have any problem at all, just come to me.

reporter zhou
太好了！啊，电梯里写着：“此电梯坏了。”
tài hǎo le ā diàntī lǐ xiě zhe cǐ diàntī huài le · Wonderful! Oh, the sign in the lift says: "This lift is out of order."

anna
那我们走上去吧。你看，张阿姨来了，她是小明的妈妈。
nà wǒmen zǒu shangqu ba nǐ kàn Zhāng āyí lái le tā shì Xiǎomíng de māma · Then let's walk up. Look, here comes Auntie Zhang, Xiaoming's mum.

ms zhang
你就是新搬来的邻居吧？欢迎欢迎！请在这儿写上你的姓名、年龄、性别和国籍。
nǐ jiù shì xīn bān lái de línjū ba huānyíng huānyíng qǐng zài zhèr xiě shàng nǐ de xìngmíng niánlíng xìngbié hé guójí · You must be the new neighbour! Welcome! Please write your name, age, gender and nationality here.

reporter zhou
性别也要写吗？
xìngbié yě yào xiě ma · Gender too?

ms zhang
要写。这样我们就知道小区里男性和女性各有多少，少年、青年、中年和老年人各有多少，办运动会的时候就方便了。
yào xiě zhèyàng wǒmen jiù zhīdào xiǎoqū lǐ nánxìng hé nǚxìng gè yǒu duōshao shàonián qīngnián zhōngnián hé lǎonián rén gè yǒu duōshao bàn yùndònghuì de shíhou jiù fāngbiàn le · Yes. That way we know how many men and women live here, and how many teenagers, young, middle-aged and older people, which makes things easier when we hold a sports day.

reporter zhou
好的。我今年三十五岁，是青年还是中年？
hǎo de wǒ jīnnián sānshíwǔ suì shì qīngnián hái shì zhōngnián · Sure. I'm thirty-five: does that make me young or middle-aged?

ms zhang
当然还是青年！上次运动会，我丈夫五十多岁了，也说自己是青年呢。
dāngrán hái shì qīngnián shàng cì yùndònghuì wǒ zhàngfu wǔshí duō suì le yě shuō zìjǐ shì qīngnián ne · Young, of course! At the last sports day, my husband, who's over fifty, said he was young too.

chapter 2 shy, once

anna 请进，喝杯茶吧。你在网站做什么工作?

qǐng jìn hē bēi chá ba nǐ zài wǎngzhàn zuò shénme gōngzuò · Come in and have a cup of tea. What do you do at the website?

reporter zhou 我每天写各种新闻，有时还要去外地。

wǒ měi tiān xiě gèzhǒng xīnwén yǒushí hái yào qù wàidì · I write all sorts of news stories every day, and sometimes I travel for them.

anna 多么有意思的工作啊！你一定很勇敢，什么地方都敢去。

duōme yǒu yìsi de gōngzuò a nǐ yídìng hěn yǒnggǎn shénme dìfang dōu gǎn qù · What an interesting job! You must be brave, ready to go anywhere.

reporter zhou 你可能不信，我本来是一个十分害羞的人，不敢跟别人说话。

nǐ kěnéng bú xìn wǒ běnlái shì yí gè shífēn hàixiū de rén bù gǎn gēn biérén shuōhuà · You might not believe it, but I used to be really shy. I didn't dare talk to people.

anna 真的吗？你现在却这么活泼、这么幽默！

zhēn de ma nǐ xiànzài què zhème huópō zhème yōumò · Really? Yet now you're so lively and so funny!

reporter zhou 工作让我变了很多。跟以前相比，我自信多了，遇到问题的时候也更加冷静了。

gōngzuò ràng wǒ biàn le hěn duō gēn yǐqián xiāngbǐ wǒ zìxìn duō le yùdào wèntí de shíhou yě gèngjiā lěngjìng le · The job changed me a lot. Compared with before, I'm much more confident, and calmer when something goes wrong.

anna 做你这个工作，要有什么性格?

zuò nǐ zhège gōngzuò yào yǒu shénme xìnggé · What kind of personality do you need for a job like yours?

reporter zhou 要诚实，也要细心。写新闻不能粗心，一个字写错了，意思就变了。

yào chéngshí yě yào xìxīn xiě xīnwén bù néng cūxīn yí gè zì xiě cuò le yìsi jiù biàn le · You have to be honest, and careful too. You can't be careless when you write news: get one character wrong and the meaning changes.

anna 我也是个粗心的人。刚来中国的时候，我的汉语不如现在好，常常把“买”和“卖”说错。

wǒ yě shì gè cūxīn de rén gāng lái Zhōngguó de shíhou wǒ de Hànyǔ bùrú xiànzài hǎo chángcháng bǎ mǎi hé mài shuō cuò · I'm careless too. When I first came to China, my Chinese wasn't as good as it is now, and I often mixed up “buy” and “sell”.

reporter zhou 这两个字的样子几乎相同，意思却完全相反！

zhè liǎng gè zì de yàngzi jīhū xiāngtóng yìsi què wánquán xiāngfǎn · Those two characters look almost the same, yet they mean the exact opposite!

anna 是啊！那时候我觉得自己太笨了。可是我不懒，每天都积极练习。

shì a nà shíhou wǒ juéde zìjǐ tài bèn le kěshì wǒ bù lǎn měi tiān dōu jījí liànxí · Exactly! Back then I thought I was hopeless. But I wasn't lazy: I practised keenly every day.

reporter zhou 看得出来。不怕失败，这就是你最大的优点。

kàn de chulai bú pà shībài zhè jiù shì nǐ zuì dà de yōudiǎn · I can tell. Not being afraid of failing: that's your biggest strength.

anna 谢谢！那你的缺点呢?

xièxie nà nǐ de quēdiǎn ne · Thanks! And your weak point?

reporter zhou 我一工作就忘了吃饭，晚上也不睡觉。我知道这对身体有很多坏处。

wǒ yì gōngzuò jiù wàng le chī fàn wǎnshang yě bú shuìjiào wǒ zhīdào zhè duì shēntǐ yǒu hěn duō huàichù · Once I start working I forget to eat, and I don't sleep at night. I know it's really bad for me.

chapter 3 anna's story

reporter zhou 安娜，我想写一个关于外国人在北京生活的新闻。你愿意跟我说说你的经历吗?
Ānnà wǒ xiǎng xiě yí gè guānyú wàiguó rén zài Běijīng shēnghuó de xīnwén nǐ yuànyì gēn wǒ shuō shuo nǐ de jīnglì ma · Anna, I'd like to write a story about foreigners living in Beijing. Would you tell me about your experiences?

anna 当然可以！我生在英国，爸爸妈妈都是普通的老师。我从小就喜欢中国文化。
dāngrán kěyǐ wǒ shēng zài Yīngguó bàba māma dōu shì pǔtōng de lǎoshī wǒ cóngxiǎo jiù xǐhuan Zhōngguó wénhuà · Of course! I was born in Britain; my parents are ordinary teachers. I've loved Chinese culture since I was little.

reporter zhou 为什么？你的老家有很多中国人吗?
wèi shénme nǐ de lǎojiā yǒu hěn duō Zhōngguó rén ma · Why's that? Are there lots of Chinese people in your home town?

anna 不多。可是我的童年是在一家中国饭馆旁边过的，我常常去那儿吃饺子。
bù duō kěshì wǒ de tóngnián shì zài yì jiā Zhōngguó fànguǎn pángbiān guò de wǒ chángcháng qù nàr chī jiǎozi · Not many. But I spent my childhood next door to a Chinese restaurant, and I was always popping in for dumplings.

reporter zhou 是这样啊！你为什么决定来中国?
shì zhèyàng a nǐ wèi shénme juédìng lái Zhōngguó · So that's it! Why did you decide to come to China?

anna 大学的时候，我忽然很想学汉语。从此，我的人生就完全变了。
dàxué de shíhou wǒ hūrán hěn xiǎng xué Hànyǔ cóngcǐ wǒ de rénshēng jiù wánquán biàn le · At university I suddenly really wanted to learn Chinese. From then on, my life completely changed.

reporter zhou 当时你家里人同意吗?
dāngshí nǐ jiā lǐ rén tóngyì ma · Did your family agree at the time?

anna 我妈妈本来不同意，她担心我一个人在国外不安全。后来她看我这么积极，就同意了。
wǒ māma běnlái bù tóngyì tā dānxīn wǒ yí gè rén zài guó wài bù ānquán hòulái tā kàn wǒ zhème jījí jiù tóngyì le · My mum didn't at first: she worried about me being alone abroad. Later, seeing how keen I was, she agreed.

reporter zhou 在北京有没有什么难忘的事?
zài Běijīng yǒu méiyǒu shénme nánwàng de shì · Has anything unforgettable happened to you in Beijing?

anna 我第一次过春节是在小明家过的。那是我最难忘的回忆。
wǒ dì yī cì guò Chūnjié shì zài Xiǎomíng jiā guò de nà shì wǒ zuì nánwàng de huíyì · I spent my first Spring Festival at Xiaoming's home. That's my most unforgettable memory.

reporter zhou 学汉语的时候，你想过放弃吗?
xué Hànyǔ de shíhou nǐ xiǎng guo fàngqì ma · While learning Chinese, did you ever think of giving up?

anna 想过！第一次考试失败以后，我十分想放弃。可是王老师说，学习是一生的事，只要继续努力，就一定能达到目标。
xiǎng guo dì yī cì kǎoshì shībài yǐhòu wǒ shífēn xiǎng fàngqì kěshì Wánglǎoshī shuō xuéxí shì yìshēng de shì zhīyào jìxù nǔlì jiù yídìng néng dádào mùbiāo · I did! After I failed my first exam, I really wanted to give up. But Teacher Wang said learning is a lifelong thing, and if I kept at it, I'd reach my goal.

reporter zhou 你将来有什么打算?
nǐ jiānglái yǒu shénme dǎsuàn · What are your plans for the future?

anna 我的梦想是不光在中国工作，还要用中文写一本书!
wǒ de mèngxiǎng shì bùguāng zài Zhōngguó gōngzuò hái yào yòng Zhōngwén xiě yì běn shū · My dream is not just to work in China, but to write a book in Chinese too!

chapter 4 dabai says hello

xiaoming 安娜！我带大白来了。啊，这位是？
Ānnà wǒ dài Dàbái lái le ā zhè wèi shì · Anna! I've brought Dabai. Oh, and who's this?

anna 这是我的新邻居，周记者。周记者，这是我的好朋友小明。
zhè shì wǒ de xīn línjū Zhōujìzhě Zhōujìzhě zhè shì wǒ de hǎo péngyou Xiǎomíng · This is my new neighbour, Reporter Zhou. Reporter Zhou, this is my good friend Xiaoming.

reporter zhou 你好！你的狗多么可爱啊！我小时候很怕狗，现在却十分喜欢狗。
nǐhǎo nǐ de gǒu duōme kěài a wǒ xiǎoshíhou hěn pà gǒu xiànzài què shífēn xǐhuan gǒu · Hello! What a lovely dog! I was scared of dogs as a child, but now I really love them.

xiaoming 大白脾气特别好，从来不生气，对儿童尤其有耐心。
Dàbái píqi tèbié hǎo cónglái bù shēngqì duì értóng yóuqí yǒu nàixīn · Dabai has a lovely temper. He never gets cross, and he's especially patient with children.

reporter zhou 它看起来不仅聪明，还很喜欢跟人玩。
tā kàn qǐlai bùjǐn cōngmíng hái hěn xǐhuan gēn rén wán · He looks clever, and he loves playing with people too.

anna 是啊，比小明还有耐心！也许小明应该向大白学习。
shì a bǐ Xiǎomíng hái yǒu nàixīn yěxǔ Xiǎomíng yīnggāi xiàng Dàbái xuéxí · Yes, more patient than Xiaoming! Maybe Xiaoming should learn from Dabai.

xiaoming 你们一起说我，我再也不来了！
nǐmen yìqǐ shuō wǒ wǒ zài yě bù lái le · You're both ganging up on me! I'm never coming again!

reporter zhou 别走！给你们看看我写的新闻。这个戴帽子的小伙子是一位十分优秀的运动员。
bié zǒu gěi nǐmen kàn kan wǒ xiě de xīnwén zhège dài màozi de xiǎohuǒzi shì yí wèi shífēn yōuxiù de yùndòngyuán · Don't go! Let me show you a story I wrote. This young man in the cap is an outstanding athlete.

xiaoming 他长得真帅！他有什么特点？
tā zhǎng de zhēn shuài tā yǒu shénme tèdiǎn · He's really handsome! What makes him special?

reporter zhou 他的能力不是最强的，可是他比别人更加努力。平常别人休息，他还在练习。去年他终于获得了第一名。
tā de nénglì bú shì zuì qiáng de kěshì tā bǐ biérén gèngjiā nǔlì píngcháng biérén xiūxi tā hái zài liànxí qùnián tā zhōngyú huòdé le dì yī míng · He isn't the most gifted, but he works harder than everyone else. While the others rest, he's still training. Last year he finally won first place.

anna 同样是运动员，努力和不努力的区别真大。
tóngyàng shì yùndòngyuán nǔlì hé bù nǔlì de qūbié zhēn dà · They're all athletes, but what a difference hard work makes!

xiaoming 好！从今天开始，我也要成为一个优秀的人！
hǎo cóng jīntiān kāishǐ wǒ yě yào chéngwéi yí gè yōuxiù de rén · Right! From today, I'm going to be outstanding too!

anna 你不是在做梦吧？你每天都睡到中午！
nǐ bú shì zài zuòmèng ba nǐ měi tiān dōu shuì dào zhōngwǔ · Are you dreaming? You sleep till noon every day!

reporter zhou 有目标就好！天阴了，恐怕要下雨了。各位，今天晚上我请客，大家一起吃饭吧！
yǒu mùbiāo jiù hǎo tiān yīn le kǒngpà yào xià yǔ le gèwèi jīntiān wǎnshang wǒ qǐngkè dàjiā yìqǐ chī fàn ba · Having a goal is a good start! It's clouding over, I'm afraid it's going to rain. Everyone, dinner's on me tonight, let's all eat together!

One unit done! You can now meet someone new and hear their whole story, from childhood to dreams.
Do this day interactively, with audio and games, free at **wishyou.today/learning**

day 8 excuse me...

Interrupt politely, apologise, ask a favour, accept or turn down an invitation, and say "it made me ..." with 使 and 让.

Good manners open doors in China, at work and with neighbours alike, and these are the words that do it.

words

word	pinyin	meaning	example
使	shǐ	make, cause	他的话使我很开心。 What he said made me really happy.
打扰	dǎrǎo	disturb, bother	打扰一下，请问银行在哪儿? Excuse me, where's the bank, please?
抱歉	bàoqiàn	sorry, regretful	很抱歉，我来晚了。 I'm very sorry I'm late.
道歉	dàoqiàn	apologise	我想跟你道歉。 I want to apologise to you.
原谅	yuánliàng	forgive	请原谅我，我下次一定注意。 Please forgive me, I'll be careful next time.
感谢	gǎnxiè	thank, be grateful	感谢你的帮助! Thank you for your help!
客气	kèqi	polite; stand on ceremony	你太客气了! You shouldn't have! (You're too kind!)
礼貌	lǐmào	manners; polite	这个孩子很有礼貌。 This child has lovely manners.
麻烦	máfan	trouble; troublesome; bother	麻烦你帮我拿一下。 Could you hold this for me, please?
打招呼	dǎzhāohu	say hello, greet	见到邻居应该打招呼。 You should say hello when you see your neighbours.
答应	dāying	agree, promise; answer	他请我帮忙，我答应了。 He asked me for help and I said yes.
拒绝	jùjué	refuse, turn down	我不好意思拒绝他。 I couldn't bring myself to say no to him.
允许	yǔnxǔ	allow, permit	妈妈不允许我晚上一个人出门。 Mum doesn't allow me to go out alone at night.
邀请	yāoqǐng	invite; invitation	他邀请我去他家吃饭。 He invited me to his place for dinner.
祝	zhù	wish (someone well)	祝你生日快乐! Happy birthday!
祝贺	zhùhè	congratulate	祝贺你找到了新工作! Congratulations on your new job!
晚安	wǎnān	good night	晚安，明天见! Good night, see you tomorrow!

误会	wùhuì	misunderstand; misunderstanding	你误会了，我没有生气。 You've got the wrong idea: I'm not angry.

pattern 使 / 让 + person + verb: make someone feel or do

something | 使 / 让 | person | feeling / verb

使 and 让 can both mean "make": 这件事让我很开心, that made me very happy. 使 is more written and is used mostly for feelings and results (使人健康); 让 is everyday and also means "let" (让我看看).

他的话使我很开心。 **tā dehuà shǐ wǒ hěn kāixīn** What he said made me really happy.

天气这么热，让人不想出门。 **tiānqì zhème rè ràng rén bù xiǎng chūmén** It's so hot it makes you not want to go out.

多运动能使身体更健康。 **duō yùndòng néng shǐ shēntǐ gèng jiànkāng** Exercising more keeps your body healthier.

这次旅游让我认识了很多朋友。 **zhè cì lǚyóu ràng wǒ rènshi le hěn duō péngyou** This trip let me make lots of friends.

dialogue putting it right

anna 陈经理，打扰一下，您现在有时间吗？
Chénjīnglǐ dǎrǎo yíxià nín xiànzài yǒu shíjiān ma · Manager Chen, sorry to bother you. Do you have a moment?

manager chen 请进。有什么事？
qǐng jìn yǒu shénme shì · Come in. What is it?

anna 很抱歉，昨天的会我迟到了，我想跟您道歉。
hěn bàoqiàn zuótiān de huì wǒ chídào le wǒ xiǎng gēn nín dàoqiàn · I'm very sorry I was late for yesterday's meeting. I wanted to apologise.

manager chen 没关系，不用道歉。那天地铁出了问题，我知道。
méi guānxi búyòng dàoqiàn nà tiān dìtiě chū le wèntí wǒ zhīdào · No need for that, there's nothing to apologise for. The subway broke down that day, I know.

anna 我以为您生气了，所以一直很担心。
wǒ yǐwéi nín shēngqì le suǒyǐ yìzhí hěn dānxīn · I thought you were angry, so I've been worried ever since.

manager chen 这是个误会！我没有生气。
zhè shì gè wùhuì wǒ méiyǒu shēngqì · That's a misunderstanding! I wasn't angry.

anna 谢谢您原谅我。还有一件事想麻烦您：明天上午我想去银行，可以晚一点儿来吗？
xièxie nín yuánliàng wǒ hái yǒu yí jiàn shì xiǎng máfan nín míngtiān shàngwǔ wǒ xiǎng qù yínháng kěyǐ wǎn yìdiǎnr lái ma · Thank you for understanding. There's one more favour I'd like to ask: tomorrow morning I need to go to the bank. Could I come in a bit later?

manager chen 没问题，公司允许这样。对了，星期五晚上公司请客，我想邀请你也参加。
méi wèntí gōngsī yǔnxǔ zhèyàng duì le xīngqīwǔ wǎnshang gōngsī qǐngkè wǒ xiǎng yāoqǐng nǐ yě cānjiā · No problem, the company allows that. Oh, and on Friday evening the company is treating everyone to dinner. I'd like you to come too.

anna 感谢您的邀请！我一定去。
gǎnxiè nín de yāoqǐng wǒ yídìng qù · Thank you for the invitation! I'll definitely be there.

manager chen 还有，祝贺你！你第一个星期做得很好，你的努力使大家十分满意。
hái yǒu zhùhè nǐ nǐ dì yī gè xīngqī zuò de hěn hǎo nǐ de nǔlì shǐ dàjiā shífēn mǎnyì · And congratulations! You did very well in your first week. Everyone is really pleased with your hard work.

write it trace the grey, then write your own



good to know · 道歉 takes no object: say 跟 / 向 + person + 道歉 (我跟您道歉), never 道歉您. 麻烦你了 is a polite “thanks for the trouble”. 麻烦 alone can be a verb (may I trouble you), a noun (trouble) or an adjective (太麻烦了, what a hassle).

You can now step into any office, say sorry properly and accept an invitation with grace.
Do this day interactively, with audio and games, free at **wishyou.today/learning**

day 9 at the bank

Get things done at the bank: queue, fill in forms, deposit and withdraw, and say what you did to things with 把.

Banks, visas and ID cards are part of life in China, and 把 is how people say what they did with their money and papers.

words

word	pinyin	meaning	example
办理	bànlǐ	handle, apply for	我要去银行办理一张银行卡。 I need to go to the bank to get a bank card.
办事	bànshì	run an errand, get things done	我下午要去银行办事。 I have to go to the bank this afternoon to sort something out.
存	cún	deposit, save, store	我把钱存在银行了。 I've put the money in the bank.
取	qǔ	take out, fetch	我想取一点儿现金。 I'd like to take out a little cash.
现金	xiànjīn	cash	现在很多人都不带现金了。 These days lots of people don't carry cash.
零钱	língqián	small change; pocket money	你有零钱吗? Do you have any change?
密码	mìmǎ	password, PIN	我忘了密码，不能取钱了。 I've forgotten my PIN, so I can't take money out.
排队	páiduì	queue, line up	请大家排队。 Please queue up, everyone.
填写	tiánxiě	fill in (a form)	请先填写这张表格。 Please fill in this form first.
表格	biǎogé	form, table	这张表格我看不懂。 I can't understand this form.
表	biǎo	form, table; meter	请把这张表填写一下。 Please fill in this form.
日期	rìqī	date	请写上今天的日期。 Please write today's date.
身份证	shēnfènzhèng	ID card	坐火车要带身份证。 You need your ID card to take the train.
证件	zhèngjiàn	ID, papers, documents	别忘了带证件。 Don't forget your ID.
证	zhèng	card, certificate	这是我的学生证。 This is my student card.
签证	qiānzhèng	visa	我要申请去英国的签证。 I'm applying for a visa to the UK.
申请	shēnqǐng	apply (for)	他申请了一个新工作。 He's applied for a new job.

使馆	shǐguǎn	embassy	他上午去使馆申请签证了。 He went to the embassy this morning to apply for a visa.

pattern 把 + thing + verb + 了, and 把 + thing + verb (一) verb

who | 把 | thing | verb | 了 / (一) verb

把 brings the thing forward and then says what you did to it: 我把钱存了, I deposited the money. End with 了 for a finished action. Double the verb, with or without 一, to make it light, "have a quick go": 把表格看一看, 把房间打扫打扫.

我把钱都存了。 **wǒ bǎ qián dōu cún le** I've put all the money in.

他把密码忘了。 **tā bǎ mìmǎ wàng le** He's forgotten his PIN.

你把日期看一看，对不对？ **nǐ bǎ rìqī kàn yi kan duì bu duì** Take a look at the date: is it right?

周末我们把房间打扫打扫吧。 **zhōumò wǒmen bǎ fángjiān dǎsǎo dǎsǎo ba** Let's give the room a clean at the weekend.

dialogue at the bank

xiaoming 人真多！我们得先排队。
rén zhēn duō wǒmen děi xiān páiduì · So many people! We'll have to queue first.

anna 你今天要办理什么？
nǐ jīntiān yào bànlǐ shénme · What do you need to do today?

xiaoming 我要申请去英国的签证，使馆要看我的银行卡里有多少钱。
wǒ yào shēnqǐng qù Yīngguó de qiānzhèng shǐguǎn yào kàn wǒ de yínhángkǎ lǐ yǒu duōshao qián · I'm applying for a visa to the UK, and the embassy wants to see how much money is in my account.

anna 那你先把钱存进去吧。
nà nǐ xiān bǎ qián cún jinqu ba · Then put your money in first.

xiaoming 对，我把现金都带来了。还要填写这张表格。
duì wǒ bǎ xiànjīn dōu dài lái le hái yào tiánxiě zhè zhāng biǎogé · Right, I've brought all the cash. And I have to fill in this form.

anna 你把表格给我看看。日期写错了！今天是二十号，不是十二号。
nǐ bǎ biǎogé gěi wǒ kàn kan rìqī xiě cuò le jīntiān shì èrshí hào bú shì shíèr hào · Let me have a look at the form. You've got the date wrong! Today's the 20th, not the 12th.

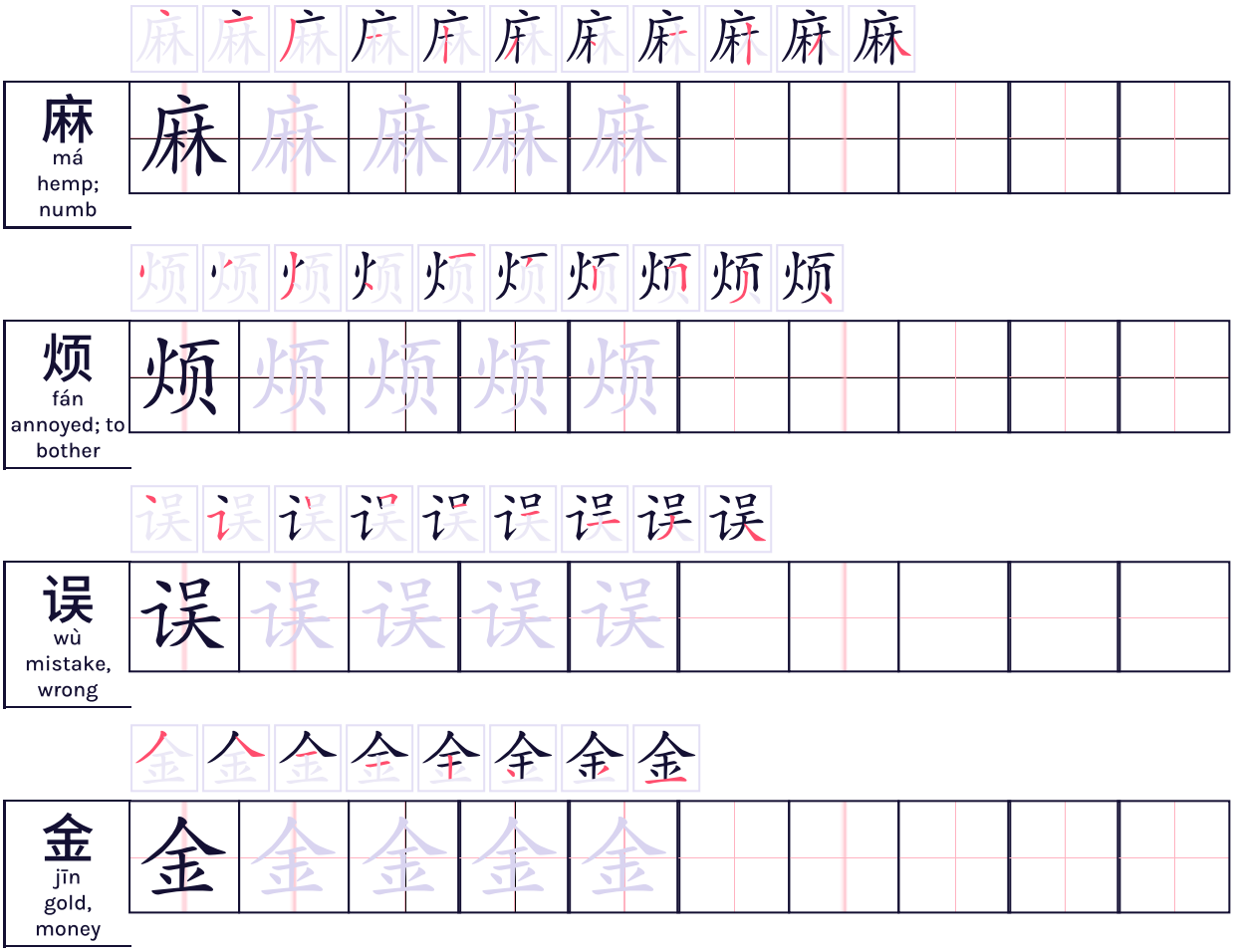
xiaoming 啊，我太粗心了。身份证号码也要写吗？
ā wǒ tài cūxīn le shēnfènzhèng hàomǎ yě yào xiě ma · Oh, I'm so careless. Do I write my ID card number too?

anna 要。别忘了带证件：身份证和学生证。
yào bié wàng le dài zhèngjiàn shēnfènzhèng hé xuéshēng zhèng · Yes. And don't forget your documents: your ID card and student card.

xiaoming 我还想取一点儿零钱。
wǒ hái xiǎng qǔ yìdiǎnr língqián · I want to take out a bit of change too.

anna 取钱的时候小心一点儿，别让别人看见你的密码。
qǔ qián de shíhou xiǎoxīn yìdiǎnr bié ràng biérén kànjiàn nǐ de mìmǎ · Be careful when you take money out: don't let anyone see your PIN.

write it trace the grey, then write your own



good to know · With 把, the verb never stands alone: it needs something after it, like 了, a doubled verb or a result (存进去, 填好). 零钱 is small change, and also pocket money. In a phone payment app, 零钱 is the balance in your wallet.

Bank counters, forms and ID checks: you can now get it all done, and tell your friends what you did with 把.
Do this day interactively, with audio and games, free at **wishyou.today/learning**

day 10 rules & notices

Read rules and notices, prepare documents, and say “according to” (按照) and “as” (作为).

Notices, rules and paperwork are everywhere in China: in parks, offices and online. Now you can read them and follow them.

words

word	pinyin	meaning	example
作为	zuòwéi	as (a role); act as	作为你的朋友，我得{dei3}告诉你。 As your friend, I have to tell you.
按	àn	press; according to	请按说明书上写的做。 Please do as the instructions say.
按照	ànzhào	according to	我们按照老师说的做吧。 Let’s do as the teacher said.
规定	guīdìng	rule; stipulate	按照公司的规定，上班不能迟到。 Under company rules, you mustn’t be late for work.
禁止	jìnzhǐ	forbid, prohibit	这里禁止拍照。 No photos here.
通知	tōngzhī	notify; notice	公司通知大家，下星期一开会。 The company has told everyone there’s a meeting next Monday.
说明	shuōmíng	explain; explanation	网上的通知里有说明。 The notice online explains it.
说明书	shuōmíngshū	instructions, manual	用以前请看一下说明书。 Please read the instructions before use.
收费	shōufèi	charge (a fee)	这个公园周末要收费。 This park charges at weekends.
免费	miǎnfèi	free (of charge)	这个公园免费吗? Is this park free?
有效	yǒuxiào	valid, effective	这张票今天有效。 This ticket is valid today.
正式	zhèngshì	formal, official	这是一个正式的会议。 This is a formal meeting.
文件	wénjiàn	document, file	请把文件发到我的邮箱。 Please send the file to my email.
材料	cáiliào	materials; papers	申请签证要准备很多材料。 You need to prepare lots of documents to apply for a visa.
资料	zīliào	information, data	我在网上找了很多资料。 I found lots of information online.
符合	fúhé	match, meet (a standard)	这些照片不符合要求。 These photos don’t meet the requirements.
标准	biāozhǔn	standard; standard (adj.)	照片要符合标准。 The photos have to meet the standard.

证明	zhèngmíng	prove; certificate	我需要公司的一个证明。 I need a letter from the company.

pattern as and according to: 作为, 按, 按照

按照 / 按 / 作为	rule / role	,	what happens

按照 (or the shorter 按) + a rule, plan or instruction means “according to”: 按照规定, 按老师说的做. 作为 + a role means “as”: 作为经理, 作为朋友. Both usually come at the start of the sentence.

按照公司的规定，上班不能迟到。 **ànzhào gōngsī de guīdìng shàngbān bù néng chídào** Under company rules, you mustn’t be late for work.

我们按老师说的做吧。 **wǒmen àn lǎoshī shuō de zuò ba** Let’s do as the teacher said.

作为你的朋友，我得告诉你。 **zuòwéi nǐ de péngyou wǒ děi gàosu nǐ** As your friend, I have to tell you.

作为一个外国人，她汉语说得十分好。 **zuòwéi yí gè wàiguó rén tā Hànyǔ shuō de shífēn hǎo** For a foreigner, she speaks really good Chinese.

dialogue paperwork

anna 陈经理，我要申请新的签证，需要公司的一个证明。
Chénjīnglǐ wǒ yào shēnqǐng xīn de qiānzhèng xūyào gōngsī de yí gè zhèngmíng · Manager Chen, I’m applying for a new visa and need a letter from the company.

manager chen 好的。按照规定，公司可以给你写一个正式的证明。
hǎo de ànzhào guīdìng gōngsī kěyǐ gěi nǐ xiě yí gè zhèngshì de zhèngmíng · Fine. Under the rules, the company can write you an official letter.

anna 还需要准备什么材料?
hái xūyào zhǔnbèi shénme cáiliào · What other documents do I need to prepare?

manager chen 你先看一下网上的通知，里面有说明。
nǐ xiān kàn yíxià wǎngshang de tōngzhī lǐmiàn yǒu shuōmíng · Have a look at the notice online first: it explains everything.

anna 我看了。通知上说，文件和照片都要符合标准。
wǒ kàn le tōngzhī shàng shuō wénjiàn hé zhàopiàn dōu yào fúhé biāozhǔn · I have. The notice says the documents and photos all have to meet the requirements.

manager chen 对，照片要按照规定照。
duì zhàopiàn yào ànzhào guīdìng zhào · Right: the photos have to be taken the way the rules say.

anna 办签证收费吗?
bàn qiānzhèng shōufèi ma · Is there a fee for the visa?

manager chen 要收一点儿钱，不是免费的。还有，你的护照一定要有效。
yào shōu yìdiǎnr qián bú shì miǎnfèi de hái yǒu nǐ de hùzhào yídìng yào yǒuxiào · There’s a small charge; it isn’t free. And your passport must be valid.

anna 我的护照还有效。我再在网上查一下资料，今天晚上把材料准备好。
wǒ de hùzhào hái yǒuxiào wǒ zài zài wǎngshang chá yíxià zīliào jīntiān wǎnshang bǎ cáiliào zhǔnbèi hǎo · My passport is still valid. I’ll look up a bit more information online and get the documents ready tonight.

manager chen 好。作为你的经理，我一定会帮你。有问题就来找我。
hǎo zuòwéi nǐ de jīnglǐ wǒ yídìng huì bāng nǐ yǒu wèntí jiù lái zhǎo wǒ · Good. As your manager, I’ll certainly help. If there’s a problem, come and see me.

write it trace the grey, then write your own



good to know · Notices love 禁止 + verb: 禁止拍照 (no photos), 禁止停车 (no parking). A gentler sign says 请勿 + verb (please don't). 材料 is "materials" and also the papers you hand in; 资料 is information you look up or collect; 文件 is a document or a computer file.

Signs, rules and forms are no longer a wall of characters: you can read them, and do it 按照规定.
Do this day interactively, with audio and games, free at **wishyou.today/learning**

Deal with a small emergency, ask for help, and add your feelings with 竟然, 确实, 只好, 正好, 差点儿 and 千万.

Lost keys, a broken cup, smoke in the stairwell: when things go wrong, these are the words you reach for.

words

word	pinyin	meaning	example
竟然	jìngrán	to my surprise, actually	他竟然忘了自己的生日！ He actually forgot his own birthday!
确实	quèshí	really, indeed	这个问题确实很难。 This question really is hard.
只好	zhǐhǎo	have no choice but to	下雨了，我们只好在家看电影。 It's raining, so we'll just have to watch a film at home.
正好	zhènghǎo	just right; as it happens	你来得正好，我们正要吃饭。 You're just in time: we were about to eat.
差点儿	chàdiǎnr	almost, nearly	早上起晚了，我差点儿迟到。 I overslept and was almost late.
千万	qiānwàn	be sure to, whatever you do	千万别告诉他！ Whatever you do, don't tell him!
警察	jǐngchá	police officer, the police	有困难，找警察。 If you're in trouble, go to the police.
钥匙	yàoshi	key	我的钥匙不见了。 My keys have disappeared.
危险	wēixiǎn	dangerous; danger	这里很危险，别过去！ It's dangerous here, don't go over there!
着火	zháohuǒ	catch fire	着火了！快出去！ Fire! Get out, quick!
火	huǒ	fire; popular	邻居已经把火关了。 The neighbour has already turned the flame off.
喊	hǎn	shout, call out	楼上有人在喊。 Someone upstairs is shouting.
敲	qiāo	knock, tap	进来以前，请先敲门。 Please knock before you come in.
掉	diào	fall, drop; lose	我的手机掉在地{di4-3}上了。 My phone fell on the floor.
破	pò	broken; break	杯子破了。 The cup is broken.
困难	kùnnan	difficulty; difficult	有困难就告诉我。 If you run into any difficulty, tell me.
情况	qíngkuàng	situation, circumstances	他们说要先了解一下情况。 They said they need to look into the situation first.

查找	cházhǎo	search for, look up	他们会帮你查找。 They'll help you look for it.

pattern attitude words (1): 竟然, 确实, 只好, 正好, 差点儿, 千万

who | **竟然 / 确实 / 只好 / 差点儿** | **verb**

These words sit before the verb and add your attitude: 竟然 (to my surprise), 确实 (really, it's true), 只好 (had no choice but to), 正好 (just right, as luck would have it), 差点儿 (almost, but no). 千万 (whatever you do) goes with 要 or 别 in warnings: 千万别忘了!

这么难的题，他竟然会做！ **zhème nán de tí tā jìngrán huì zuò** Such a hard question, and he can actually do it!

下雨了，我们只好在家看电影。 **xià yǔ le wǒmen zhǐhǎo zài jiā kàn diànyǐng** It's raining, so we'll just have to watch a film at home.

你来得正好，我们正要吃饭。 **nǐ lái de zhènghǎo wǒmen zhèng yào chī fàn** You're just in time: we were about to eat.

千万别告诉他！ **qiānwàn bié gàosu tā** Whatever you do, don't tell him!

dialogue locked out

anna 周记者，你在家吗？我的钥匙竟然不见了！
Zhōujìzhě nǐ zài jiā ma wǒ de yàoshi jìngrán bújiàn le · Are you home? My keys have gone, would you believe it!

reporter zhou 别着急，冷静一点儿。你最后一次用钥匙是什么时候？
bié zháojí lěngjìng yìdiǎnr nǐ zuìhòu yí cì yòng yàoshi shì shénme shíhou · Don't panic, stay calm. When did you last use them?

anna 早上出门的时候。也许是在地铁上掉的。
zǎoshang chūmén de shíhou yěxǔ shì zài dìtiě shàng diào de · When I went out this morning. Maybe I dropped them on the subway.

reporter zhou 你可以给地铁站打电话，他们会帮你查找。
nǐ kěyǐ gěi dìtiě zhàn dǎ diànhuà tāmen huì bāng nǐ cházhǎo · You can call the subway station. They'll help you look for them.

anna 打了，他们说要先了解一下情况。我现在进不去，只好在门口等。
dǎ le tāmen shuō yào xiān liǎojiě yíxià qíngkuàng wǒ xiànzài jìn bu qù zhǐhǎo zài ménkǒu děng · I did. They said they need to look into it first. I can't get in, so I'll just have to wait at the door.

reporter zhou 你来得正好，我刚做好饭，来我家吃吧！
nǐ lái de zhènghǎo wǒ gāng zuò hǎo fàn lái wǒ jiā chī ba · Perfect timing: I've just finished cooking. Come and eat at mine!

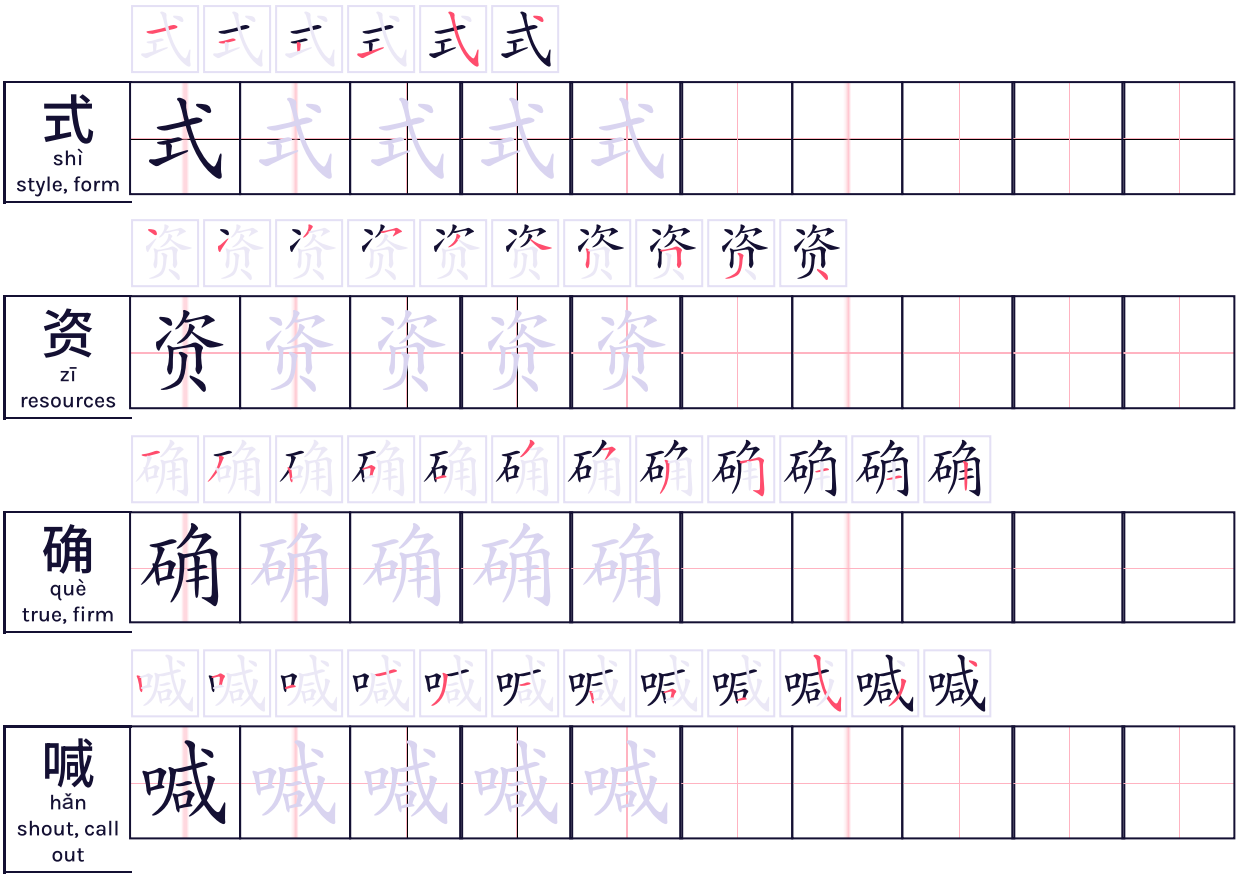
anna 等等，你听！楼上有人在喊“着火了”！
děng deng nǐ tīng lóu shàng yǒu rén zài hǎn zháohuǒ le · Wait, listen! Someone upstairs is shouting “Fire!”

reporter zhou 确实有人在喊！快，我们上去敲门！
quèshí yǒu rén zài hǎn kuài wǒmen shàngqù qiāo mén · Someone really is shouting! Quick, let's go up and knock!

anna 还好火不大，邻居已经把火关了。
hái hǎo huǒ bú dà línjū yǐjīng bǎ huǒ guān le · Thank goodness the fire was small: the neighbour has already turned it off.

reporter zhou 太危险了！大家以后做饭千万要小心。
tài wēixiǎn le dàjiā yǐhòu zuòfàn qiānwàn yào xiǎoxīn · That was so dangerous! Everyone must be really careful when cooking.

write it trace the grey, then write your own



good to know · In China, dial 110 for the police, 119 for fire and 120 for an ambulance. 差点儿 + verb means it almost happened but didn't: 我差点儿迟到 (I was nearly late). The longer form 差一点儿 means the same.

If something goes wrong, you can now explain what happened, ask for help and keep calm: 冷静一点儿!
Do this day interactively, with audio and games, free at **wishyou.today/learning**

wishyou.today learning

day 12 messages & parcels

Chinese HSK 4 in 69 days
unit 2 · errands & getting help

Send and answer messages, track a parcel, and say “if … then” (要是……就……) and “otherwise” (否则).

Messages and deliveries run daily life in China, and 要是 and 否则 are how people make plans and warnings.

words

word	pinyin	meaning	example
要是	yàoshi	if	要是明天下雨，我们就不去了。 If it rains tomorrow, we won’t go.
否则	fǒuzé	otherwise, or else	快把衣服穿上，否则会感冒的。 Put your coat on, or you’ll catch a cold.
短信	duǎnxìn	text message	我给你发了短信。 I sent you a text.
发送	fāsòng	send	我现在发送给你。 I’m sending it to you now.
回复	huífù	reply	他还没回复我的邮件。 He hasn’t replied to my email yet.
回信	huíxìn	write back; reply letter	我还要给妈妈回信。 I still need to write back to Mum.
信息	xìnxī	information; message	网上的信息不一定都对。 Not everything you read online is right.
消息	xiāoxi	news (that you hear)	有消息吗？ Any news?
信号	xìnhào	signal	这里没有信号。 There’s no signal here.
联系	liánxì	contact, get in touch	要是有问题，请联系我。 If there’s a problem, please get in touch.
通	tōng	get through; open	电话打不通。 I can’t get through on the phone.
通过	tōngguò	through, by means of; pass	我是通过朋友认识他的。 I got to know him through a friend.
提醒	tíxǐng	remind	谢谢你提醒我！ Thanks for reminding me!
及时	jíshí	in time, promptly	有消息我会及时告诉你。 I’ll let you know as soon as there’s news.
快递	kuàidì	express delivery, parcel	我的快递到了。 My parcel has arrived.
寄	jì	post, send by mail	我给你寄一本书。 I’ll post you a book.
地址	dìzhǐ	address	请把地址发给我。 Please send me the address.

留	liú	leave, keep; stay	你把快递留在门口吧。 Leave the parcel at the door.

pattern 要是……，就……: if … then

要是 | condition | ，(who) 就 | result

要是 is a spoken “if”, just like 如果; the result often starts with 就. 否则 (otherwise, or else) starts the second half of a sentence: do A, 否则 B will happen.

要是你有时间，就来我家吃饭吧。 **yàoshi nǐ yǒu shíjiān jiù lái wǒ jiā chī fàn ba** If you have time, come to mine for dinner.

要是不舒服，就早一点儿回家休息。 **yàoshi bù shūfu jiù zǎo yìdiǎnr huí jiā xiūxi** If you don’t feel well, go home early and rest.

快把衣服穿上，否则会感冒的。 **kuài bǎ yīfu chuān shàng fǒuzé huì gǎnmào de** Put your coat on, or you’ll catch a cold.

你得及时回复，否则他会着急的。 **nǐ děi jíshí huífù fǒuzé tā huì zháojí de** You need to reply quickly, or he’ll worry.

dialogue where’s my parcel?

xiaoming 安娜，你的钥匙找到了吗？
Ānnà nǐ de yàoshi zhǎo dào le ma · Anna, have you found your keys?

anna 还没有。地铁站说，要是有消息，就给我发短信。
hái méiyǒu dìtiě zhàn shuō yàoshi yǒu xiāoxi jiù gěi wǒ fā duǎnxìn · Not yet. The subway station says they'll text me if there's any news.

xiaoming 那你得把手机开着，否则他们联系不到你。
nà nǐ děi bǎ shǒujī kāi zhe fǒuzé tāmen liánxì bu dào nǐ · Then keep your phone on, or they won't be able to reach you.

anna 我知道。还有，我妈妈从英国给我寄了快递，也一直没收到。
wǒ zhīdào hái yǒu wǒ māma cóng Yīngguó gěi wǒ jì le kuàidì yě yìzhí méi shōudào · I know. And my mum sent me a parcel from the UK, and that hasn't come either.

xiaoming 你把快递号码发给我，我在网上帮你查一下。
nǐ bǎ kuàidì hàomǎ fā gěi wǒ wǒ zài wǎngshang bāng nǐ chá yíxià · Send me the tracking number and I'll check it online for you.

anna 好，我现在发送给你。
hǎo wǒ xiànzài fāsòng gěi nǐ · OK, I'm sending it now.

xiaoming 通过这个号码，可以在网上查到快递的信息：快递已经到北京了，可是地址好像写错了。
tōngguò zhège hàomǎ kěyǐ zài wǎngshang chá dào kuàidì de xìnxī kuàidì yǐjīng dào Běijīng le kěshì dìzhǐ hǎoxiàng xiě cuò le · With that number you can see the parcel's details online: it's already in Beijing, but the address seems to be wrong.

anna 啊，我妈妈一定写了我以前的地址！
ā wǒ māma yídìng xiě le wǒ yǐqián de dìzhǐ · Oh no, my mum must have written my old address!

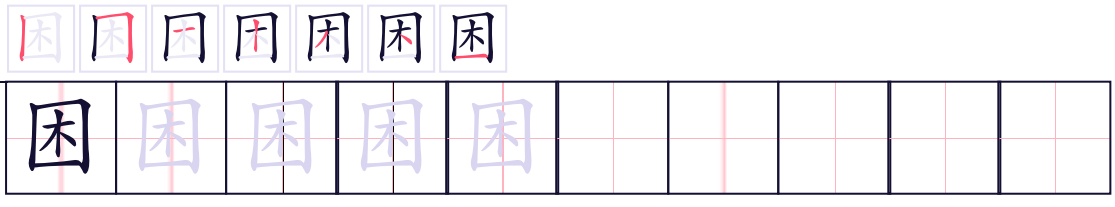
xiaoming 别担心，你给快递员打个电话，让他把快递留在你们公司。
bié dānxīn nǐ gěi kuàidì yuán dǎ gè diànhuà ràng tā bǎ kuàidì liú zài nǐmen gōngsī · Don't worry. Call the courier and ask him to leave it at your company.

anna 谢谢你提醒我！我还要给妈妈回信，告诉她新地址。
xièxie nǐ tíxǐng wǒ wǒ hái yào gěi māma huíxìn gàosu tā xīn dìzhǐ · Thanks for the tip! I also need to write back to Mum with my new address.

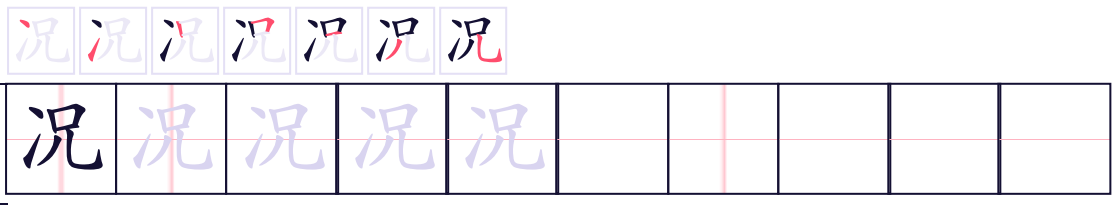
write it trace the grey, then write your own

掉
diào
fall, drop; lose

困
kùn
sleepy; stuck

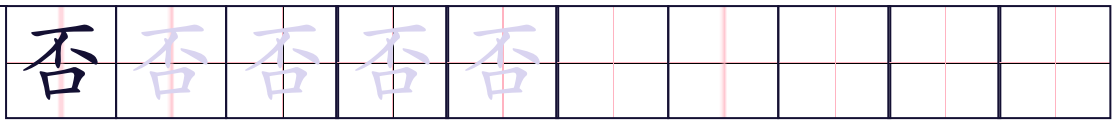


况
kuàng
condition





否
fǒu
not, no



good to know · 消息 is news you hear (有消息吗？); 信息 is information or data, and also a text message. 短信 is an SMS. 通 means “get through”: 电话打通了 (the call went through), 打不通 (can’t get through). 通过 is “pass, by means of”.

You can now chase a parcel, answer every message and make plans with 要是……就…… like a local.
Do this day interactively, with audio and games, free at **wishyou.today/learning**

day 13 sorting it out

Complain politely, ask for an explanation and the person in charge, and calm things down with 就是了.

Sooner or later something arrives broken. Knowing how to complain calmly, and firmly, gets it sorted.

words

word	pinyin	meaning	example
就是	jiùshì	exactly; just (..., that's all)	你放心，我去就是了。 Don't worry, I'll go, no problem.
不满	bùmǎn	dissatisfied, unhappy	我对他们的服务很不满。 I'm very unhappy with their service.
态度	tàidù	attitude, manner	那个人的态度很不好。 That person was really rude.
解释	jiěshì	explain	请你解释一下。 Could you explain, please?
保证	bǎozhèng	promise, guarantee	我保证下次不会再迟到了。 I promise I won't be late again.
负责	fùzé	be responsible (for)	这件事谁负责? Who's responsible for this?
负责人	fùzérén	person in charge	我想找你们的负责人。 I'd like to speak to the person in charge.
留下	liúxia	leave (behind)	请留下你的电话号码。 Please leave your phone number.
法	fǎ	law; method	我今天没法去。 There's no way I can go today.
法律	fǎlǜ	law	按照法律，他们得{dei3}负责。 By law, they have to take responsibility.
律师	lǜshī	lawyer	我朋友是律师，可以帮你。 My friend is a lawyer and can help you.
查看	chákàn	check, look over	你可以在网上查看快递的信息。 You can check the parcel's details online.
不必	bùbì	no need to	你不必{bu4bi4-4}担心。 There's no need to worry.
不便	bùbiàn	inconvenient; inconvenience	给您带来不便，我们十分抱歉。 We're very sorry for the inconvenience.
意见	yìjiàn	opinion, view; complaint	你对这件事有什么意见? What's your view on this?
顺利	shùnlì	smooth, without a hitch	祝你工作顺利! Hope work goes well!
交	jiāo	hand over, hand in; make (friends)	明天把作业交给老师。 Hand your homework in to the teacher tomorrow.

pattern 要是……，（就）……，否则……

要是 A ，就 B ，否则 C

This joins yesterday's two patterns: if A, then B; otherwise C. To wave a worry away, end with 就是了: 你不想去，不去就是了 (if you don't want to go, just don't).

要是你喜欢，就买；否则就别买。 **yàoshi nǐ xǐhuan jiù mǎi fǒuzé jiù bié mǎi** If you like it, buy it; if not, don't.

要是明天天气好，我们就去爬山，否则就在家看电影。 **yàoshi míngtiān tiānqì hǎo wǒmen jiù qù pá shān fǒuzé jiù zài jiā kàn diànyǐng** If the weather's good tomorrow we'll go hiking; otherwise we'll watch a film at home.

你不想去，不去就是了。 **nǐ bù xiǎng qù bú qù jiùshì le** If you don't want to go, just don't.

别着急，我明天还你就是了。 **bié zháojí wǒ míngtiān huán nǐ jiùshì le** Don't fret, I'll give it back tomorrow, that's all.

dialogue a broken parcel

anna 快递终于到了，可是里面的杯子破了！
kuàidì zhōngyú dào le kěshì lǐmiàn de bēizi pò le · The parcel's finally here, but the cup inside is broken!

reporter zhou 什么？你查看过快递公司的规定吗？
shénme nǐ chákàn guo kuàidì gōngsī de guīdìng ma · What? Have you checked the courier company's rules?

anna 看了。规定说，要是东西坏了，公司负责。
kàn le guīdìng shuō yàoshi dōngxi huài le gōngsī fùzé · I have. They say if something gets broken, the company is responsible.

reporter zhou 那你给他们打电话，让他们解释一下。
nà nǐ gěi tāmen dǎ diànhuà ràng tāmen jiěshì yíxià · Then call them and ask them to explain.

anna 我打了，可是那个人态度很不好，说“不是我们的问题”。我十分不满！
wǒ dǎ le kěshì nàge rén tàidù hěn bù hǎo shuō bú shì wǒmen de wèntí wǒ shífēn bùmǎn · I did, but the man was really rude. He said, "It's not our problem." I'm so annoyed!

reporter zhou 别生气。你要求跟负责人说话。要是他们能解决，就好；否则我就把这件事写到新闻里！
bié shēngqì nǐ yāoqiú gēn fùzérén shuōhuà yàoshi tāmen néng jiějué jiù hǎo fǒuzé wǒ jiù bǎ zhè jiàn shì xiě dào xīnwén lǐ · Don't get upset. Ask to talk to the person in charge. If they can sort it out, fine; otherwise I'll put the whole thing in the news!

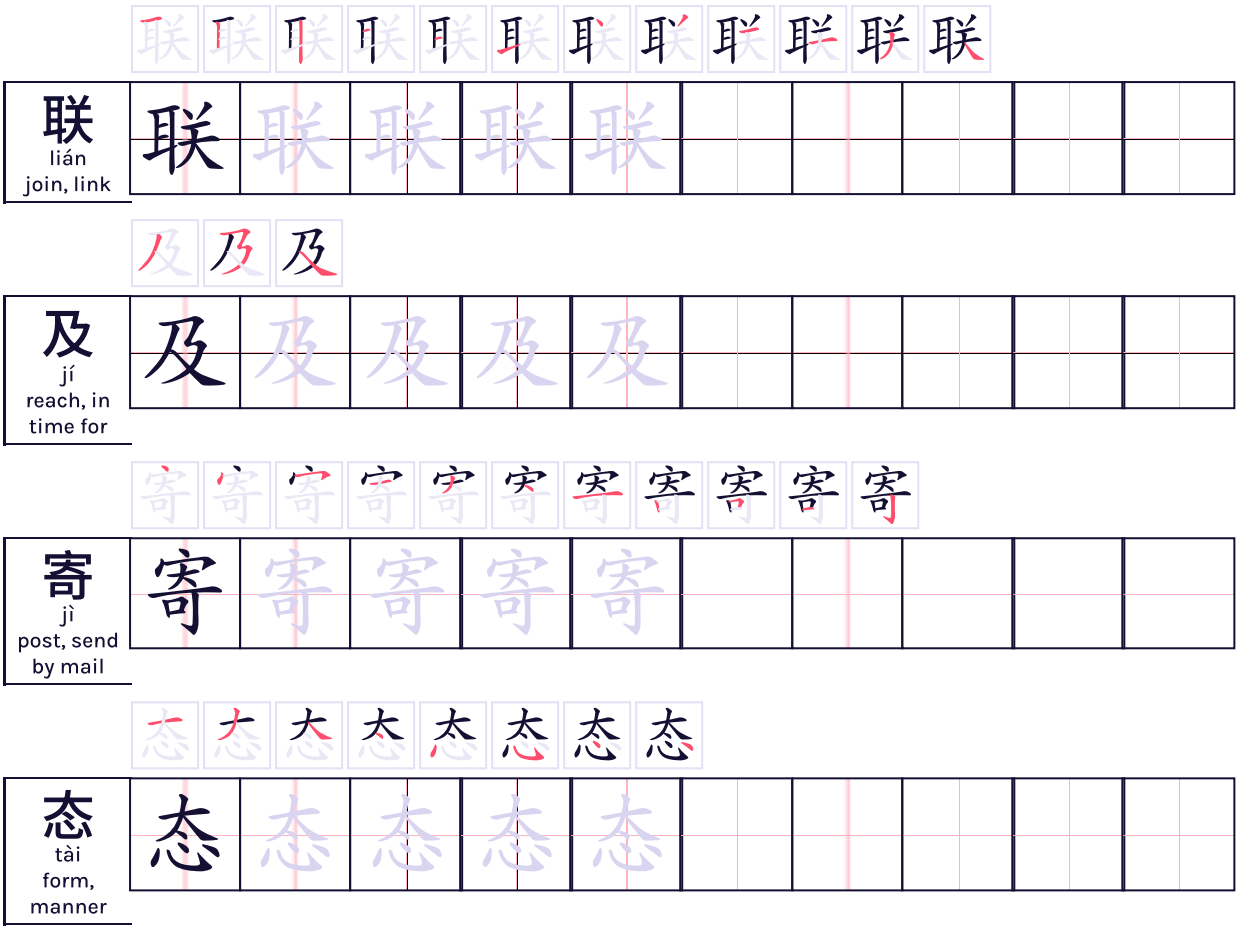
anna 你真是个好邻居！可是这样会不会太麻烦？
nǐ zhēn shì gè hǎo línjū kěshì zhèyàng huì bu huì tài máfan · You're a great neighbour! But won't that be too much trouble?

reporter zhou 不必担心。按照法律，他们也得负责。
búbì dānxīn ànzhào fǎlǜ tāmen yě děi fùzé · No need to worry. By law, they have to take responsibility.

anna 负责人刚给我回了电话，说十分抱歉，保证明天送一个新的。我明天在家等着就是了。
fùzérén gāng gěi wǒ huí le diànhuà shuō shífēn bàoqiàn bǎozhèng míngtiān sòng yí gè xīn de wǒ míngtiān zài jiā děng zhe jiùshì le · The person in charge has just called me back. He said he's very sorry and promised to send a new one tomorrow. So I'll just wait at home tomorrow.

reporter zhou 太好了！事情办得这么顺利。
tài hǎo le shìqing bàn de zhème shùnlì · Great! That went smoothly.

write it trace the grey, then write your own



good to know · To complain politely but firmly: 我对……很不满 (I'm unhappy with …), 请解释一下 (please explain), 我想找你们的负责人 (I'd like the person in charge). 不必 (no need to) is softer than 不用: 不必担心, 不必客气.

Things will go wrong sometimes. Now you can sort them out calmly, and firmly, in Chinese.
Do this day interactively, with audio and games, free at **wishyou.today/learning**

day 14 a very long monday

Follow a whole busy day of errands: lost keys, the bank, office rules and a sorted-out complaint.

Real days mix everything: messages, forms, rules and favours. This is your rehearsal for all of it.

chapter 1 good news, early

reporter zhou 早！你的钥匙有消息了吗？
zǎo nǐ de yàoshi yǒu xiāoxi le ma · Morning! Any news about your keys?

anna 有了！地铁站刚给我发了短信，说他们把钥匙找到了。你帮我把短信看一看，我要带什么去？
yǒu le dìtiě zhàn gāng gěi wǒ fā le duǎnxìn shuō tāmen bǎ yàoshi zhǎo dào le nǐ bāng wǒ bǎ duǎnxìn kàn yi kan wǒ yào dài shénme qù · Yes! The subway station just texted me: they've found them. Could you have a quick look at the message? What do I need to take?

reporter zhou 我看看……“请带上有效证件来取。”你得带上身份证去取，否则他们不会给你。
wǒ kàn kan qǐng dài shàng yǒuxiào zhèngjiàn lái qǔ nǐ děi dài shàng shēnfènzhèng qù qǔ fǒuzé tāmen bú huì gěi nǐ · Let me see… “Please bring valid ID to collect.” You'll need to take your ID card, or they won't hand them over.

anna 对，我差点儿忘了。可是今天上午我还要去银行办事，下午要上班。
duì wǒ chàdiǎnr wàng le kěshì jīntiān shàngwǔ wǒ hái yào qù yínháng bànshì xiàwǔ yào shàngbān · Right, I almost forgot. But this morning I also have to go to the bank, and this afternoon I'm at work.

reporter zhou 恐怕今天是一个很长的星期一啊！
kǒngpà jīntiān shì yí gè hěn cháng de xīngqīyī a · I'm afraid it's going to be a very long Monday!

anna 确实！我只好早一点儿出门。
quèshí wǒ zhǐhǎo zǎo yìdiǎnr chūmén · It sure is! I'll just have to leave early.

reporter zhou 对了，昨天楼上着火的事，后来怎么样了？我听说警察也来了。
duì le zuótiān lóu shàng zháohuǒ de shì hòulái zěnmeyàng le wǒ tīngshuō jǐngchá yě lái le · Oh, and the fire upstairs yesterday: what happened in the end? I heard the police came too.

anna 没什么大问题。那位邻居晚上来敲我的门，说十分抱歉，让大家担心了。
méi shénme dà wèntí nà wèi línjū wǎnshang lái qiāo wǒ de mén shuō shífēn bàoqiàn ràng dàjiā dānxīn le · Nothing serious. The neighbour knocked on my door in the evening and said she was very sorry for worrying everyone.

reporter zhou 她真有礼貌。可是做饭的时候人不在旁边，确实太危险了。
tā zhēn yǒu lǐmào kěshì zuòfàn de shíhou rén bú zài pángbiān quèshí tài wēixiǎn le · She's very polite. But leaving your cooking alone really is too dangerous.

anna 是啊，她说以后一定会小心。我得走了！
shì a tā shuō yǐhòu yídìng huì xiǎoxīn wǒ děi zǒu le · Yes, she said she'll be careful from now on. I've got to go!

reporter zhou 千万别再把钥匙丢了！
qiānwàn bié zài bǎ yàoshi diū le · Whatever you do, don't lose your keys again!

anna 你放心，我把它放在包里就是了。
nǐ fàngxīn wǒ bǎ tā fàng zài bāo lǐ jiùshì le · Don't worry, I'll just keep them in my bag.

chapter 2 no queue today

xiaoming 安娜，你也来银行？今天人竟然这么少！
Ānnà nǐ yě lái yínháng jīntiān rén jìngrán zhème shǎo · Anna, you're at the bank too? There are hardly any people today, amazingly!

anna 是啊，正好不用排队。我要把这个月的钱存进去。
shì a zhènghǎo búyòng páiduì wǒ yào bǎ zhège yuè de qián cún jinqu · I know, no queue for once. I'm paying in this month's money.

xiaoming 我的签证申请已经交了，使馆说要等两个星期。
wǒ de qiānzhèng shēnqǐng yǐjīng jiāo le shǐguǎn shuō yào děng liǎng gè xīngqī · I've handed in my visa application. The embassy says it takes two weeks.

anna 祝贺你！表格都填写对了吗？日期没写错吧？
zhùhè nǐ biǎogé dōu tiánxiě duì le ma rìqī méi xiě cuò ba · Well done! Did you fill in the form right? You didn't get the date wrong?

xiaoming 这次我把表格看了好几遍，十分细心！
zhè cì wǒ bǎ biǎogé kàn le hǎo jǐ biàn shífēn xìxīn · This time I read the form through several times. Very careful!

anna 你真的变了！这张表上要写证件号码，你帮我看一看。
nǐ zhēn de biàn le zhè zhāng biǎo shàng yào xiě zhèngjiàn hàomǎ nǐ bāng wǒ kàn yi kan · You really have changed! This form needs my ID number. Could you have a look for me?

xiaoming 没问题……写对了。你今天还要办理什么？
méi wèntí xiě duì le nǐ jīntiān hái yào bànlǐ shénme · No problem… that's right. What else are you doing here today?

anna 我想取一点儿现金，还要一些零钱。下个月我要去云南旅游。
wǒ xiǎng qǔ yìdiǎnr xiànjīn hái yào yìxiē língqián xià gè yuè wǒ yào qù Yúnnán lǚyóu · I want to take out some cash, and some small change too. I'm going travelling in Yunnan next month.

xiaoming 现在用手机就能买东西，不用带那么多现金。
xiànzài yòng shǒujī jiù néng mǎi dōngxi búyòng dài nàme duō xiànjīn · These days you can buy things with your phone. You don't need to carry that much cash.

anna 山里有时候没有信号，带一点儿现金比较好。
shān lǐ yǒu shíhou méiyǒu xìnhào dài yìdiǎnr xiànjīn bǐjiào hǎo · There's sometimes no signal in the mountains, so it's better to have a bit of cash.

xiaoming 也对。你按密码的时候，我不看就是了！
yě duì nǐ àn mìmǎ de shíhou wǒ bú kàn jiùshì le · Fair enough. When you type in your PIN, I just won't look!

anna 谢谢你提醒我！对了，在这儿取钱收费吗？
xièxie nǐ tíxǐng wǒ duì le zài zhèr qǔ qián shōufèi ma · Thanks for the reminder! Oh, does it cost anything to take money out here?

xiaoming 用这家银行的卡取钱是免费的，用别的银行的卡就要收费。
yòng zhè jiā yínháng de kǎ qǔ qián shì miǎnfèi de yòng biéde yínháng de kǎ jiù yào shōufèi · With this bank's card it's free; with another bank's card they charge a fee.

chapter 3 a new rule

manager chen 安娜，你来得正好。公司刚发了一个通知。
Ānnà nǐ lái de zhènghǎo gōngsī gāng fā le yí gè tōngzhī · Anna, good timing. The company has just sent round a notice.

anna 什么通知？
shénme tōngzhī · What notice?

manager chen 按照新的规定，办公室里禁止吃东西。作为经理，我得提醒大家。
ànzhào xīn de guīdìng bàngōngshì lǐ jìnzhǐ chī dōngxi zuòwéi jīnglǐ wǒ děi tíxǐng dàjiā · Under the new rules, no eating in the office. As the manager, I have to remind everyone.

anna 明白了。可是有的同事对这个规定有意见。
míngbai le kěshì yǒude tóngshì duì zhège guīdìng yǒu yìjiàn · Understood. But some colleagues aren't happy with the rule.

manager chen 我知道，这会给大家带来一些不便。可是上个星期有人把咖啡放在电脑旁边，后来电脑坏了，很多资料都没有了。
wǒ zhīdào zhè huì gěi dàjiā dài lái yìxiē búbiàn kěshì shàng gè xīngqī yǒu rén bǎ kāfēi fàng zài diànnǎo pángbiān hòulái diànnǎo huài le hěn duō zīliào dōu méiyǒu le · I know it'll be a bit inconvenient for everyone. But last week someone put a coffee next to their computer, the computer broke, and a lot of data was lost.

anna 是这样啊。那我中午去外面吃就是了。对了，我申请签证要的证明，您写好了吗？
shì zhèyàng a nà wǒ zhōngwǔ qù wàimiàn chī jiùshì le duì le wǒ shēnqǐng qiānzhèng yào de zhèngmíng nín xiě hǎo le ma · I see. Then I'll just eat out at lunchtime. Oh, and the letter I need for my visa: have you written it?

manager chen 写好了，这是正式的文件。你看看符合不符合使馆的标准。
xiě hǎo le zhè shì zhèngshì de wénjiàn nǐ kàn kan fúhé bù fúhé shǐguǎn de biāozhǔn · Yes, here's the official document. See if it meets the embassy's standards.

anna 完全符合，十分感谢！麻烦您了。还有，下个星期一我要去使馆交材料，上午能请半天假吗？
wánquán fúhé shífēn gǎnxiè máfan nín le hái yǒu xià gè xīngqīyī wǒ yào qù shǐguǎn jiāo cáiliào shàngwǔ néng qǐng bàntiān jià ma · It meets them completely. Thank you so much! Sorry for the trouble. And next Monday I need to hand in my papers at the embassy: could I take the morning off?

manager chen 当然可以，公司允许，我怎么会拒绝呢？对了，你帮我把这个说明书看一看。办公室的新空调到了，我不知道怎么用。
dāngrán kěyǐ gōngsī yǔnxǔ wǒ zěnme huì jùjué ne duì le nǐ bāng wǒ bǎ zhège shuōmíngshū kàn yi kan bàngōngshì de xīn kōngtiáo dào le wǒ bù zhīdào zěnme yòng · Of course: company rules allow it, so why would I say no? Oh, and could you take a look at this manual for me? The new air conditioner for the office has arrived and I can't work it out.

anna 很简单：先按这个，再按这个……好了！
hěn jiǎndān xiān àn zhège zài àn zhège hǎo le · It's easy: press this, then this… done!

manager chen 太好了！还有，星期五的晚饭别忘了，我邀请了大家。
tài hǎo le hái yǒu xīngqīwǔ de wǎnfàn bié wàng le wǒ yāoqǐng le dàjiā · Brilliant! And don't forget Friday's dinner: I've invited everyone.

anna 我一定去！
wǒ yídìng qù · I'll definitely be there!

chapter 4 good night

reporter zhou 你回来了！今天顺利吗?
nǐ huílái le jīntiān shùnlì ma · You're back! Did today go smoothly?

anna 很顺利，可是太累了。钥匙拿回来了，新的杯子也到了。
hěn shùnlì kěshì tài lèi le yàoshi ná huilai le xīn de bēizi yě dào le · Very smoothly, but I'm exhausted. I've got my keys back, and the new cup has arrived too.

reporter zhou 快递公司的态度怎么样?
kuàidì gōngsī de tàidù zěnmeyàng · How was the courier company this time?

anna 好多了。负责人还跟我道歉了，说要是以后有任何问题，就联系他。
hǎo duō le fùzérén hái gēn wǒ dàoqiàn le shuō yàoshi yǐhòu yǒu rènhé wèntí jiù liánxì tā · Much better. The person in charge even apologised, and said to contact him if there's ever any problem.

reporter zhou 上次他们还说“不是我们的问题”，这次怎么这么客气?
shàng cì tāmen hái shuō bú shì wǒmen de wèntí zhè cì zěnme zhème kèqi · Last time they said “it's not our problem”. Why so polite this time?

anna 他解释说，那是一个误会，接电话的人不了解情况。他还保证，以后会更加细心。
tā jiěshì shuō nà shì yí gè wùhuì jiē diànhuà de rén bù liǎojiě qíngkuàng tā hái bǎozhèng yǐhòu huì gèngjiā xìxīn · He explained it was a misunderstanding: the person who took my call didn't know what had happened. And he promised they'll be more careful from now on.

reporter zhou 那你原谅他们了吗？看来你不必找律师了！
nà nǐ yuánliàng tāmen le ma kànlái nǐ búbì zhǎo lǜshī le · So have you forgiven them? Looks like you won't need a lawyer, then!

anna 原谅了。今天的事情使我明白了：遇到问题要冷静。
yuánliàng le jīntiān de shìqing shǐ wǒ míngbai le yùdào wèntí yào lěngjìng · I have. Today taught me something: when there's a problem, stay calm.

reporter zhou 说得对。对了，你妈妈知道你的新地址了吗?
shuō de duì duì le nǐ māma zhīdào nǐ de xīn dìzhǐ le ma · Very true. Oh, does your mum know your new address now?

anna 我早上给她发送了新地址，可是她还没回复。
wǒ zǎoshang gěi tā fāsòng le xīn dìzhǐ kěshì tā hái méi huífù · I sent it to her this morning, but she hasn't replied yet.

reporter zhou 要是她今天还不回复，你就给她打个电话，否则她下次还会寄到旧地址。
yàoshi tā jīntiān hái bù huífù nǐ jiù gěi tā dǎ gè diànhuà fǒuzé tā xià cì hái huì jì dào jiù dìzhǐ · If she still hasn't replied today, give her a call, or next time she'll post it to your old address again.

anna 你说得对，我一会儿就给她打电话。
nǐ shuō de duì wǒ yíhuìr jiù gěi tā dǎ diànhuà · You're right, I'll call her in a bit.

reporter zhou 那我不打扰你了，早一点儿休息吧。晚安！
nà wǒ bù dǎrǎo nǐ le zǎo yìdiǎnr xiūxi ba wǎnān · I won't keep you, then. Get some rest. Good night!

anna 晚安！感谢你这几天的帮助！
wǎnān gǎnxiè nǐ zhè jǐ tiān de bāngzhù · Good night! And thank you for all your help these last few days!

Two units done! A long Monday in Beijing, from lost keys to a sorted-out complaint, and you followed every word.
Do this day interactively, with audio and games, free at **wishyou.today/learning**

day 15 how do you feel?

Say how you feel, from happy to fed up, and how strongly.

When you look down, Chinese friends ask 你怎么了？ Now you can really answer.

words

word	pinyin	meaning	example
厉害	lìhai	awesome; severe, terrible	你的汉语说得真厉害！ Your Chinese is really impressive!
死	sǐ	to die; extremely (…死了)	今天热死了，我们去吃冰激凌吧。 It's boiling today. Let's go and get ice cream.
故意	gùyì	on purpose	对不起，我不是故意的。 Sorry, I didn't mean to.
互相	hùxiāng	each other	好朋友应该互相帮助。 Good friends should help each other.
相互	xiānghù	mutual; each other	两个国家的学生相互学习。 Students from the two countries learn from each other.
心	xīn	heart; mind	她学汉语很用心，每天都练习。 She puts her heart into learning Chinese and practises every day.
心情	xīnqíng	mood	今天天气很好，我的心情也很好。 The weather's lovely today, and so is my mood.
感觉	gǎnjué	feeling; to feel	你现在感觉怎么样? How are you feeling now?
感受	gǎnshòu	to experience, feel; impressions	我想感受一下北京的冬天。 I want to experience a Beijing winter.
激动	jīdòng	excited, deeply moved	听到这个消息，他十分激动。 When he heard the news, he was really excited.
兴奋	xīngfèn	excited, thrilled	明天去旅游，孩子们兴奋极了。 We're going on a trip tomorrow, and the kids are thrilled.
愉快	yúkuài	happy, pleasant	祝你周末愉快！ Have a great weekend!
幸福	xìngfú	happiness; happy (in life)	他们一家人生活得很幸福。 Their family has a happy life.
伤心	shāngxīn	sad, heartbroken	小狗丢了，妹妹伤心得哭了。 The puppy got lost, and my little sister cried her eyes out.
失望	shīwàng	disappointed	他没来我的生日晚会，我有点儿失望。 He didn't come to my birthday party; I was a bit disappointed.
烦	fán	annoyed; to bother	别烦我，我在准备考试呢。 Stop bugging me, I'm studying for an exam.

烦恼	fánnǎo	worried; worries	每个人都有自己的烦恼。 Everyone has their own worries.
受不了	shòubuliǎo	can't stand	这么热的天气，我真受不了。 I really can't stand weather this hot.

pattern extremely: 累死了, 疼得厉害

feeling / adjective + 死了 or + 得厉害

Put 死了 after an adjective or a feeling to say "extremely", in a casual, dramatic way: 饿死了 I'm starving. 得厉害 says the same about something strong, often unpleasant: 疼得厉害 it really hurts. Both go after the word, not before it like 很. 故意 (on purpose) and 互相 / 相互 (each other) go before the verb.

饿死了，我们去吃饭吧！ **è sǐ le wǒmen qù chī fàn ba** I'm starving. Let's go and eat!

外面冷得厉害，多穿一件衣服吧。 **wàimiàn lěng de lìhai duō chuān yí jiàn yīfu ba** It's freezing outside. Put on another layer.

听说你要来，妹妹高兴死了。 **tīngshuō nǐ yào lái mèimei gāoxìng sǐ le** My sister was over the moon when she heard you were coming.

他故意不接我的电话。 **tā gùyì bù jiē wǒ de diànhuà** He's not answering my calls on purpose.

好朋友应该互相帮助。 **hǎo péngyou yīnggāi hùxiāng bāngzhù** Good friends should help each other.

dialogue a bad day for xiaoming

anna 小明，你怎么了？今天心情不好吗？
Xiǎomíng nǐ zěnme le jīntiān xīnqíng bù hǎo ma · Xiaoming, what's up? Are you in a bad mood today?

xiaoming 找工作找得我烦死了。今天又有一家公司说不要我。
zhǎo gōngzuò zhǎo de wǒ fán sǐ le jīntiān yòu yǒu yì jiā gōngsī shuō búyào wǒ · I'm so fed up with job hunting. Another company turned me down today.

anna 别伤心，也别把这件事放在心上。你找了多长时间了？
bié shāngxīn yě bié bǎ zhè jiàn shì fàng zài xīn shàng nǐ zhǎo le duō cháng shíjiān le · Don't be down, and don't take it to heart. How long have you been looking?

xiaoming 三个月了。我真的有点儿失望，头也疼得厉害。
sān gè yuè le wǒ zhēn de yǒudiǎnr shīwàng tóu yě téng de lìhai · Three months. I'm honestly a bit disappointed, and I've got a terrible headache.

anna 我知道你的感受。我去年找工作的时候，也找了很久。
wǒ zhīdào nǐ de gǎnshòu wǒ qùnián zhǎo gōngzuò de shíhou yě zhǎo le hěn jiǔ · I know how you feel. When I was job hunting last year, it took me ages too.

xiaoming 有时候我真受不了，觉得别人都比我厉害。
yǒu shíhou wǒ zhēn shòubuliǎo juéde biérén dōu bǐ wǒ lìhai · Sometimes I just can't take it. Everyone else seems better than me.

anna 每个人都有自己的烦恼。走，我请你吃饭！好朋友就应该相互帮助。
měi gè rén dōu yǒu zìjǐ de fánnǎo zǒu wǒ qǐng nǐ chī fàn hǎo péngyou jiù yīnggāi xiānghù bāngzhù · Everyone has their own worries. Come on, dinner's on me! Good friends help each other.

xiaoming 谢谢你，安娜。有你这样的朋友，我真幸福。跟你聊完，我的感觉好多了。
xièxie nǐ Ānnà yǒu nǐ zhèyàng de péngyou wǒ zhēn xìngfú gēn nǐ liáo wán wǒ de gǎnjué hǎo duō le · Thanks, Anna. I'm lucky to have a friend like you. I feel much better after talking to you.

write it trace the grey, then write your own



good to know · 死了 and 烦死了 are fine with friends and family. In a meeting or a job interview, say 非常 or 十分 instead. 互相 always goes before the verb: 互相帮助 help each other, 互相学习 learn from each other.

From “a bit down” to “dead tired”, you can now say how you really feel, and cheer up a friend.
Do this day interactively, with audio and games, free at **wishyou.today/learning**

day 16 what on earth?

Press for the real answer, act surprised, and tell when someone's only joking.

到底, 难道 and 原来 are everywhere in real conversations, films and messages.

words

word	pinyin	meaning	example
究竟	jiūjìng	what on earth; after all	这究竟是谁的手机? Whose phone is this, exactly?
到底	dàodǐ	on earth; in the end	你到底去不去?快告诉我吧! Are you going or not? Just tell me!
难道	nándào	surely … not? (you mean …?)	难道你不认识我了吗? Don't tell me you don't recognise me!
并	bìng	(not) at all; and	这个题并不难,你再想想。 This question isn't hard at all. Think again.
吃惊	chījīng	surprised, shocked	听说他要搬到上海去,我们都很吃惊。 We were all surprised to hear he's moving to Shanghai.
怀疑	huáiyí	to doubt, suspect	我怀疑这个消息不是真的。 I doubt this news is true.
猜	cāi	to guess	你猜猜,我给你带了什么? Guess what I brought you!
原来	yuánlái	originally; so that's why	原来是你!我还以为是小刘呢。 Oh, it's you! I thought it was Xiao Liu.
原因	yuányīn	reason, cause	他迟到的原因是什么? Why was he late?
后悔	hòuhuǐ	to regret	我很后悔那天没跟他说对不起。 I really regret not saying sorry to him that day.
可惜	kěxī	a pity, too bad	真可惜,你昨天没来,晚会非常有意思。 Such a pity you didn't come yesterday. The party was great fun.
讨厌	tǎoyàn	to dislike; annoying	我最讨厌下雨天出门。 I hate going out on rainy days.
气	qì	air; anger; to annoy	他又迟到了,真气人! He's late again. So annoying!
实在	shízài	really, honestly	我实在太累了,今天不去了。 I'm honestly too tired. I'm not going today.
老是	lǎoshì	always (annoyingly)	你怎么老是忘带钥匙? How come you always forget your keys?
好笑	hǎoxiào	funny; ridiculous	这个故事太好笑了! This story is so funny!
笑话	xiàohua	joke; to laugh at	他给我们讲了一个笑话。 He told us a joke.
开玩笑	kāiwánxiào	to joke, kid	别生气,我是跟你开玩笑的。 Don't be cross, I was only kidding.

pattern surely not? 难道……吗?

难道 | what you can't believe | 吗?

难道……吗? turns a statement into a surprised "surely not?". The speaker already expects the answer "no": 难道你忘了吗? Don't tell me you forgot! 到底 and 究竟 push for the real answer instead, and never go with 吗. 才, 就 and 还 can add emphasis too: 我才不去呢 (no way am I going), 他就是不听 (he just won't listen), 他还真来了 (he really did come).

难道你不认识我了吗? **nándào nǐ bú rènshi wǒ le ma** Don't tell me you don't recognise me!

难道他又忘了吗? **nándào tā yòu wàng le ma** Surely he hasn't forgotten again?

你到底喜欢不喜欢这个礼物? **nǐ dàodǐ xǐhuan bù xǐhuan zhège lǐwù** Do you actually like this present or not?

这么冷的天，我才不去游泳呢！ **zhème lěng de tiān wǒ cái bú qù yóuyǒng ne** In weather this cold? No way am I going swimming!

我说了很多次，他就是不听。 **wǒ shuō le hěn duō cì tā jiùshì bù tīng** I've told him so many times, but he just won't listen.

我以为他不会来，他还真来了！ **wǒ yǐwéi tā bú huì lái tā hái zhēn lái le** I didn't think he'd come, but he really did!

dialogue what's up with xiaoming?

anna 你哥哥最近到底怎么了？老是不回我的消息。
nǐ gēge zuìjìn dàodǐ zěnme le lǎoshì bù huí wǒ de xiāoxi · What on earth is up with your brother lately? He never answers my messages.

little sister 什么？他不是很忙吗？
shénme tā bú shì hěn máng ma · What? Isn't he just busy?

anna 难道他在生我的气吗？我怀疑是我做错了什么。
nándào tā zài shēng wǒ de qì ma wǒ huáiyí shì wǒ zuò cuò le shénme · Surely he isn't angry with me? I suspect I did something wrong.

little sister 我猜他并没有生气。他昨天还说你是他最好的朋友呢。
wǒ cāi tā bìng méiyǒu shēngqì tā zuótiān hái shuō nǐ shì tā zuìhǎo de péngyou ne · I bet he isn't angry at all. Only yesterday he said you're his best friend.

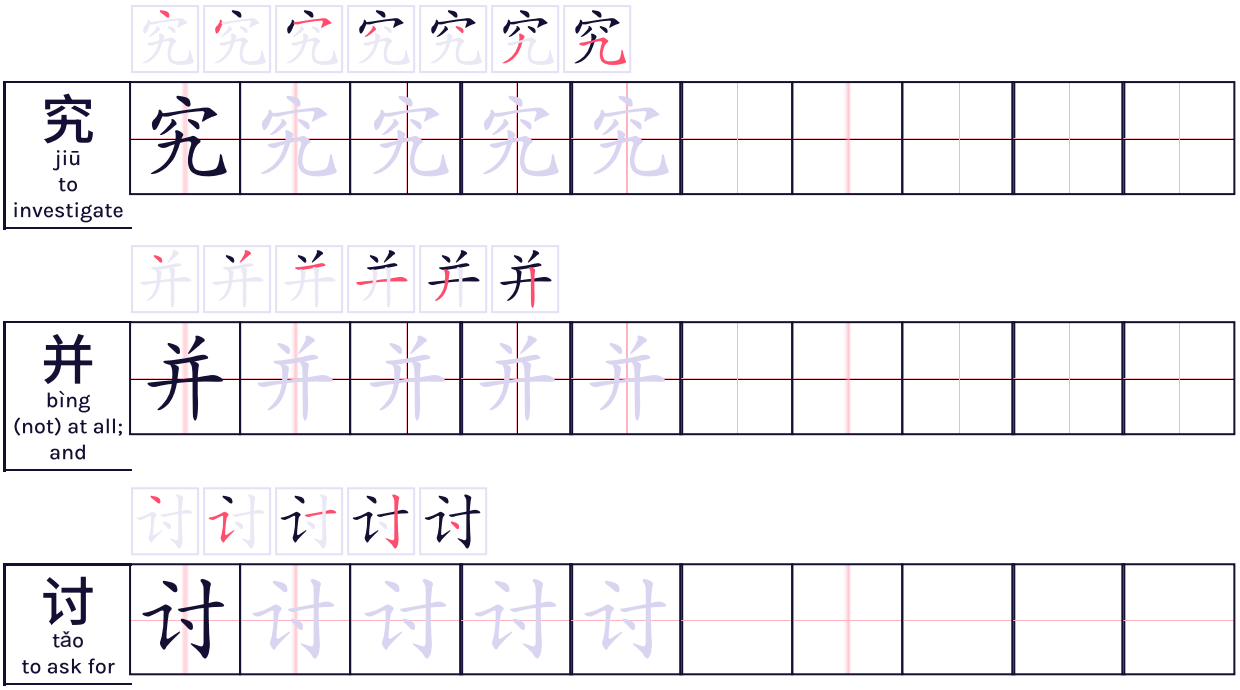
anna 那他究竟为什么不跟我说话？我实在想不明白。
nà tā jiūjìng wèi shénme bù gēn wǒ shuōhuà wǒ shízài xiǎng bu míngbai · Then why exactly won't he talk to me? I honestly can't work it out.

little sister 嗯……这个原因我不能告诉任何人。
ǹg zhège yuányīn wǒ bù néng gàosu rènhé rén · Hmm… the reason is something I can't tell anyone.

anna 原来你知道！你真讨厌，快说！
yuánlái nǐ zhīdào nǐ zhēn tǎoyàn kuài shuō · So you do know! You're awful. Tell me!

little sister 我就不告诉你！我是跟你开玩笑的。过几天你就知道了，你一定会很吃惊的。
wǒ jiù bú gàosu nǐ wǒ shì gēn nǐ kāi wánxiào de guò jǐ tiān nǐ jiù zhīdào le nǐ yídìng huì hěn chījīng de · I'm just not telling you! I'm only teasing. You'll find out in a few days, and you'll be so surprised.

write it trace the grey, then write your own



good to know · 到底 and 究竟 both mean “what on earth, exactly”. 究竟 is more formal and written; neither goes with 吗: 你到底去不去？ 一下 can also mean “all at once, in a flash”: 我一下就明白了, I got it straight away.

Now you can dig for the truth, sound properly surprised, and laugh it off when it’s a joke.
Do this day interactively, with audio and games, free at **wishyou.today/learning**

day 17 what do you think?

Give your opinion, agree or disagree politely, and say “let me think about it”.

Big decisions in China are often talked over with family and friends. Now you can join in.

words

word	pinyin	meaning	example
尽管	jǐnguǎn	although; feel free to	尽管很累，她还是坚持跑步。 Although she’s tired, she keeps up her running.
然而	ránér	however	他很努力，然而还是没有通过考试。 He worked hard; however, he still didn’t pass the exam.
看法	kànfǎ	view, opinion	你对这件事有什么看法? What’s your view on this?
想法	xiǎngfǎ	idea, way of thinking	这个想法不错，我们试试吧。 That’s a good idea. Let’s try it.
说法	shuōfǎ	way of saying; version, claim	这只是一种说法，不一定是真的。 That’s only one version; it isn’t necessarily true.
主意	zhǔyi	idea, plan	我有一个好主意! I’ve got a good idea!
考虑	kǎolǜ	to consider, think over	这件事我要考虑一下。 I need to think this over.
商量	shāngliang	to discuss, talk over	我们商量一下周末去哪儿吧。 Let’s talk about where to go this weekend.
谈	tán	to talk, discuss	我想跟你谈谈工作的事。 I’d like to talk with you about work.
反对	fǎnduì	to oppose, be against	爸爸妈妈不反对我出国留学。 My parents aren’t against me studying abroad.
支持	zhīchí	to support	你想做什么，我都支持你。 Whatever you want to do, I’ll support you.
肯定	kěndìng	sure; certainly	他肯定会来的，别担心。 He’ll definitely come, don’t worry.
表示	biǎoshì	to express, show	我想送她一件礼物，表示感谢。 I’d like to give her a present to say thank you.
理解	lǐjiě	to understand	我理解你的心情。 I understand how you feel.
接受	jiēshòu	to accept	他接受了我们的邀请。 He accepted our invitation.
复杂	fùzá	complicated	这个问题太复杂了，我们慢慢谈。 This is too complicated. Let’s talk it through slowly.
再说	zàishuō	besides; deal with it later	今天太晚了，再说外面还在下雨，你别走了。 It’s too late, and besides, it’s still raining. Don’t go.

面对	miànduì	to face	我们要面对问题，不能害怕。 We have to face the problem, not be afraid of it.

pattern although: 尽管……，但是……

尽管 | a fact | ，但是 / 可是 | what happens anyway

尽管 means “although”. It starts the first half; 但是 or 可是 (often with 还是 or 却) starts the second half: what happens anyway. It’s a little stronger and more written than 虽然. 然而 “however” starts a second sentence, mostly in writing.

尽管工作很忙，但是她每天都学习汉语。 **jǐnguǎn gōngzuò hěn máng dànshì tā měi tiān dōu xuéxí Hànyǔ** Although work is busy, she studies Chinese every day.

尽管我们是好朋友，可是我们的看法常常不同。 **jǐnguǎn wǒmen shì hǎo péngyou kěshì wǒmen de kànfǎ chángcháng bù tóng** Although we’re good friends, we often see things differently.

他准备了很长时间，然而最后还是失败了。 **tā zhǔnbèi le hěn cháng shíjiān ránér zuìhòu háishi shībài le** He prepared for a long time; however, in the end he still failed.

dialogue a job in shanghai?

xiaoming 安娜，上海的一家公司给了我一个工作机会！我想跟你谈谈。
Ānnà Shànghǎi de yì jiā gōngsī gěi le wǒ yí gè gōngzuò jīhuì wǒ xiǎng gēn nǐ tán tan · Anna, a company in Shanghai has offered me a job! I’d like to talk it over with you.

anna 太好了！你肯定很高兴吧?
tài hǎo le nǐ kěndìng hěn gāoxìng ba · That’s great! You must be thrilled!

xiaoming 尽管我很高兴，但是我妈妈反对我去上海。事情有点儿复杂。
jǐnguǎn wǒ hěn gāoxìng dànshì wǒ māma fǎnduì wǒ qù Shànghǎi shìqing yǒudiǎnr fùzá · I am, but my mum is against me going to Shanghai. It’s a bit complicated.

anna 她的想法是什么?
tā de xiǎngfǎ shì shénme · What does she think?

xiaoming 她觉得上海太远了。我爸爸却支持我去，还表示会帮我找房子。
tā juéde Shànghǎi tài yuǎn le wǒ bàba què zhīchí wǒ qù hái biǎoshì huì bāng wǒ zhǎo fángzi · She thinks Shanghai is too far. My dad, though, is all for it, and he’s even offered to help me find a flat.

anna 我理解你妈妈的心情。上海的机会很好，然而离家太远，她当然会担心。再说，你在北京也有很多机会。
wǒ lǐjiě nǐ māma de xīnqíng Shànghǎi de jīhuì hěn hǎo ránér lí jiā tài yuǎn tā dāngrán huì dānxīn zàishuō nǐ zài Běijīng yě yǒu hěn duō jīhuì · I understand how your mum feels. Shanghai is a great opportunity; however, it’s a long way from home, so of course she worries. Besides, you have lots of chances in Beijing too.

xiaoming 你的意思是，你也不想让我去?
nǐ de yìsi shì nǐ yě bù xiǎng ràng wǒ qù · So you don’t want me to go either?

anna 我没这么说。这是你要面对的事，你要自己认真考虑。
wǒ méi zhème shuō zhè shì nǐ yào miànduì de shì nǐ yào zìjǐ rènzhēn kǎolǜ · I didn’t say that. It’s your decision to face; you need to think it over carefully yourself.

xiaoming 其实，我有点儿不敢一个人去那么远的地方。嗯，我再跟家人商量商量，然后决定接不接受。
qíshí wǒ yǒudiǎnr bù gǎn yí gè rén qù nàme yuǎn de dìfang ng wǒ zài gēn jiārén shāngliang shāngliang ránhòu juédìng jiē bu jiēshòu · Actually, I don’t quite dare to go somewhere so far on my own. Mm. I’ll talk it over with my family again, then decide whether to accept.

write it trace the grey, then write your own

管
guǎn
to be in charge of, look after



量
liáng
to measure



谈
tán
to talk, discuss



支
zhī
to prop up



good to know · 尽管 can also mean “feel free, go ahead”: 有问题尽管问 Ask anything you like. 然而 is written and formal. In conversation people say 但是 or 可是.

You can now share your view, disagree kindly and ask for time to think: real grown-up conversations. Do this day interactively, with audio and games, free at **wishyou.today/learning**

day 18 good friends

Describe a friendship, correct a wrong idea, and invite friends to get together.

Friendships in China often start with a meal or a get-together, and these words keep them going.

words

word	pinyin	meaning	example
而	ér	and; but; while	哥哥喜欢运动，而妹妹喜欢画画。 The brother loves sport, while the sister loves drawing.
与	yǔ	and; with (written)	这本书讲的是中国与世界的关系。 This book is about China and the world.
友情	yǒuqíng	friendship (the feeling)	我们的友情是从中学开始的。 Our friendship started at secondary school.
友谊	yǒuyì	friendship	我们的友谊已经有十年了。 Our friendship goes back ten years.
友好	yǒuhǎo	friendly	这里的人对外国人很友好。 People here are very friendly to foreigners.
对方	duìfāng	the other person, the other side	朋友之间要尊重对方的想法。 Friends should respect each other's ideas.
共同	gòngtóng	common, shared; together	我们有很多共同的爱好。 We have a lot of hobbies in common.
交流	jiāoliú	to communicate, exchange	我常常|用汉语跟中国朋友交流。 I often talk with Chinese friends in Chinese.
聚	jù	to get together	我们好久没聚了，周末出来吃个饭吧。 We haven't got together for ages. Let's have a meal this weekend.
聚会	jùhuì	party, get-together	周六晚上我家有个聚会，你来吗? I'm having people over on Saturday night. Will you come?
陪	péi	to keep someone company, go with	明天我陪你去医院吧。 I'll come to the hospital with you tomorrow.
熟悉	shúxi	familiar; to get to know	我对这个城市还不太熟悉。 I don't know this city very well yet.
适应	shìyìng	to adapt to, get used to	刚来北京的时候，我很不适应这里的冬天。 When I first came to Beijing, I struggled with the winters.
印象	yìnxiàng	impression	你对他的第一印象怎么样? What was your first impression of him?
之间	zhījiān	between, among	朋友之间应该互相帮助。 Friends should help each other.
鼓励	gǔlì	to encourage	老师常常鼓励我们多说汉语。 Our teacher often encourages us to speak more Chinese.
信心	xìnxīn	confidence	别担心，我对你有信心! Don't worry, I believe in you!

尊重	zūnzhòng	to respect	我们应该尊重别人的想法。 We should respect other people's views.

pattern not a but b: 不是……，而是……

不是 A (wrong) ，而是 B (right)

不是A，而是B corrects an idea: it isn't A, it's actually B. 而 is a written "and, but, while"; here it points to the right answer. It also contrasts two people (哥哥喜欢……，而妹妹喜欢……) or joins two qualities: 简单而有用.

他不是不想来，而是太忙了。 **tā bú shì bù xiǎng lái ér shì tài máng le** It's not that he doesn't want to come; he's just too busy.

我学汉语不是为了考试，而是因为我喜欢中国文化。 **wǒ xué Hànyǔ bú shì wèile kǎoshì ér shì yīnwèi wǒ xǐhuan Zhōngguó wénhuà** I learn Chinese not for exams, but because I love Chinese culture.

这不是你一个人的事，而是我们共同的事。 **zhè bú shì nǐ yí gè rén de shì ér shì wǒmen gòngtóng de shì** This isn't just your problem; it's something we share.

dialogue a party for a new neighbour

reporter zhou 安娜，谢谢你请我来参加聚会。
Ānnà xièxie nǐ qǐng wǒ lái cānjiā jùhuì · Anna, thanks for inviting me to your party.

anna 别客气！你刚搬来，我想让你多认识一些朋友。
bié kèqi nǐ gāng bān lái wǒ xiǎng ràng nǐ duō rènshi yìxiē péngyou · Not at all! You've just moved in, and I want you to meet some people.

reporter zhou 你的朋友们都很友好。我对小明的印象特别好。
nǐ de péngyoumen dōu hěn yǒuhǎo wǒ duì Xiǎomíng de yìnxiàng tèbié hǎo · Your friends are all so friendly. I really like Xiaoming.

anna 他是我在北京最好的朋友。我们不是普通朋友，而是像家人一样。
tā shì wǒ zài Běijīng zuìhǎo de péngyou wǒmen bú shì pǔtōng péngyou ér shì xiàng jiārén yíyàng · He's my best friend in Beijing. We're not just friends; we're like family.

reporter zhou 你们是怎么认识的？
nǐmen shì zěnme rènshi de · How did you meet?

anna 我刚来的时候，什么都不熟悉，也不适应这里的生活。是他陪我去办的手机卡。
wǒ gāng lái de shíhou shénme dōu bù shúxi yě bú shìyìng zhèlǐ de shēnghuó shì tā péi wǒ qù bàn de shǒujī kǎ · When I first arrived, nothing was familiar and I wasn't used to life here. He came with me to get a phone card.

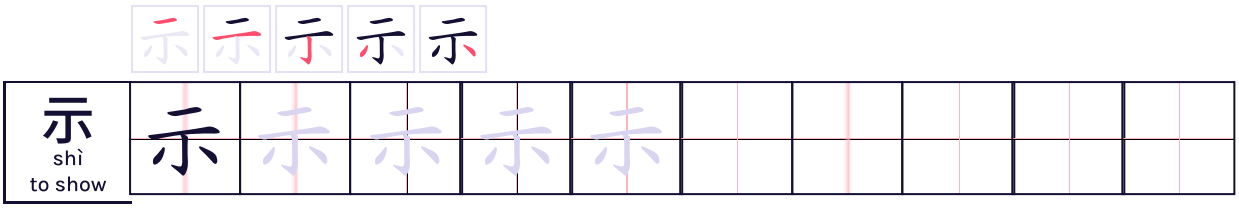
reporter zhou 他一定帮了你很多吧？
tā yídìng bāng le nǐ hěn duō ba · He must have helped you a lot.

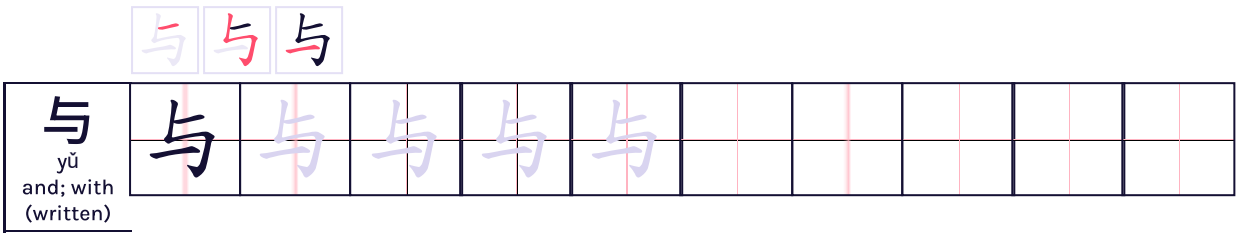
anna 是啊。他还常常鼓励我多用汉语跟别人交流。
shì a tā hái chángcháng gǔlì wǒ duō yòng Hànyǔ gēn biérén jiāoliú · He did. And he always encouraged me to speak Chinese with people.

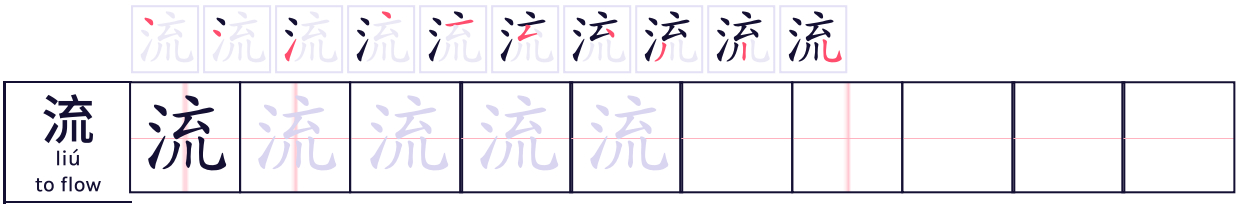
reporter zhou 跟新朋友相比，老朋友更让人放心。
gēn xīn péngyou xiāngbǐ lǎo péngyou gèng ràng rén fàngxīn · Compared with new friends, old friends are someone you can count on.

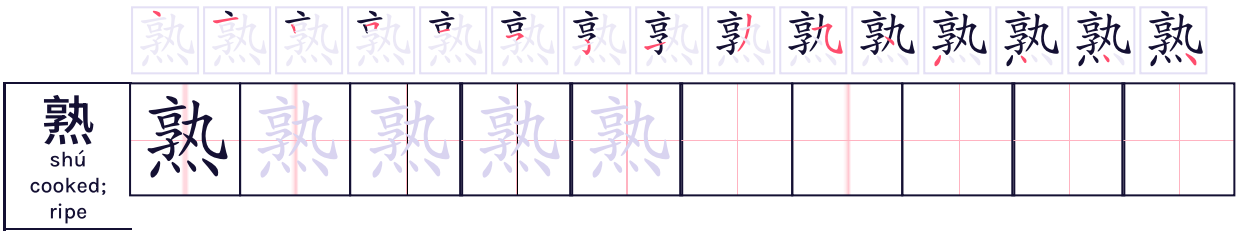
anna 对。可是新朋友也很重要啊！欢迎你！
duì kěshì xīn péngyou yě hěn zhòngyào a huānyíng nǐ · True. But new friends matter too! Welcome!

write it trace the grey, then write your own









good to know · 关系 can also be a verb: 这关系到你的健康 This affects your health. 间 is also a noun for “between”: 之间, 中间. 朋友之间 means “between friends”. 对 is also a measure word for pairs of people or things: 一对好朋友, a pair of good friends.

Now you can welcome a new friend, say what a friendship means to you, and set the record straight. Do this day interactively, with audio and games, free at **wishyou.today/learning**

day 19 love stories

Talk about a film or book that moved you, and say you had no choice.

Films and stories are the easiest way into a chat, and these words help you say what touched you.

words

word	pinyin	meaning	example
既	jì	both … (and); since	她既聪明又努力。 She's both clever and hard-working.
不得不	bùdébù	have to, have no choice but	雨太大了，我们不得不回家。 The rain was so heavy we had to go home.
爱情	àiqíng	love (romantic)	这是一个关于爱情的老故事。 It's an old love story.
爱心	àixīn	kindness, a caring heart	她很有爱心，常常帮助老人。 She's very caring and often helps elderly people.
浪漫	làngmàn	romantic	这个电影很浪漫。 This film is very romantic.
约	yuē	to arrange to meet; about	我约了小刘明天一起去爬山。 I've arranged to go hiking with Xiao Liu tomorrow.
约会	yuēhuì	date, appointment	电影里的那个男的第一次约会就迟到了。 In the film, the guy turns up late for their very first date.
抱	bào	to hug, hold in your arms	妹妹抱着大白，不想让它走。 My little sister hugged Dabai and didn't want to let him go.
美好	měihǎo	wonderful, lovely (life, memories)	大学生活是一段美好的回忆。 University life is a lovely memory.
感情	gǎnqíng	feelings; emotional bond	小明和他妹妹的感情很好。 Xiaoming and his sister are very close.
感动	gǎndòng	moved, touched	看到这封信，妈妈感动得哭了。 When Mum read the letter, she was moved to tears.
感人	gǎnrén	moving, touching	这个故事非常感人。 This story is really moving.
内心	nèixīn	inner self, heart	他笑着说没事，其实内心很难过。 He smiled and said he was fine, but inside he was really upset.
失去	shīqù	to lose	别失去信心，你一定能做到。 Don't lose heart. You can definitely do it.
真正	zhēnzhèng	real, true; truly	真正的朋友会在你困难的时候帮助你。 A true friend helps you when things are hard.
一切	yīqiè	everything, all	谢谢你为我做的一切。 Thank you for everything you've done for me.

日记	rìjì	diary	妹妹每天晚上都写日记。 My little sister writes in her diary every night.
日子	rìzi	day; days, life	那段日子虽然很累，但是很快乐。 Those days were tiring, but they were happy.

pattern both … and …: 既……又……

既 | quality 1 | 又 / 也 | quality 2

既A又B says something is both A and B, and both count: 既便宜又好吃 cheap, and tasty too. Use 又 with two short adjectives or verbs; 也 is common when the second part is longer. 既 and 又 go right before the words they join. Two negatives make a strong yes: 不得不 (have no choice but to), 没有人不…… (everyone).

这个电影既浪漫又感人。 **zhège diànyǐng jì làngmàn yòu gǎnrén** This film is romantic and moving.

他既是我的老师，也是我的朋友。 **tā jì shì wǒ de lǎoshī yě shì wǒ de péngyou** He's my teacher and my friend too.

她既有爱心，又有耐心。 **tā jì yǒu àixīn yòu yǒu nàixīn** She's kind and patient too.

这里的人没有不认识他的。 **zhèlǐ de rén méiyǒu bú rènshi tā de** Everyone here knows him.

dialogue after the film

little sister 这个电影太感人了！我哭了三次。
zhège diànyǐng tài gǎnrén le wǒ kū le sān cì · That film was so moving! I cried three times.

anna 是啊，既浪漫又有意思。我也很感动。
shì a jì làngmàn yòu yǒu yìsi wǒ yě hěn gǎndòng · Yes, it was romantic and fun too. I was really moved.

little sister 他们第一次约会的时候，下了很大的雪，太美了。
tāmen dì yī cì yuēhuì de shíhou xià le hěn dà de xuě tài měi le · On their first date it snowed and snowed. So beautiful.

anna 可是最后那个男的不得不离开她，我真受不了。
kěshì zuìhòu nàge nán de bùdébù líkāi tā wǒ zhēn shòubuliǎo · But in the end he had no choice but to leave her. I couldn't bear it.

little sister 还好十年以后，他们又见面了。他从来没有忘记她。
hái hǎo shí nián yǐhòu tāmen yòu jiànmiàn le tā cónglái méiyǒu wàngjì tā · Luckily they met again ten years later. He had never forgotten her.

anna 他抱着她说：“我再也不想失去你了。”
tā bào zhe tā shuō wǒ zài yě bù xiǎng shīqù nǐ le · He held her and said, "I never want to lose you again."

little sister 电影院里没有一个人不哭的。真正的感情是时间带不走的。
diànyǐngyuàn lǐ méiyǒu yí gè rén bù kū de zhēnzhèng de gǎnqíng shì shíjiān dài bu zǒu de · There wasn't a single person in the cinema who didn't cry. Real feelings are something time can't take away.

anna 说得好！
shuō de hǎo · Well said!

little sister 我要把今天的感受写在日记里。
wǒ yào bǎ jīntiān de gǎnshòu xiě zài rìjì lǐ · I'm going to write about today in my diary.

anna 好啊。以后再看日记，你还会想起这些美好的日子。
hǎo a yǐhòu zài kàn rìjì nǐ hái huì xiǎng qǐ zhèxiē měihǎo de rìzi · Good idea. When you read it again one day, you'll remember these lovely days.

write it trace the grey, then write your own

印
yìn
to print, stamp



象
xiàng
image



之
zhī
of (written); in fractions



约
yuē
to arrange to meet; about



good to know · Two negatives make a strong yes: 没有人不喜欢她 everyone likes her; 不得不 have no choice but to. 真 is also an adjective: 真的 real, 真正的朋友 a true friend.

Now you can share a story that moved you, and say "I had no choice" when life gets in the way.
Do this day interactively, with audio and games, free at **wishyou.today/learning**

day 20 making up

Clear up a misunderstanding, make up, and promise "even if …, I'll still …".

Every friendship has a bumpy day. Saying sorry well in Chinese keeps friends close.

words

word	pinyin	meaning	example
即使	jíshǐ	even if	即使明天下雨，我们也要去。 Even if it rains tomorrow, we're still going.
改变	gǎibiàn	to change	来中国以后，我的很多想法都改变了。 Since coming to China, a lot of my ideas have changed.
之后	zhīhòu	after, afterwards	下班之后，我们去吃饭吧。 Let's go and eat after work.
之前	zhīqián	before	睡觉之前，我常常看一会儿书。 I often read for a while before bed.
仍	réng	still (written)	十年过去了，他仍在这家公司工作。 Ten years on, he still works at the same company.
仍然	réngrán	still	尽管很累，她仍然坚持学习。 Even though she's tired, she still keeps studying.
另	lìng	other, another	这件衣服太小了，我想换另一件。 This top is too small. I'd like to swap it for another one.
巧	qiǎo	what a coincidence; skilful	真巧！我也在这儿吃饭。 What a coincidence! I'm eating here too.
眼前	yǎnqián	before your eyes; right now	别只{zhi3}看眼前，要多想想以后。 Don't just think about now; think about the future too.
羡慕	xiànmù	to envy, admire	我很羡慕你能说这么多种语言。 I really envy you being able to speak so many languages.
点头	diǎntóu	to nod	老师问我们懂不懂，大家都点头了。 The teacher asked if we understood, and everyone nodded.
好好	hǎohǎo	properly, well; nicely	你累了，今天晚上好好休息吧。 You're tired. Get a good rest tonight.
抬头	táitóu	to raise your head, look up	他抬头看了看天，说要下雨了。 He looked up at the sky and said it was going to rain.
拉	lā	to pull	妹妹拉着我的手，不让我走。 My little sister held onto my hand and wouldn't let me go.
感	gǎn	sense of (…感)	这个小区很安静，让人很有安全感。 This neighbourhood is quiet; it makes you feel safe.

pattern even if: 即使……，也……

即使 / 就是 | even if … | ，(who) 也 | still …

即使A，也B: even if A happens, B is still true. In conversation people often say 就是A，也B. The 也 goes after the subject in the second half: 即使下雨，我们也去.

即使你不同意，我也要试试。 **jíshǐ nǐ bù tóngyì wǒ yě yào shì shi** Even if you don't agree, I want to give it a go.

就是再忙，他也会来看你。 **jiùshì zài máng tā yě huì lái kàn nǐ** However busy he is, he'll come and see you.

即使失败了，也没关系。 **jíshǐ shībài le yě méi guānxi** Even if it doesn't work out, that's OK.

即使大家都不相信你，我也仍然相信你。 **jíshǐ dàjiā dōu bù xiāngxìn nǐ wǒ yě réngrán xiāngxìn nǐ** Even if nobody else believes you, I still do.

dialogue making up

xiaoming 安娜，你还在生我的气吗?
Ānnà nǐ hái zài shēng wǒ de qì ma · Anna, are you still angry with me?

anna 没有，我只是有点儿失望。你说你很忙，我却看见你拉着小刘进了商场。
méiyǒu wǒ zhǐshì yǒudiǎnr shīwàng nǐ shuō nǐ hěn máng wǒ què kànjiàn nǐ lā zhe XiǎoLiú jìn le shāngchǎng · No, I'm just a bit disappointed. You said you were busy, but then I saw you dragging Xiao Liu into the mall.

xiaoming 真巧，你也在那儿！我们是在买东西……原因以后告诉你。
zhēn qiǎo nǐ yě zài nàr wǒmen shì zài mǎi dōngxi yuányīn yǐhòu gàosu nǐ · What a coincidence, you were there too! We were shopping... I'll tell you why later.

anna 你不想说，也没关系。
nǐ bù xiǎng shuō yě méi guānxi · If you don't want to say, that's fine.

xiaoming 别这样。即使我再忙，也不会故意不回你的消息。
bié zhèyàng jíshǐ wǒ zài máng yě bú huì gùyì bù huí nǐ de xiāoxi · Don't be like that. However busy I am, I'd never ignore your messages on purpose.

anna 那你抬头看着我，再说一次。
nà nǐ táitóu kàn zhe wǒ zài shuō yí cì · Then look up at me and say that again.

xiaoming 好。就是你不相信，我也要说：你仍是我最好的朋友。
hǎo jiùshì nǐ bù xiāngxìn wǒ yě yào shuō nǐ réng shì wǒ zuìhǎo de péngyou · OK. Even if you don't believe me, I'll say it: you're still my best friend.

anna 好吧，我相信你。也许是我想得太多了。
hǎo ba wǒ xiāngxìn nǐ yěxǔ shì wǒ xiǎng de tài duō le · OK, I believe you. Maybe I was overthinking it.

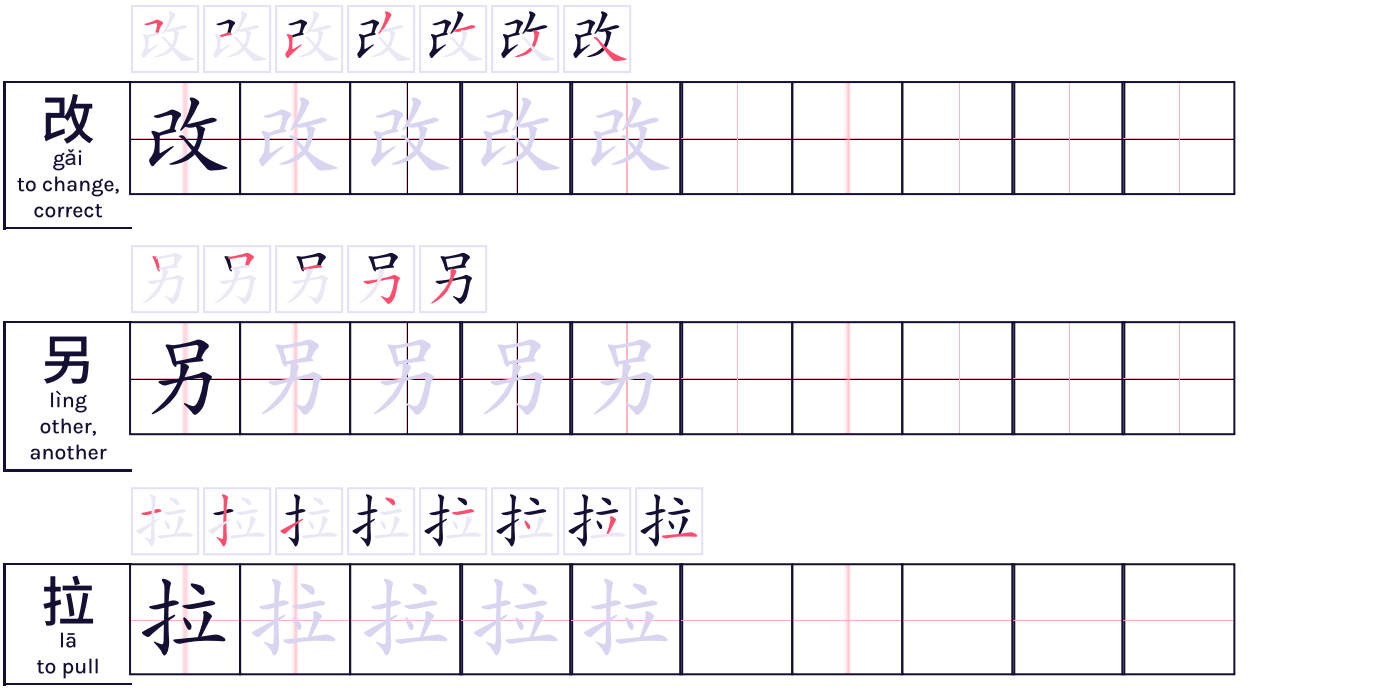
xiaoming 你点头了！今天晚上我们去另一家饭馆试试吧，听说那儿不光菜好吃，还很便宜。
nǐ diǎntóu le jīntiān wǎnshang wǒmen qù lìng yì jiā fànguǎn shì shi ba tīngshuō nàr bùguāng cài hǎochī hái hěn piányi · You nodded! Let's try a different restaurant tonight. I hear the food there isn't just good, it's cheap too.

anna 好啊！那这次你请客！
hǎo a nà zhè cì nǐ qǐngkè · Sure! Then this time it's your treat!

write it trace the grey, then write your own

内 内 内 内

内
nèi
inside, within



good to know · 即使 and 就是 both mean “even if”. 即使 works anywhere; 就是 is more spoken. 之前 and 之后 are like 以前 and 以后, a little more formal: 睡觉之前 before bed, 下班之后 after work.

Saying sorry, clearing things up and making a promise: you can now look after a friendship in Chinese.
Do this day interactively, with audio and games, free at **wishyou.today/learning**

day 21 xiaoming's surprise

Follow a whole surprise story: hurt feelings, doubts, a surprise party and a big decision, and say how it all made you feel.

Feelings, opinions and friendship come together in one evening, just like in real life.

chapter 1 nobody remembers

manager chen 安娜，你今天的心情好像不太好。
Ānnà nǐ jīntiān de xīnqíng hǎoxiàng bú tài hǎo · Anna, you don't seem very cheerful today.

anna 今天是我的生日，可是好像没有人记得。
jīntiān shì wǒ de shēngrì kěshì hǎoxiàng méiyǒu rén jìde · It's my birthday today, but nobody seems to remember.

manager chen 生日快乐！别伤心，也许大家都太忙了。
shēngrì kuàilè bié shāngxīn yěxǔ dàjiā dōu tài máng le · Happy birthday! Don't be sad. Maybe everyone's just too busy.

anna 小明最近也老是很忙，一个消息都没有。我真的有点儿失望。
Xiǎomíng zuìjìn yě lǎoshì hěn máng yí gè xiāoxi dōu méiyǒu wǒ zhēn de yǒudiǎnr shīwàng · Xiaoming's always busy lately too. Not a single message. I'm honestly a bit disappointed.

manager chen 他会不会是故意不回你的?
tā huì bu huì shì gùyì bù huí nǐ de · Could he be ignoring you on purpose?

anna 我也怀疑过。可是即使他再忙，也应该回一个消息吧？他这样，我真受不了。
wǒ yě huáiyí guò kěshì jíshǐ tā zài máng yě yīnggāi huí yí gè xiāoxi ba tā zhèyàng wǒ zhēn shòubuliǎo · I've wondered that too. But even if he's really busy, he could send one message, right? I can't stand it when he's like this.

manager chen 我理解你的感受。可是朋友之间，有时候要多为对方想一想。也许他有自己的原因。
wǒ lǐjiě nǐ de gǎnshòu kěshì péngyou zhījiān yǒu shíhou yào duō wèi duìfāng xiǎng yi xiang yěxǔ tā yǒu zìjǐ de yuányīn · I understand how you feel. But between friends, sometimes you have to think from the other person's side. Maybe he has his reasons.

anna 希望是这样。我真不想失去这个朋友。说实在的，我现在烦死了。
xīwàng shì zhèyàng wǒ zhēn bù xiǎng shīqù zhège péngyou shuō shízài de wǒ xiànzài fán sǐ le · I hope so. I really don't want to lose him as a friend. Honestly, right now I'm totally fed up.

manager chen 别想那么多了。今天你早一点儿下班，好好休息吧。
bié xiǎng nàme duō le jīntiān nǐ zǎo yìdiǎnr xiàbān hǎohǎo xiūxi ba · Don't think about it so much. Leave a bit early today and have a proper rest.

anna 谢谢陈经理！您一直这么支持我。
xièxie Chénjīnglǐ nín yìzhí zhème zhīchí wǒ · Thank you, Manager Chen! You've always been so supportive.

manager chen 你工作这么认真，大家对你的印象都很好。去吧，祝你生日愉快！
nǐ gōngzuò zhème rènzhēn dàjiā duì nǐ de yìnxiàng dōu hěn hǎo qù ba zhù nǐ shēngrì yúkuài · You work so hard, everyone thinks highly of you. Off you go, and have a happy birthday!

chapter 2 come at seven

xiaoming 安娜，你下班了吗？我妈妈让你今天晚上来我家吃饭。
Ānnà nǐ xiàbān le ma wǒ māma ràng nǐ jīntiān wǎnshang lái wǒ jiā chī fàn · Anna, have you finished work? My mum wants you to come over for dinner tonight.

anna 今天？你到底在忙什么？这几天老是不回我的消息。
jīntiān nǐ dàodǐ zài máng shénme zhè jǐ tiān lǎoshì bù huí wǒ de xiāoxi · Tonight? What on earth have you been up to? You keep not answering my messages.

xiaoming 我并不是不想回，而是……你来了就知道了。
wǒ bìng bú shì bù xiǎng huí ér shì nǐ lái le jiù zhīdào le · It's not that I didn't want to reply, it's just… you'll see when you get here.

anna 你又在跟我开玩笑吧？你不说清楚，我才不去呢！
nǐ yòu zài gēn wǒ kāi wánxiào ba nǐ bù shuō qīngchu wǒ cái bú qù ne · You're kidding me again, aren't you? If you don't tell me what's going on, I'm not coming!

xiaoming 我妈妈说了，你就是不想来，也得来！七点，别迟到！
wǒ māma shuō le nǐ jiùshì bù xiǎng lái yě děi lái qī diǎn bié chídào · My mum says even if you don't want to come, you have to! Seven o'clock, don't be late!

anna 好吧。我总感觉你们有什么事。
hǎo ba wǒ zǒng gǎnjué nǐmen yǒu shénme shì · OK. I have a feeling you lot are up to something.

reporter zhou 安娜，真巧！你也要出去吗？
Ānnà zhēn qiǎo nǐ yě yào chūqù ma · Anna, what a coincidence! Are you going out too?

anna 是啊，小明家请我吃饭。你呢？
shì a Xiǎomíng jiā qǐng wǒ chī fàn nǐ ne · Yes, Xiaoming's family has invited me to dinner. And you?

reporter zhou 我约了一个朋友，晚上有个约会。你看起来好像有什么烦恼？
wǒ yuē le yí gè péngyou wǎnshang yǒu gè yuēhuì nǐ kàn qǐlai hǎoxiàng yǒu shénme fánnǎo · I'm meeting a friend, I've got plans tonight. You look like something's bothering you.

anna 也没什么。今天是我的生日，可是小明好像忘了。其实我内心有点儿难过。
yě méi shénme jīntiān shì wǒ de shēngrì kěshì Xiǎomíng hǎoxiàng wàng le qíshí wǒ nèixīn yǒudiǎnr nánguò · It's nothing really. It's my birthday today, but Xiaoming seems to have forgotten. Deep down I'm a bit hurt.

reporter zhou 别难过。真正的朋友不会忘记你的生日的。
bié nánguò zhēnzhèng de péngyou bú huì wàngjì nǐ de shēngrì de · Don't be sad. A real friend won't forget your birthday.

anna 希望是这样。祝你们玩得愉快！
xīwàng shì zhèyàng zhù nǐmen wán de yúkuài · I hope you're right. Have a lovely time!

chapter 3 happy birthday, anna!

anna 家里怎么没有人？灯也没开。
jiā lǐ zěnme méiyǒu rén dēng yě méi kāi · Why is nobody home? The lights aren't even on.

little sister 安娜姐姐，抬头看！生日快乐！
Ānnà jiějie táitóu kàn shēngrì kuàilè · Anna, look up! Happy birthday!

anna 原来是你们！我太吃惊了，真不敢相信眼前的一切。
yuánlái shì nǐmen wǒ tài chījīng le zhēn bù gǎn xiāngxìn yǎnqián de yíqiè · So it's all of you! I'm so surprised, I can't believe what I'm seeing.

reporter zhou 你看，我的“约会”就是这个！
nǐ kàn wǒ de yuēhuì jiùshì zhège · See? This was my “plans tonight”!

anna 你们真讨厌，都故意不告诉我！气死我了！
nǐmen zhēn tǎoyàn dōu gùyì bú gàosu wǒ qì sǐ wǒ le · You're awful, all of you, keeping it from me on purpose! You drive me mad!

xiao liu 你还真没猜到啊！这几天小明老是拉着我去商场，就是为了给你买礼物。
nǐ hái zhēn méi cāi dào a zhè jǐ tiān Xiǎomíng lǎoshì lā zhe wǒ qù shāngchǎng jiùshì wèile gěi nǐ mǎi lǐwù · Ha, you really didn't guess! Xiaoming kept dragging me to the mall all week, just to buy you a present.

anna 难道那天我在商场看见你们，就是在买这个吗？
nándào nà tiān wǒ zài shāngchǎng kànjiàn nǐmen jiùshì zài mǎi zhège ma · You mean the day I saw you at the mall, you were buying this?

xiaoming 对！对不起，那天我不得不说我很忙。你还在生我的气吗？
duì duìbuqǐ nà tiān wǒ bùdébù shuō wǒ hěn máng nǐ hái zài shēng wǒ de qì ma · Yes! Sorry, that day I had no choice but to say I was busy. Are you still cross with me?

anna 不生气了。我太激动了，我的心现在还跳得厉害呢！
bù shēngqì le wǒ tài jīdòng le wǒ de xīn xiànzài hái tiào de lìhai ne · Not any more. I'm so excited, my heart is still pounding!

little sister 我们准备了一个星期，我都兴奋死了！快打开礼物看看！
wǒmen zhǔnbèi le yí gè xīngqī wǒ dōu xīngfèn sǐ le kuài dǎkāi lǐwù kàn kan · We've been getting ready for a week, I'm so excited I could burst! Open your present!

anna 是一个漂亮的日记本！这究竟是谁的主意？
shì yí gè piàoliang de rìjì běn zhè jiūjìng shì shéi de zhǔyi · It's a beautiful diary! Whose idea was this, then?

xiaoming 这是我们大家共同的主意！以后你可以把美好的日子都写在日记里。
zhè shì wǒmen dàjiā gòngtóng de zhǔyi yǐhòu nǐ kěyǐ bǎ měihǎo de rìzi dōu xiě zài rìjì lǐ · It was all of our idea together! Now you can write all your happy days in it.

reporter zhou 你看，大家既准备了蛋糕，又准备了你最喜欢的菜。蛋糕是妹妹做的，里面都是她的爱心。
nǐ kàn dàjiā jì zhǔnbèi le dàngāo yòu zhǔnbèi le nǐ zuì xǐhuan de cài dàngāo shì mèimei zuò de lǐmiàn dōu shì tā de àixīn · Look, everyone's made a cake and your favourite dishes too. Your little sister made the cake, with all her love.

anna 我真的很感动。谢谢你们为我做的一切！妹妹，来，让我抱抱你！
wǒ zhēn de hěn gǎndòng xièxie nǐmen wèi wǒ zuò de yíqiè mèimei lái ràng wǒ bào bao nǐ · I'm really touched. Thank you all for everything! Come here, let me give you a hug!

chapter 4 xiaoming's news

xiaoming 安娜，我还有一个好消息要告诉你。
Ānnà wǒ hái yǒu yí gè hǎo xiāoxi yào gàosu nǐ · Anna, I've got another piece of good news for you.

anna 还有？快说吧！
hái yǒu kuài shuō ba · There's more? Go on, tell me!

xiaoming 北京的另一家公司也给了我一个工作机会。我跟他们谈了好几次，他们表示很欢迎我。我考虑了很久，最后决定接受。
Běijīng de lìng yì jiā gōngsī yě gěi le wǒ yí gè gōngzuò jīhuì wǒ gēn tāmen tán le hǎo jǐ cì tāmen biǎoshì hěn huānyíng wǒ wǒ kǎolǜ le hěn jiǔ zuìhòu juédìng jiēshòu · Another company in Beijing has offered me a job too. I talked to them several times, and they said they'd be glad to have me. I thought about it for ages and decided to accept.

anna 太好了！可是你之前不是很想去上海吗？是什么改变了你的想法？
tài hǎo le kěshì nǐ zhīqián bú shì hěn xiǎng qù Shànghǎi ma shì shénme gǎibiàn le nǐ de xiǎngfǎ · That's fantastic! But didn't you really want to go to Shanghai before? What changed your mind?

xiaoming 我跟家人商量了很多次。上海的工作很好，然而离家实在太远了。尽管我也很喜欢上海，但是我的家人和朋友都在北京。再说，北京的工作也很有意思。
wǒ gēn jiārén shāngliang le hěn duō cì Shànghǎi de gōngzuò hěn hǎo ránér lí jiā shízài tài yuǎn le jǐnguǎn wǒ yě hěn xǐhuan Shànghǎi dànshì wǒ de jiārén hé péngyou dōu zài Běijīng zàishuō Běijīng de gōngzuò yě hěn yǒu yìsi · I talked it over with my family lots of times. The Shanghai job was great, but it really is too far from home. Although I like Shanghai too, my family and friends are all in Beijing. Besides, the Beijing job is interesting too.

dr li 一家人应该相互尊重。他的看法跟我们不一样的时候，我们也支持他。
yì jiā rén yīnggāi xiānghù zūnzhòng tā de kànfǎ gēn wǒmen bù yíyàng de shíhou wǒmen yě zhīchí tā · A family should respect each other. Even when his view is different from ours, we still back him.

ms zhang 我早就让他告诉你，他就是不听，一定要到今天才说。这次我一点儿也不反对！
wǒ zǎo jiù ràng tā gàosu nǐ tā jiùshì bù tīng yídìng yào dào jīntiān cái shuō zhè cì wǒ yìdiǎnr yě bù fǎnduì · I told him ages ago to tell you, but he just wouldn't listen: he had to wait until today. This time I'm not against it at all!

anna 我真羡慕你有这么好的家人。做这个决定不容易吧？
wǒ zhēn xiànmù nǐ yǒu zhème hǎo de jiārén zuò zhège juédìng bù róngyì ba · I really envy you, having such a lovely family. That can't have been an easy decision.

xiaoming 是不容易，事情也挺复杂的。可是这是我自己要面对的事。你放心，我才不后悔呢！
shì bù róngyì shìqing yě tǐng fùzá de kěshì zhè shì wǒ zìjǐ yào miànduì de shì nǐ fàngxīn wǒ cái bú hòuhuǐ ne · It wasn't easy, and it was quite complicated. But it was mine to face. Don't worry, I don't regret it one bit!

anna 我刚来北京的时候，什么都不熟悉，也不适应这里的生活。是你们一直陪着我、鼓励我多跟别人交流，让我有了信心。
wǒ gāng lái Běijīng de shíhou shénme dōu bù shúxi yě bú shìyìng zhèlǐ de shēnghuó shì nǐmen yìzhí péi zhe wǒ gǔlì wǒ duō gēn biérén jiāoliú ràng wǒ yǒu le xìnxīn · When I first came to Beijing, nothing was familiar and I wasn't used to life here. You were always there with me, encouraging me to talk to people, and you gave me confidence.

reporter zhou 你们之间的友情真感人，朋友就是要互相帮助。我真想把你们的故事写下来，就叫“北京的朋友与家人”。
nǐmen zhījiān de yǒuqíng zhēn gǎnrén péngyou jiùshì yào hùxiāng bāngzhù wǒ zhēn xiǎng bǎ nǐmen de gùshi xiě xialai jiù jiào Běijīng de péngyou yǔ jiārén · The friendship between you is really moving. That's what friends are for: helping each other. I'd love to write your story, and call it "Friends and Family in Beijing".

xiao liu 可惜王老师今天有事，不能来参加我们的聚会。来，小明，给大家讲个笑话吧！
kěxī Wánglǎoshī jīntiān yǒu shì bù néng lái cānjiā wǒmen de jùhuì lái Xiǎomíng gěi dàjiā jiǎng gè xiàohua ba · Shame Teacher Wang couldn't come to the party today. Come on, Xiaoming, tell us a joke!

little sister 别让他讲，他的笑话一点儿也不好笑！
bié ràng tā jiǎng tā de xiàohua yìdiǎnr yě bù hǎoxiào · Don't let him, his jokes aren't funny at all!

anna

有你们这些朋友，我真幸福。即使过了很多年，我也仍然会记得今天。以后我们要常常聚！

yǒu nǐmen zhèxiē péngyou wǒ zhēn xìngfú jíshǐ guò le hěn duō nián wǒ yě réngrán huì jìde jīntiān yǐhòu wǒmen yào chángcháng jù · With friends like you, I'm so lucky. Even many years from now, I'll still remember today. Let's get together often from now on!

Surprise, a little hurt, then joy: you just followed a whole evening of feelings in Chinese.
Do this day interactively, with audio and games, free at **wishyou.today/learning**

day 22 at the market

Buy food by the kilo, the bag and the slice, and count trees, machines and pictures.

Shopping for food is daily life in China, and the right measure word makes you sound like a local.

words

word	pinyin	meaning	example
袋子	dàizi	bag	超市的袋子要钱，我自己带了一个。 Bags cost money at the supermarket, so I brought my own.
棵	kē	(measure word for trees, plants)	我家门口有两棵大树。 There are two big trees outside my front door.
台	tái	(measure word for machines); stage	我们家买了一台新冰箱。 We've bought a new fridge.
幅	fú	(measure word for pictures)	这幅画是我妹妹画的。 My little sister painted this picture.
千克	qiānkè	kilogram	这些苹果一共三千克。 These apples come to three kilos.
克	kè	gram	这块面包有一百克。 This piece of bread weighs a hundred grams.
两	liǎng	liang (50 grams)	我要二两{liang3-4}饺子。 I'd like two liang (100 grams) of dumplings, please.
份	fèn	portion; copy; (measure word for jobs)	他找到了一份好工作。 He's found a good job.
片	piàn	slice, piece; (measure word for flat things)	早上我吃了两片面包。 I had two slices of bread this morning.
葡萄	pútao	grape	这些葡萄又大又甜。 These grapes are big and sweet.
西红柿	xīhóngshì	tomato	我想买两千克西红柿。 I'd like two kilos of tomatoes.
鲜	xiān	fresh; tasty (savoury)	超市里的鲜鱼已经卖完了。 The fresh fish at the supermarket has sold out.
食品	shípǐn	food (products), groceries	这家超市的食品都很新鲜。 Everything in this supermarket is very fresh.
食物	shíwù	food	我们要多吃健康的食物。 We should eat more healthy food.
少量	shǎoliàng	a small amount	我的咖啡里放少量的糖就够了。 A little sugar in my coffee is enough.
满	mǎn	full	袋子已经满了，别再放了。 The bag's full already. Don't put anything else in.

不够	bùgòu	not enough	两千克不够，再来一千克吧。 Two kilos isn't enough. Let's have another one.
够	gòu	enough	这些菜够我们三个人吃了。 This is enough food for the three of us.

pattern a tree, a machine, a big bag: 一棵, 一台, 一大袋

number | 大 / 小 | measure word | thing

New measure words: 棵 for trees and plants, 台 for machines, 幅 for pictures, 袋 for bags of something. You can slip 大 or 小 between the number and the measure word: 一大碗面条 a big bowl of noodles, 一小袋糖 a little bag of sugar.

我买了一大袋水果。 **wǒ mǎi le yí dà dài shuǐguǒ** I bought a big bag of fruit.

公园里有很多棵树。 **gōngyuán lǐ yǒu hěn duō kē shù** There are lots of trees in the park.

他送了我一幅画。 **tā sòng le wǒ yì fú huà** He gave me a painting.

我吃了一大碗面条。 **wǒ chī le yí dà wǎn miàntiáo** I ate a big bowl of noodles.

dialogue shopping with ms zhang

ms zhang 安娜，今天晚上我做饭，你陪我去超市买一点儿食物吧。
Ānnà jīntiān wǎnshang wǒ zuòfàn nǐ péi wǒ qù chāoshì mǎi yìdiǎnr shíwù ba · Anna, I'm cooking tonight. Come to the supermarket with me to get some food.

anna 好啊！我带了一个大袋子。
hǎo a wǒ dài le yí gè dà dàizi · Sure! I've brought a big bag.

ms zhang 先买菜。西红柿要两千克，一千克不够。再买一小袋葡萄。
xiān mǎi cài xīhóngshì yào liǎng qiānkè yì qiānkè búgòu zài mǎi yì xiǎo dài pútao · Vegetables first. Two kilos of tomatoes; one won't be enough. And let's get a small bag of grapes.

anna 这里的鲜鱼看起来也不错。
zhèlǐ de xiān yú kàn qǐlai yě búcuò · The fresh fish looks good here too.

ms zhang 对，我们买一条。这袋糖五百克，你看够吗？
duì wǒmen mǎi yì tiáo zhè dài táng wǔbǎi kè nǐ kàn gòu ma · Yes, let's get one. This bag of sugar is 500 grams. Do you think it's enough?

anna 够了。您做菜只放少量的糖。
gòu le nín zuò cài zhǐ fàng shǎoliàng de táng · That's enough. You only use a little sugar when you cook.

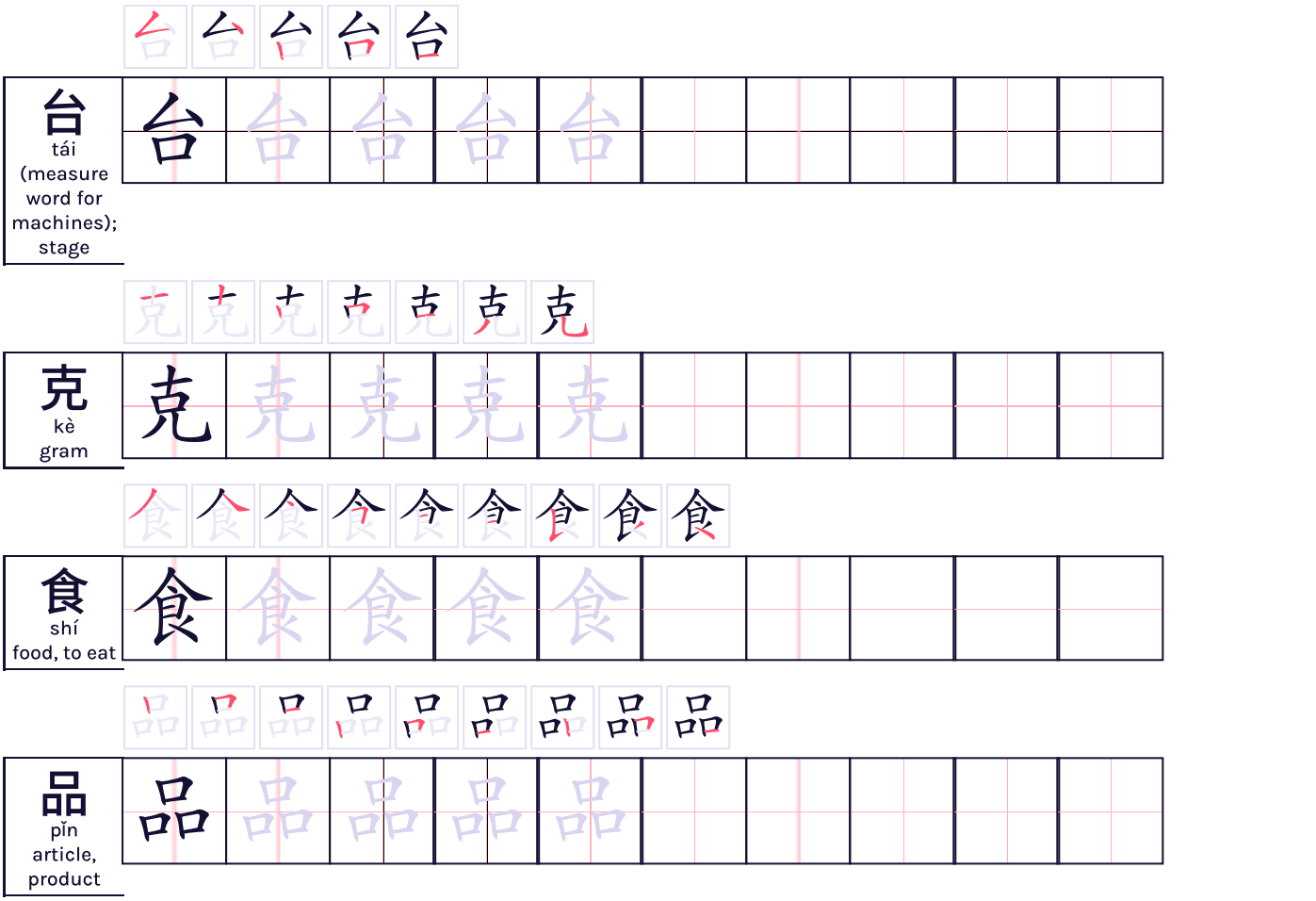
ms zhang 再买几片面包和一份饺子吧，明天早上吃。
zài mǎi jǐ piàn miànbāo hé yí fèn jiǎozi ba míngtiān zǎoshang chī · Let's get some slices of bread and a portion of dumplings for tomorrow morning.

anna 这家超市的食品都很新鲜，让人很放心。
zhè jiā chāoshì de shípǐn dōu hěn xīnxiān ràng rén hěn fàngxīn · Everything in this supermarket is so fresh. You can really trust it.

ms zhang 是啊。你看，袋子已经满了！
shì a nǐ kàn dàizi yǐjīng mǎn le · That's right. Oh, the bag's full already!

anna 那我们回家吧！
nà wǒmen huí jiā ba · Then let's go home!

write it trace the grey, then write your own



good to know · Dozens use the measure word 打 (dá): 一打鸡蛋 a dozen eggs. Noodle and dumpling shops in the north often sell by weight: 二两 is 100 grams. 半 can also mean “half-”: 门半开着 the door is half open; 半新 nearly new. After a list, 等 means “and so on, etc.”: 苹果、葡萄等水果. It’s written in the same way as 等 “wait”; you’ll meet it properly on day 63.

Kilos, grams, a big bag of this and a slice of that: you can do the weekly shop in Chinese.
Do this day interactively, with audio and games, free at **wishyou.today/learning**

day 23 cooking at home

Follow and give the steps of a simple recipe, and talk about smell and taste.

Cooking together is one of the warmest ways to spend time with a Chinese family.

words

word	pinyin	meaning	example
首先	shǒuxiān	first (of all)	首先，把西红柿洗干净。 First, wash the tomatoes.
其次	qícì	secondly; next	学语言，首先要多听，其次要多说。 To learn a language, first listen a lot, then speak a lot.
接着	jiēzhe	next; to carry on	吃完饭，我们接着聊吧。 Let's carry on chatting after we eat.
做法	zuòfǎ	way of making; method	这个菜的做法很简单。 This dish is easy to make.
刀	dāo	knife	小心，这把刀很快！ Careful, this knife is really sharp!
油	yóu	oil	少放一点儿油，健康一些。 Use a little less oil; it's healthier.
盐	yán	salt	汤里再放一点儿盐吧。 Put a bit more salt in the soup.
汤	tāng	soup	妈妈做的鸡蛋汤最|好喝。 Mum's egg soup is the best.
烤	kǎo	to roast, grill, bake	我最喜欢吃烤鱼。 Grilled fish is my favourite.
熟	shú	cooked; ripe	肉还没熟，再等几分钟。 The meat isn't done yet. Give it a few more minutes.
生	shēng	raw, uncooked	这个肉还|是生{sheng1-4-2}的，不能吃。 This meat is still raw. You can't eat it.
粗	cū	thick; rough	这种面条很粗，我很喜欢。 These noodles are nice and thick. I love them.
细	xì	thin, fine; careful	她做的面条又细又长。 Her noodles are long and thin.
倒	dào	to pour	请给我倒一杯水。 Could you pour me a glass of water?
香	xiāng	fragrant; smells good	什么菜这么香? What smells so good?
闻	wén	to smell	你闻闻，这个汤香不香? Have a sniff. Doesn't this soup smell good?
味	wèi	taste, flavour; smell	这种饮料是什么味的? What flavour is this drink?
味道	wèidào	taste, flavour	这个菜的味道怎么样? How does this dish taste?

pattern first, then: 首先……，然后……

首先 step 1 | 然后 / 接着 · 其次 | step 2

首先 means “first of all”. For steps in time order, carry on with 然后 (then) or 接着 (next). For reasons or points in a list, carry on with 其次 (secondly). 最后 rounds it all off.

首先把鸡蛋打在碗里，然后放一点儿盐。 **shǒuxiān bǎ jīdàn dǎ zài wǎn lǐ ránhòu fàng yìdiǎnr yán** First crack the eggs into a bowl, then add a little salt.

首先倒一点儿油，接着放西红柿。 **shǒuxiān dào yìdiǎnr yóu jiēzhe fàng xīhóngshì** First pour in a little oil, next add the tomatoes.

学做饭，首先要有兴趣，其次要多练习。 **xué zuòfàn shǒuxiān yào yǒu xìngqù qícì yào duō liànxí** To learn to cook, first you need to enjoy it; second, you need to practise.

dialogue tomato and egg soup

anna 阿姨，西红柿鸡蛋汤的做法难不难？
āyí xīhóngshì jīdàn tāng de zuòfǎ nán bu nán · Is tomato and egg soup hard to make?

ms zhang 不难。首先，把西红柿洗干净，然后把鸡蛋打在碗里。
bù nán shǒuxiān bǎ xīhóngshì xǐ gānjìng ránhòu bǎ jīdàn dǎ zài wǎn lǐ · Not at all. First, wash the tomatoes, then crack the eggs into a bowl.

anna 好了。接着呢？要用刀吗？
hǎo le jiēzhe ne yào yòng dāo ma · Done. What’s next? Do I need a knife?

ms zhang 西红柿要用刀。然后倒一点儿油，把西红柿放进去。
xīhóngshì yào yòng dāo ránhòu dào yìdiǎnr yóu bǎ xīhóngshì fàng jinqu · For the tomatoes, yes. Then pour in a little oil and put the tomatoes in.

anna 好香啊！我闻到西红柿的味了。
hǎo xiāng a wǒ wén dào xīhóngshì de wèi le · That smells amazing! I can smell the tomatoes.

ms zhang 接着倒水，水开了，把鸡蛋倒进去。最后放一点儿盐。
jiēzhe dào shuǐ shuǐ kāi le bǎ jīdàn dào jinqu zuìhòu fàng yìdiǎnr yán · Next add water. When it boils, pour in the eggs. Finally, a little salt.

anna 鸡蛋熟了吗？我不喜欢吃生的。
jīdàn shú le ma wǒ bù xǐhuan chī shēng de · Are the eggs cooked? I don’t like them raw.

ms zhang 一会儿就熟了。你尝尝，味道怎么样？
yíhuìr jiù shú le nǐ cháng chang wèidào zěnmeyàng · They’ll be done in a moment. Have a taste. How is it?

anna 太好喝了！比饭馆的还好喝。
tài hǎo hē le bǐ fànguǎn de hái hǎo hē · Delicious! Even better than at a restaurant.

ms zhang 明天我再教你烤鱼。
míngtiān wǒ zài jiāo nǐ kǎo yú · Tomorrow I’ll teach you to grill fish.

anna 好！做菜首先要有耐心，其次要多练习，对吧？
hǎo zuò cài shǒuxiān yào yǒu nàixīn qícì yào duō liànxí duì ba · Great! Cooking takes patience first, and practice second, right?

ms zhang 对！你学得真快。
duì nǐ xué de zhēn kuài · Exactly! You learn fast.

write it trace the grey, then write your own

够
gòu
enough



刀
dāo
knife



油
yóu
oil



汤
tāng
soup



good to know · 熟 is shú in the word list, but in everyday speech you'll often hear shóu: 饭熟了 the rice is ready. 生 also means "raw": 生鸡蛋 a raw egg. Its opposite is 熟, cooked.

First, then, next, finally: you can follow a recipe in Chinese, and soon teach one.
Do this day interactively, with audio and games, free at **wishyou.today/learning**

day 24 sweet, sour, spicy

Describe tastes, order snacks and drinks, and count meals, trips and films.

酸甜苦辣 are the first things people ask about at a Chinese table, and street food is the best way to try them.

words

word	pinyin	meaning	example
盒子	hézi	box	这个盒子里是什么? What's in this box?
场	chǎng	(measure word for events: films, matches)	我们去看一场电影吧。 Let's go and see a film.
顿	dùn	(measure word for meals)	我请你吃一顿饭。 Let me treat you to a meal.
趟	tàng	(measure word for trips)	我去一趟超市，马上回来。 I'm popping to the supermarket. Back in a minute.
酸	suān	sour	这个苹果有点儿酸。 This apple is a bit sour.
苦	kǔ	bitter; hard (life)	这个药很苦。 This medicine is really bitter.
辣	là	spicy, hot	我不太能吃辣的。 I can't really handle spicy food.
咸	xián	salty	汤太咸了，盐放多了。 The soup's too salty. Too much salt went in.
凉	liáng	cool, cold	饭菜都凉了，快吃吧。 The food's getting cold. Eat up!
酸奶	suānnǎi	yoghurt	我早上喜欢喝一杯酸奶。 I like a glass of yoghurt in the morning.
饼干	bǐnggān	biscuit, cracker	孩子们很喜欢吃饼干。 Children love biscuits.
巧克力	qiǎokèlì	chocolate	她送了我一盒巧克力。 She gave me a box of chocolates.
零食	língshí	snacks	少吃零食，多吃水果。 Fewer snacks, more fruit.
小吃	xiǎochī	local snacks, street food	北京有很多有名的小吃。 Beijing has lots of famous street food.
美食	měishí	delicious food, good food	我来中国，就是为了这里的美食! I came to China for the food!
丰富	fēngfù	rich, plentiful	这家饭馆的菜很丰富。 This restaurant has a huge choice of dishes.
果汁	guǒzhī	fruit juice	你要果汁还是汽水? Would you like juice or a fizzy drink?

汽水	qìshuǐ	fizzy drink, soda	天太热了，来一瓶凉汽水吧。 It's so hot. Let's get a cold fizzy drink.

pattern counting actions: 一趟, 一顿, 一场

verb · 一 · 趟 · 顿 · 场 · (thing)

Some measure words count actions, not things: 去一趟 make a trip, 吃一顿饭 have a meal, 看一场电影 see a film. Nouns can borrow the job too: 一桌子菜 a whole tableful of food, 一屋子客人 a roomful of guests, 一脸 a face full of.

我去一趟超市，马上回来。 **wǒ qù yí tàng chāoshì mǎshàng huílái** I'm popping to the supermarket. Back in a minute.

昨天晚上我们看了一场电影。 **zuótiān wǎnshang wǒmen kàn le yì chǎng diànyǐng** We saw a film last night.

家里来了一屋子客人。 **jiā lǐ lái le yì wūzi kèrén** The house was full of guests.

dialogue a snack street

xiao liu 安娜，作为你的朋友，今天我一定要带你吃遍这条街！
Ānnà zuòwéi nǐ de péngyou jīntiān wǒ yídìng yào dài nǐ chī biàn zhè tiáo jiē · Anna, as your friend, I have to take you to try everything on this street today!

anna 太好了！这里的小吃真丰富。这个是酸的还是甜的？
tài hǎo le zhèlǐ de xiǎochī zhēn fēngfù zhège shì suān de háishi tián de · Great! There's so much street food here. Is this one sour or sweet?

xiao liu 又酸又甜。那边的有点儿辣，你能吃辣吗？
yòu suān yòu tián nàbiān de yǒudiǎnr là nǐ néng chī là ma · Both. The stuff over there is a bit spicy. Can you handle spicy food?

anna 能，可是太辣的不行。这个有点儿咸。
néng kěshì tài là de bùxíng zhège yǒudiǎnr xián · Yes, but not too spicy. This one's a bit salty.

xiao liu 喝一点儿凉的吧。你要果汁还是汽水？
hē yìdiǎnr liáng de ba nǐ yào guǒzhī háishi qìshuǐ · Have something cold to drink. Juice or a fizzy drink?

anna 果汁吧。今天吃了这么多美食，我太开心了！
guǒzhī ba jīntiān chī le zhème duō měishí wǒ tài kāixīn le · Juice, please. I've had so much good food today. I'm so happy!

xiao liu 这些零食给你：一盒饼干和一瓶酸奶。
zhèxiē língshí gěi nǐ yì hé bǐnggān hé yì píng suānnǎi · Here are some snacks for you: a box of biscuits and a bottle of yoghurt.

anna 谢谢！下次我请你吃一顿饭。
xièxie xià cì wǒ qǐng nǐ chī yí dùn fàn · Thank you! Next time, dinner's on me.

xiao liu 好啊！吃完饭，我们还可以去看一场电影。
hǎo a chī wán fàn wǒmen hái kěyǐ qù kàn yì chǎng diànyǐng · Deal! And after dinner we can see a film.

write it trace the grey, then write your own



倒
dào
to pour



味
wèi
taste, flavour; smell

good to know · 酸甜苦辣 (sour, sweet, bitter, spicy) also means life's ups and downs: 生活的酸甜苦辣. As 作为 shows, you can say what role you speak in: 作为你的朋友 as your friend.

Sour, sweet, bitter, spicy, salty: you can now say exactly what you like, and order a second helping. Do this day interactively, with audio and games, free at **wishyou.today/learning**

day 25 eating out

Eat out with colleagues: order, share, ask for the bill and explain why.

Team dinners are a big part of working life in China, and so is explaining things politely.

words

word	pinyin	meaning	example
由于	yóuyú	because of, due to	由于天气不好，飞机晚点了。 Due to bad weather, the plane was delayed.
因此	yīncǐ	so, therefore	他每天练习，因此汉语说得很好。 He practises every day, so his Chinese is very good.
餐厅	cāntīng	restaurant, dining room	公司楼下有一家很好的餐厅。 There's a great restaurant downstairs from the office.
厨师	chúshī	chef, cook	这家餐厅的厨师是上海人。 The chef at this restaurant is from Shanghai.
中餐	zhōngcān	Chinese food	很多外国人都喜欢吃中餐。 Lots of foreigners love Chinese food.
快餐	kuàicān	fast food	工作太忙，中午只好|吃快餐。 Work's so busy I have to grab fast food at lunch.
早餐	zǎocān	breakfast	酒店的早餐几点开始? What time does breakfast start at the hotel?
午餐	wǔcān	lunch	公司给我们准备了免费的午餐。 The company lays on a free lunch for us.
晚餐	wǎncān	dinner	今天的晚餐我来请客。 Dinner's on me tonight.
食堂	shítáng	canteen	学校食堂的饭又便宜又好吃。 The school canteen is cheap and tasty.
道	dào	(measure word for dishes, questions)	这道菜叫什么名字? What's this dish called?
随便	suíbiàn	as you like; casual	吃什么都行，你随便点吧。 I'll eat anything. Order whatever you like.
结账	jiézhàng	to pay the bill	服务员，我们结账。 Excuse me, could we have the bill?
纸巾	zhǐjīn	tissue, paper napkin	桌子上没有纸巾了。 There are no napkins left on the table.
剩	shèng	to be left over	菜剩了很多，我们带回家吧。 There's lots of food left. Let's take it home.
浪费	làngfèi	to waste	别浪费食物。 Don't waste food.
聚餐	jùcān	to eat together (as a group)	周五晚上公司聚餐，大家都去。 There's a team dinner on Friday night, and everyone's going.

茶叶	cháyè	tea leaves	这是我从杭州带来的茶叶。 This is tea I brought back from Hangzhou.

pattern because of … so: 由于……，因此……

由于 | cause | ，因此 | result

由于 means “because of, due to”; 因此 means “so, therefore”. Use either alone or both together for a cause and its result. They sound more formal than 因为……所以……: you’ll meet them in notices, the news and work emails.

由于天气不好，飞机晚点了。 **yóuyú tiānqì bù hǎo fēijī wǎndiǎn le** Due to bad weather, the plane was delayed.

这家餐厅的厨师很有名，因此来吃饭的人很多。 **zhè jiā cāntīng de chúshī hěn yǒumíng yīncǐ lái chī fàn de rén hěn duō** The chef here is famous, so lots of people come to eat.

由于人太多，我们等了一个小时。 **yóuyú rén tài duō wǒmen děng le yí gè xiǎoshí** Because there were so many people, we waited an hour.

dialogue the team dinner

manager chen 安娜，今天晚上公司聚餐，我们去新开的那家餐厅吃中餐吧。
Ānnà jīntiān wǎnshang gōngsī jùcān wǒmen qù xīn kāi de nà jiā cāntīng chī zhōngcān ba · Anna, it’s the team dinner tonight. Let’s have Chinese at the new restaurant.

anna 好啊！听说那里的厨师以前在上海工作。
hǎo a tīngshuō nàlǐ de chúshī yǐqián zài Shànghǎi gōngzuò · Great! I hear the chef used to work in Shanghai.

manager chen 对。由于那儿人很多，因此我昨天就打了电话。你来点菜吧。
duì yóuyú nàr rén hěn duō yīncǐ wǒ zuótiān jiù dǎ le diànhuà nǐ lái diǎn cài ba · That’s right. It gets really busy, so I phoned yesterday. You do the ordering.

anna 我点？您想吃什么？
wǒ diǎn nín xiǎng chī shénme · Me? What would you like?

manager chen 随便，我什么都吃。
suíbiàn wǒ shénme dōu chī · Anything, I eat everything.

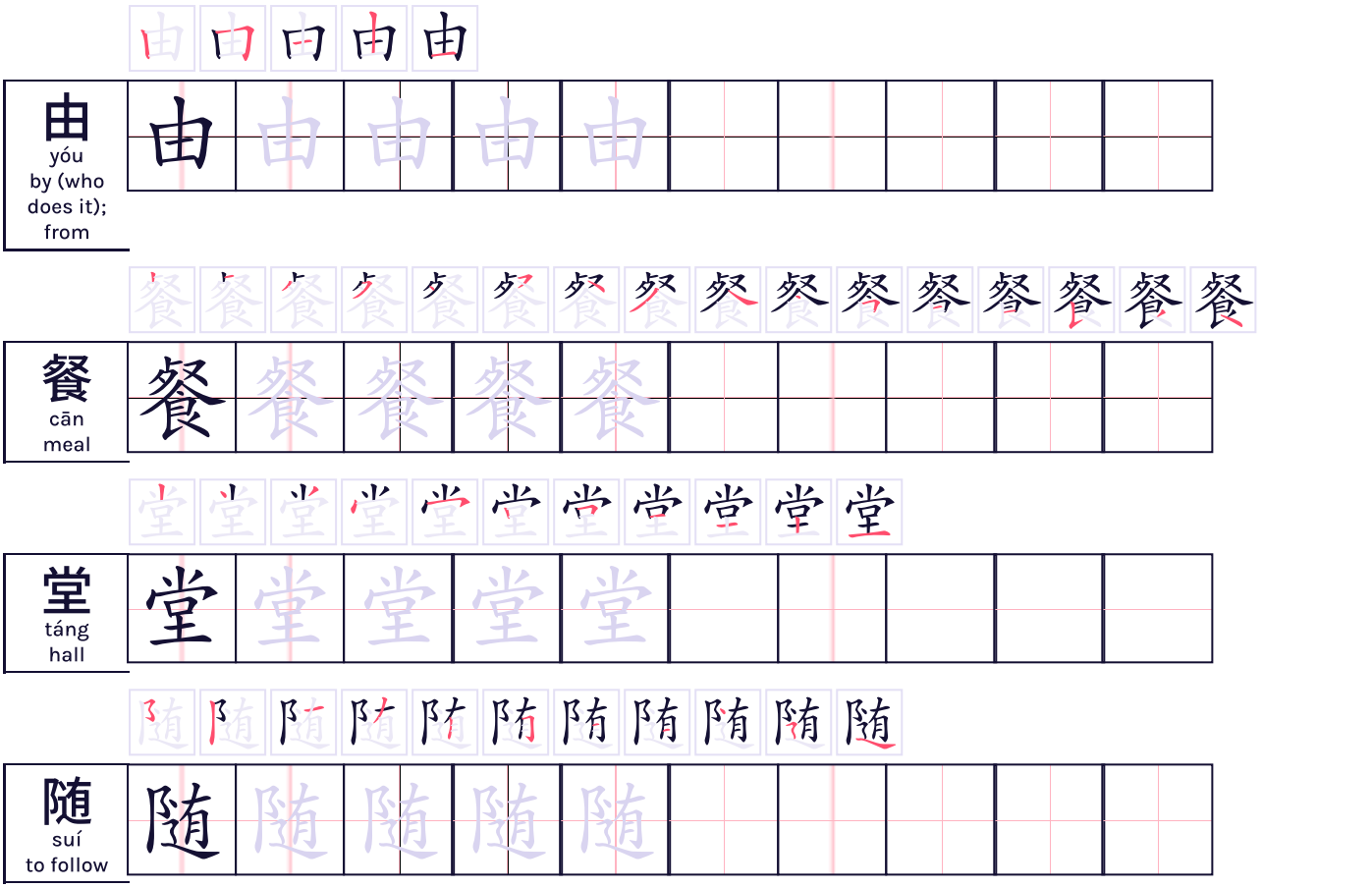
anna 那就要这道鱼吧。还要一些茶，这里的茶叶是从杭州来的。
nà jiù yào zhè dào yú ba hái yào yìxiē chá zhèlǐ de cháyè shì cóng Hángzhōu lái de · Then let’s have this fish. And some tea; their tea leaves come from Hangzhou.

manager chen 今天的晚餐确实很好吃。菜还剩了很多。
jīntiān de wǎncān quèshí hěn hǎochī cài hái shèng le hěn duō · Dinner tonight really was good. There’s still lots left.

anna 别浪费，我们带回去吧。服务员，请给我们几张纸巾，我们结账。
bié làngfèi wǒmen dài huiqu ba fúwù yuán qǐng gěi wǒmen jǐ zhāng zhǐjīn wǒmen jiézhàng · Let’s not waste it; we’ll take it with us. Excuse me, could we have some napkins and the bill?

manager chen 明天中午我们在公司食堂一起吃午餐吧。
míngtiān zhōngwǔ wǒmen zài gōngsī shítáng yìqǐ chī wǔcān ba · Tomorrow let’s all have lunch together in the office canteen.

write it trace the grey, then write your own



good to know · Whoever invites usually pays. Friends sometimes split the bill, called AA制 (AA zhì). Taking leftovers home is normal and welcome: ask the waiter 可以打包吗？ (dǎbāo, to box it up).

Ordering, sharing, paying and saying why: you can hold your own at any Chinese dinner table now.
Do this day interactively, with audio and games, free at **wishyou.today/learning**

day 26 a festival dinner

Talk about festival food and customs, and give advice with “since …, then …”.

Festivals are when Chinese families come together, and knowing the customs makes you a welcome guest.

words

word	pinyin	meaning	example
既然	jìrán	since, now that	既然你不舒服，就在家休息吧。 Since you’re not feeling well, stay home and rest.
甚至	shènzhì	even, so much so that	他很忙，甚至没时间吃饭。 He’s so busy he doesn’t even have time to eat.
庆祝	qìngzhù	to celebrate	我们一起庆祝春节吧。 Let’s celebrate the Spring Festival together.
热闹	rènao	lively, bustling	春节的时候，街上特别热闹。 The streets are really lively at Spring Festival.
红包	hóngbāo	red envelope (with money)	春节的时候，孩子们会收到红包。 At Spring Festival, children get red envelopes.
月饼	yuèbing	mooncake	中秋节的时候，大家都吃月饼。 Everyone eats mooncakes at the Mid-Autumn Festival.
馒头	mántou	steamed bun (plain)	北方人早上常常吃馒头。 In the north, people often have steamed buns for breakfast.
干杯	gānbēi	cheers!	为我们的友谊，干杯！ To our friendship, cheers!
白酒	báijiǔ	baijiu (Chinese spirit)	超市里有很多种白酒。 The supermarket has lots of kinds of baijiu.
葡萄酒	pútaojiǔ	wine	葡萄酒是用葡萄做的。 Wine is made from grapes.

pattern since …, then …: 既然……，就……

既然 **what we know** ，(who) 就 **the obvious next step**

既然A，就B: since A is a fact, B is the natural thing to do. It’s great for advice and suggestions: 既然下雨了，就别去了. 甚至 “even” adds a surprising extreme: 他甚至忘了自己的生日 He even forgot his own birthday.

既然大家都来了，我们就开始吧。 **jìrán dàjiā dōu lái le wǒmen jiù kāishǐ ba** Since everyone’s here, let’s start.

既然你想学，我就教你。 **jìrán nǐ xiǎng xué wǒ jiù jiāo nǐ** Since you want to learn, I’ll teach you.

他很喜欢中国菜，甚至每天都吃饺子。 **tā hěn xǐhuan Zhōngguó cài shènzhì měi tiān dōu chī jiǎozi** He loves Chinese food; he even eats dumplings every day.

dialogue what should i bring?

anna 王老师，小明家请我去过春节。我应该带什么礼物？
Wánglǎoshī Xiǎomíng jiā qǐng wǒ qù guò Chūnjié wǒ yīnggāi dài shénme lǐwù · Teacher Wang, Xiaoming's family has invited me for the Spring Festival. What present should I bring?

teacher wang 很多人会带水果或者茶叶，也有人带白酒或者葡萄酒。
hěn duō rén huì dài shuǐguǒ huòzhě cháyè yě yǒu rén dài báijiǔ huòzhě pútaojiǔ · Lots of people bring fruit or tea. Some bring baijiu or wine.

anna 可是小明的家人都不喝酒。
kěshì Xiǎomíng de jiārén dōu bù hē jiǔ · But nobody in Xiaoming's family drinks alcohol.

teacher wang 既然他们不喝酒，你就带茶叶吧。要是你还想带一点儿别的，就买一些水果。
jìrán tāmen bù hē jiǔ nǐ jiù dài cháyè ba yàoshi nǐ hái xiǎng dài yìdiǎnr biéde jiù mǎi yìxiē shuǐguǒ · Since they don't drink, bring tea. If you want to bring something else, get some fruit.

anna 好。听说春节的时候，大家还给孩子红包？
hǎo tīngshuō Chūnjié de shíhou dàjiā hái gěi háizi hóngbāo · OK. I hear people give children red envelopes at Spring Festival?

teacher wang 对。小明的妹妹每年甚至能收到十几个红包！
duì Xiǎomíng de mèimei měi nián shènzhì néng shōudào shí jǐ gè hóngbāo · That's right. Xiaoming's sister gets over ten red envelopes every year!

anna 那我也给她准备一个。吃饭的时候要说什么吗？
nà wǒ yě gěi tā zhǔnbèi yí gè chī fàn de shíhou yào shuō shénme ma · Then I'll get one ready for her too. Is there anything I should say at dinner?

teacher wang 大家一起干杯的时候，你可以说“新年快乐”。不喝酒的人用果汁或者茶也行。
dàjiā yìqǐ gānbēi de shíhou nǐ kěyǐ shuō xīnnián kuàilè bù hē jiǔ de rén yòng guǒzhī huòzhě chá yě xíng · When everyone raises a glass, you can say “Happy New Year”. People who don't drink can use juice or tea.

anna 春节一定很热闹吧？
Chūnjié yídìng hěn rènao ba · Spring Festival must be really lively.

teacher wang 非常热闹！别忘了早一点儿去，否则就吃不上饺子了。
fēicháng rènao bié wàng le zǎo yìdiǎnr qù fǒuzé jiù chī bu shàng jiǎozi le · Very! Don't forget to go early, or you'll miss the dumplings.

write it trace the grey, then write your own

至
zhì
to reach

甚
shèn
very, extremely

good to know · Red envelopes are given and received with both hands, and the amount usually avoids the number 4, which sounds like 死 “death”. You don't need alcohol to join a toast: raise your juice or tea and say 干杯!

Gifts, red envelopes and a toast with juice: you're ready to be a great guest at a Chinese festival.
Do this day interactively, with audio and games, free at **wishyou.today/learning**

day 27 dinner at xiaoming's

Follow a whole festival dinner, from the shopping list to the last mouthful and the snow outside.

Shopping, cooking, tasting and toasting: one evening brings together everything in this unit.

chapter 1 one more thing

xiaoming 安娜，我妈妈让我们先去超市买一点儿东西。
Ānnà wǒ māma ràng wǒmen xiān qù chāoshì mǎi yìdiǎnr dōngxi · Anna, my mum wants us to pick up a few things at the supermarket first.

anna 好。要买什么？你妈妈写下来了吗？
hǎo yào mǎi shénme nǐ māma xiě xialai le ma · OK. What do we need? Did your mum write it down?

xiaoming 写了。首先是十个鸡蛋和一袋米，其次是西红柿两千克，还有一大袋水果。
xiě le shǒuxiān shì shí gè jīdàn hé yí dài mǐ qícì shì xīhóngshì liǎng qiānkè hái yǒu yí dà dài shuǐguǒ · She did. First ten eggs and a bag of rice, then two kilos of tomatoes, and a big bag of fruit.

anna 这里的葡萄很新鲜，我们买一点儿吧。
zhèlǐ de pútao hěn xīnxiān wǒmen mǎi yìdiǎnr ba · The grapes here look fresh. Let's get some.

xiaoming 好。糖要五百克。饺子只买一份不够，我们买两份吧。再拿几片面包，明天早餐吃。
hǎo táng yào wǔbǎi kè jiǎozi zhǐ mǎi yí fèn búgòu wǒmen mǎi liǎng fèn ba zài ná jǐ piàn miànbāo míngtiān zǎocān chī · OK. We need 500 grams of sugar. One pack of dumplings won't be enough, let's get two. And a few slices of bread for breakfast tomorrow.

anna 我还想买一盒巧克力，送给你妹妹。
wǒ hái xiǎng mǎi yì hé qiǎokèlì sòng gěi nǐ mèimei · I'd also like to get a box of chocolates for your sister.

xiaoming 她肯定会很高兴！她还特别喜欢吃零食，我们再买一盒饼干和一些酸奶。
tā kěndìng huì hěn gāoxìng tā hái tèbié xǐhuan chī língshí wǒmen zài mǎi yì hé bǐnggān hé yìxiē suānnǎi · She'll be thrilled! She loves snacks too, so let's get a box of biscuits and some yoghurt.

anna 那边有白酒和葡萄酒，要买吗？
nàbiān yǒu báijiǔ hé pútaojiǔ yào mǎi ma · There's baijiu and wine over there. Shall we get some?

xiaoming 不用，我们家都不喝酒。买一点儿果汁和汽水吧，够大家喝。
búyòng wǒmen jiā dōu bù hē jiǔ mǎi yìdiǎnr guǒzhī hé qìshuǐ ba gòu dàjiā hē · No need, nobody in my family drinks. Let's get some juice and fizzy drinks, enough for everyone.

anna 今天超市的人真多，食品也特别多。
jīntiān chāoshì de rén zhēn duō shípǐn yě tèbié duō · The supermarket is packed today, and there's so much food on the shelves.

xiaoming 快过年了，大家都来买东西。你看，袋子已经满了，我们回去吧。
kuài guònián le dàjiā dōu lái mǎi dōngxi nǐ kàn dàizi yǐjīng mǎn le wǒmen huíqù ba · It's New Year, everyone's shopping. Look, the bag's full. Let's head back.

chapter 2 anna cooks

ms zhang 安娜，你来得正好。帮我做一个西红柿鸡蛋汤吧。刀在这儿。
Ānnà nǐ lái de zhènghǎo bāng wǒ zuò yí gè xīhóngshì jīdàn tāng ba dāo zài zhèr · Anna, perfect timing. Help me make a tomato and egg soup. The knife's here.

anna 没问题！首先把西红柿洗干净，然后倒一点儿油……
méi wèntí shǒuxiān bǎ xīhóngshì xǐ gānjìng ránhòu dào yìdiǎnr yóu · No problem! First wash the tomatoes, then pour in a little oil...

ms zhang 你还记得做法，太好了！
nǐ hái jìde zuòfǎ tài hǎo le · You remember how to make it. Wonderful!

anna 阿姨，鱼好香啊！我在这儿都闻到鱼的味了。是烤的吗？
āyí yú hǎo xiāng a wǒ zài zhèr dōu wén dào yú de wèi le shì kǎo de ma · The fish smells amazing! I can smell it from here. Is it grilled?

ms zhang 对。再等十分钟就熟了。
duì zài děng shí fēnzhōng jiù shú le · Yes. Ten more minutes and it'll be done.

anna 汤里要放多少盐？
tāng lǐ yào fàng duōshao yán · How much salt goes in the soup?

ms zhang 只放少量就行，否则就太咸了。接着把鸡蛋倒进去。
zhǐ fàng shǎoliàng jiù xíng fǒuzé jiù tài xián le jiēzhe bǎ jīdàn dào jinqu · Just a little, or it'll be too salty. Next, pour in the eggs.

anna 鸡蛋还没熟，现在还是生的。我们再等一会儿吧。
jīdàn hái méi shú xiànzài hái shì shēng de wǒmen zài děng yíhuìr ba · The eggs aren't done yet, they're still raw. Let's wait a bit.

ms zhang 你做的中餐比很多餐厅的厨师做得还好！
nǐ zuò de zhōngcān bǐ hěn duō cāntīng de chúshī zuò de hái hǎo · Your Chinese cooking is better than a lot of restaurant chefs'!

anna 哪里哪里！平时工作忙，我午餐常常在公司食堂吃，有时候也吃快餐。
nǎlǐ nǎlǐ píngshí gōngzuò máng wǒ wǔcān chángcháng zài gōngsī shítáng chī yǒu shíhou yě chī kuàicān · Oh, not at all! I'm busy with work, so I usually have lunch in the office canteen, and sometimes fast food.

ms zhang 快餐还是少吃一点儿好。由于今天人多，因此我准备了十几个菜。
kuàicānháishi shǎo chī yìdiǎnr hǎo yóuyú jīntiān rén duō yīncǐ wǒ zhǔnbèi le shí jǐ gè cài · Better not to eat too much fast food. Because there are so many of us today, I've made over ten dishes.

dr li 我回来了！在医院忙了一天，就等这顿晚餐了！
wǒ huílái le zài yīyuàn máng le yì tiān jiù děng zhè dùn wǎncān le · I'm home! A whole day at the hospital, and I've been looking forward to this dinner all along!

chapter 3 happy new year!

dr li 安娜，欢迎！今天做了一桌子菜，大家随便吃。
Ānnà huānyíng jīntiān zuò le yì zhuōzi cài dàjiā suíbiàn chī · Welcome, Anna! There's a whole tableful of food tonight. Help yourselves.

anna 菜真丰富！叔叔，阿姨，这是我给你们带的茶叶。
cài zhēn fēngfù shūshu āyí zhè shì wǒ gěi nǐmen dài de cháyè · What a feast! Uncle, Auntie, I've brought you some tea.

ms zhang 你太客气了！快坐吧。
nǐ tài kèqi le kuài zuò ba · You're too kind! Come and sit down.

anna 这幅画真漂亮！是谁画的?
zhè fú huà zhēn piàoliang shì shéi huà de · What a lovely painting! Who painted it?

little sister 是我画的！安娜姐姐，你先尝尝这道菜，又酸又甜。
shì wǒ huà de Ānnà jiějie nǐ xiān cháng chang zhè dào cài yòu suān yòu tián · I did! Anna, try this dish first, it's sweet and sour.

anna 又香又鲜，太好吃了！我在北京吃过很多小吃和美食，可是家里做的菜味道最好。
yòu xiāng yòu xiān tài hǎochī le wǒ zài Běijīng chī guò hěn duō xiǎochī hé měishí kěshì jiā lǐ zuò de cài wèidào zuìhǎo · So fragrant and tasty, delicious! I've had lots of snacks and great food in Beijing, but home cooking tastes the best.

little sister 这个有点儿辣，你能吃吗?
zhège yǒudiǎnr là nǐ néng chī ma · This one's a bit spicy. Can you eat it?

anna 能！我现在甚至很喜欢吃辣的。
néng wǒ xiànzài shènzhì hěn xǐhuan chī là de · Yes! These days I even love spicy food.

little sister 这个茶太苦了，我要喝汽水！
zhège chá tài kǔ le wǒ yào hē qìshuǐ · This tea is too bitter, I want a fizzy drink!

ms zhang 汽水少喝一点儿。快吃吧，菜都要凉了。
qìshuǐ shǎo hē yìdiǎnr kuài chī ba cài dōu yào liáng le · Not too much fizzy drink. Eat up, the food's getting cold.

dr li 来，我们用果汁和茶干杯！新年快乐！
lái wǒmen yòng guǒzhī hé chá gānbēi xīnnián kuàilè · Come on, let's raise our juice and tea. Happy New Year!

anna 新年快乐！妹妹，这是给你的红包和巧克力。
xīnnián kuàilè mèimei zhè shì gěi nǐ de hóngbāo hé qiǎokèlì · Happy New Year! This red envelope and these chocolates are for you.

little sister 谢谢安娜姐姐！
xièxie Ānnà jiějie · Thank you, Anna!

chapter 4 too full to move

ms zhang 安娜，再吃一点儿吧。
Ānnà zài chī yìdiǎnr ba · Anna, have a little more.

anna 谢谢阿姨，我吃得太饱了，一口也吃不下了。
xièxie āyí wǒ chī de tài bǎo le yì kǒu yě chī bu xià le · Thank you, but I'm so full I can't eat another bite.

xiaoming 菜还剩了这么多。
cài hái shèng le zhème duō · There's so much food left.

ms zhang 别浪费食物。既然安娜喜欢，就带一点儿回家吧。剩下的明天早上跟馒头一起吃。
bié làngfèi shíwù jìrán Ānnà xǐhuan jiù dài yìdiǎnr huí jiā ba shèng xià de míngtiān zǎoshang gēn mántou yìqǐ chī · Let's not waste food. Since Anna likes it, she can take some home. We'll have the rest with steamed buns tomorrow morning.

anna 谢谢阿姨！在家吃饭真好，吃完也不用结账！
xièxie āyí zài jiā chī fàn zhēn hǎo chī wán yě búyòng jiézhàng · Thank you! Eating at home is the best: no bill to pay at the end!

little sister 安娜姐姐，给你一张纸巾。
Ānnà jiějie gěi nǐ yì zhāng zhǐjīn · Here's a napkin, Anna.

dr li 我们家新买了一台电视。来，大家一起看春节晚会吧。
wǒmen jiā xīn mǎi le yì tái diànshì lái dàjiā yìqǐ kàn Chūnjié wǎnhuì ba · We've just bought a new TV. Come on, let's all watch the Spring Festival Gala.

anna 你们看外面！下了一场大雪，楼下那棵树上都是雪。
nǐmen kàn wàimiàn xià le yì chǎng dà xuě lóu xià nà kē shù shàng dōu shì xuě · Look outside! There's been a big snowfall, the tree downstairs is covered in snow.

xiaoming 真美！明天我陪你去一趟公园，看看雪。
zhēn měi míngtiān wǒ péi nǐ qù yí tàng gōngyuán kàn kan xuě · Beautiful! Tomorrow I'll take you to the park to see the snow.

anna 好啊！今天晚上真热闹。
hǎo a jīntiān wǎnshang zhēn rènao · Great! What a lively evening.

ms zhang 是啊。上次中秋节你送的月饼，大家也都很喜欢。你就像我们家的人一样。
shì a shàng cì Zhōngqiūjié nǐ sòng de yuèbing dàjiā yě dōu hěn xǐhuan nǐ jiù xiàng wǒmen jiā de rén yíyàng · It is. And everyone loved the mooncakes you gave us at Mid-Autumn. You're like one of the family.

dr li 你来了，我们家的春节更热闹了。
nǐ lái le wǒmen jiā de Chūnjié gèng rènao le · Having you here made our Spring Festival even livelier.

xiaoming 明年春节你也来，我们一起庆祝！
míngnián Chūnjié nǐ yě lái wǒmen yìqǐ qìngzhù · Come next Spring Festival too, and we'll celebrate together!

From the shopping bag to the last toast, you just spent a whole festival evening in Chinese.
Do this day interactively, with audio and games, free at **wishyou.today/learning**

wishyou.today learning

day 28 running late

Chinese HSK 4 in 69 days
unit 5 · travel & transport

Talk about being on time, running late and flight changes at the airport.

Flights get delayed and trains don't wait: these words get you through any airport in China.

words

word	pinyin	meaning	example
按时	ànshí	on time, on schedule	医生说要按时吃药。 The doctor says to take the medicine on time.
赶紧	gǎnjǐn	hurry, quickly	快下雨了，我们赶紧回家吧。 It's about to rain, let's hurry home.
赶快	gǎnkuài	quickly, at once	车要开了，赶快上车！ The bus is leaving, get on quickly!
已	yǐ	already (written)	航班已推迟|到下午三点。 The flight has been delayed until 3 pm.
将	jiāng	will, be going to (formal)	我们将在上海转机。 We will change planes in Shanghai.
将要	jiāngyào	be about to, will	飞机将要降落，请大家坐好。 The plane is about to land, please stay seated.
准时	zhǔnshí	punctual, on time	她每天都准时上班。 She gets to work on time every day.
迟	chí	late	对不起，我来迟了。 Sorry, I'm late.
赶	gǎn	rush to catch, hurry	我得{dei3}赶八点的飞机。 I have to catch the eight o'clock flight.
错过	cuòguò	miss (a train, a chance)	快一点儿，否则我们会错过火车的。 Hurry up, or we'll miss the train.
提前	tíqián	do earlier, in advance	最好提前两个小时到机场。 It's best to get to the airport two hours early.
推迟	tuīchí	postpone, delay	由于天气不好，航班推迟了。 The flight was delayed because of bad weather.
取消	qǔxiāo	cancel	雪太大了，今天的航班都取消了。 The snow is too heavy, all of today's flights are cancelled.
航班	hángbān	flight	你的航班几点起飞? What time does your flight take off?
登机	dēngjī	board a plane	请大家准备登机。 Everyone, please get ready to board.
降落	jiàngluò	land (a plane)	飞机已经降落了，我们去接他吧。 The plane has landed, let's go and meet him.
安检	ānjiǎn	security check	过安检的时候，要把电脑拿出来。 At security, you have to take your computer out.
转机	zhuǎnjī	change planes	去云南要在上海转机吗? Do you change planes in Shanghai to get to Yunnan?

pattern time words (2): 按时, 赶紧, 赶快, 已, 将, 将要

who | 赶紧 / 按时 / 将要 | verb

These adverbs sit right before the verb. 赶紧 and 赶快 mean “hurry, at once”; 按时 means “on schedule”. 已 is the written 已经, and 将 / 将要 mean “will, be about to”: you hear them in announcements.

请按时登机。 **qǐng ànshí dēngjī** Please board on time.

我们赶快走吧，否则会错过航班的。 **wǒmen gǎnkuài zǒu ba fǒuzé huì cuòguò hángbān de** Let’s go quickly, or we’ll miss the flight.

我们的航班将在上海降落。 **wǒmen de hángbān jiāng zài Shànghǎi jiàngluò** Our flight will land in Shanghai.

飞机已降落，请大家不要着急。 **fēijī yǐ jiàngluò qǐng dàjiā búyào zháojí** The plane has landed, please don’t rush.

dialogue the screen turns red

anna 对不起，陈经理，我来迟了！路上车太多了。
duìbuqǐ Chénjīnglǐ wǒ lái chí le lùshang chē tài duō le · Sorry, Manager Chen, I’m late! The traffic was terrible.

manager chen 没关系，我们的航班推迟了，你来得正好。
méi guānxi wǒmen de hángbān tuīchí le nǐ lái de zhènghǎo · That’s fine, our flight is delayed. You’re just in time.

anna 推迟到几点？我们还得赶下午的会呢。
tuīchí dào jǐ diǎn wǒmen hái děi gǎn xiàwǔ de huì ne · Delayed until when? We still have to make the afternoon meeting.

manager chen 通知上说，将在十点起飞。要是十点能起飞，就没问题；否则我们只好坐火车了。
tōngzhī shàng shuō jiāng zài shí diǎn qǐfēi yàoshi shí diǎn néng qǐfēi jiù méi wèntí fǒuzé wǒmen zhǐhǎo zuò huǒchē le · The notice says it will take off at ten. If it can leave at ten, we’re fine; otherwise we’ll have to take the train.

anna 这个航班要不要转机？
zhège hángbān yào búyào zhuǎnjī · Do we have to change planes on this flight?

manager chen 不用转机。别担心，在这儿等着就是了。
búyòng zhuǎnjī bié dānxīn zài zhèr děng zhe jiùshì le · No change. Don’t worry, we just wait here.

anna 您看，航班没有取消，已经可以登机了！
nín kàn hángbān méiyǒu qǔxiāo yǐjīng kěyǐ dēngjī le · Look, the flight isn’t cancelled, we can board already!

manager chen 那我们赶快过安检吧。下次我们得再提前一点儿出门。
nà wǒmen gǎnkuài guò ānjiǎn ba xià cì wǒmen děi zài tíqián yìdiǎnr chūmén · Then let’s hurry through security. Next time we need to leave a bit earlier.

write it trace the grey, then write your own

推
tuī
to push



转 zhuǎn turn											

good to know · Chinese airports often call boarding very early. When you hear 开始登机, go to the gate straight away. On screens you'll read 已取消 (cancelled) and 已推迟 (delayed): the written 已 is everywhere.

Next time a flight is delayed, you can ask what's going on and change your plans, all in Chinese.
Do this day interactively, with audio and games, free at **wishyou.today/learning**

day 29 at the station

Say whether there's still time, and find your way around a train station.

China's fast trains are the best way to travel, and stations are huge: you need to read the boards and hear the announcements.

words

word	pinyin	meaning	example
来得及	láidejí	there's still time	别着急，现在走还来得及。 Don't worry, there's still time if we leave now.
来不及	láibují	too late, no time	来不及吃早饭了，我在路上买个包子吧。 No time for breakfast, I'll buy a bun on the way.
于是	yúshì	so, and so	火车晚点了，于是我们去吃了一点儿东西。 The train was late, so we went to get something to eat.
赶上	gǎnshàng	catch (in time)	我们跑得很快，终于赶上了最后一班车。 We ran fast and finally caught the last bus.
动车	dòngchē	bullet train (D train)	坐动车比坐大巴快多了。 The bullet train is much faster than the coach.
大巴	dàbā	coach, large bus	机场有大巴到火车站。 There's a coach from the airport to the train station.
乘	chéng	ride, take (transport)	我们乘飞机去，乘火车回来。 We'll fly there and come back by train.
乘坐	chéngzuò	ride, take (formal)	乘坐地铁去机场又快又便宜。 Taking the metro to the airport is fast and cheap.
乘客	chéngkè	passenger	车上的乘客都在看手机。 All the passengers on the bus are looking at their phones.
旅客	lǚkè	traveller, passenger	请旅客们按时登机。 Passengers, please board on time.
换乘	huànchéng	transfer, change (lines)	去机场要在下一站换乘。 To get to the airport, change at the next station.
售票员	shòupiàoyuán	ticket seller	售票员说动车票已经卖完了。 The ticket seller says the bullet train tickets are sold out.
时间表	shíjiānbiǎo	timetable	你看一下时间表，下一班车几点开? Have a look at the timetable: when does the next one leave?
广播	guǎngbō	broadcast; announcement	广播说，去杭州的旅客可以|上车了。 The announcement says passengers for Hangzhou can board now.
大厅	dàtīng	hall, lobby	我在车站大厅等你。 I'll wait for you in the station hall.

座	zuò	seat; measure for buildings, hills	这座楼一共有三十层。 This building has thirty floors.
座位	zuòwèi	seat	不好意思，这是我的座位。 Excuse me, this is my seat.
列	liè	measure for trains; line up	一列动车从我们面前开了过去。 A bullet train went past right in front of us.

pattern in time or too late: 来得及, 来不及

(还) | 来得及 / 来不及 | verb

来得及 means “there’s still time”; 来不及 means “too late, no time”. Put the action after them: 来得及吃饭, 来不及说再见. Today’s other joiner, 于是, tells what happened next because of it: “so, and so”.

只有十分钟了，还来得及吃饭吗？ **zhǐyǒu shí fēnzhōng le hái láidejí chī fàn ma** Only ten minutes left: is there still time to eat?

来不及了，我们乘出租车去吧！ **láibují le wǒmen chéng chūzūchē qù ba** There’s no time, let’s take a taxi!

大巴晚点了，于是我们乘坐了动车。 **dàbā wǎndiǎn le yúshì wǒmen chéngzuò le dòngchē** The coach was late, so we took the bullet train.

dialogue the last train home

anna 陈经理，现在三点十分了，我们还来得及吗？
Chénjīnglǐ xiànzài sān diǎn shí fēn le wǒmen hái láidejí ma · Manager Chen, it’s ten past three. Can we still make it?

manager chen 来得及。时间表上写着，动车三点半才开。
láidejí shíjiānbiǎo shàng xiě zhe dòngchē sān diǎn bàn cái kāi · We can. The timetable says the train doesn’t leave till half past three.

anna 您听，广播说去北京的旅客可以上车了！
nín tīng guǎngbō shuō qù Běijīng de lǚkè kěyǐ shàng chē le · Listen, the announcement says passengers for Beijing can board now!

manager chen 那我们赶快走吧。大厅里乘客这么多，热死了。
nà wǒmen gǎnkuài zǒu ba dàtīng lǐ chéngkè zhème duō rè sǐ le · Let’s hurry, then. With so many people in this hall, it’s boiling.

anna 我们赶上了！我的座位在这儿，您的在我后面。
wǒmen gǎnshàng le wǒ de zuòwèi zài zhèr nín de zài wǒ hòumiàn · We made it! My seat is here, and yours is behind me.

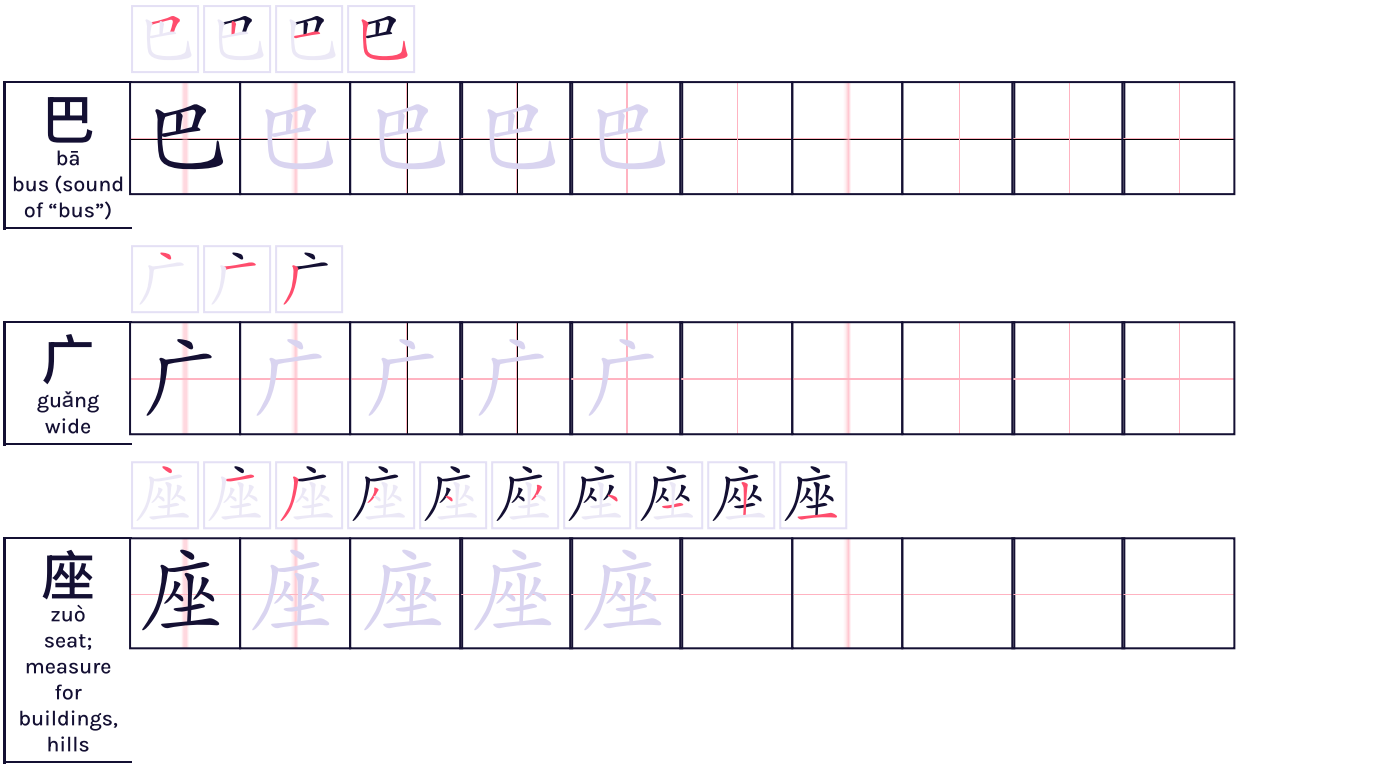
manager chen 好。到了北京，你坐地铁回家吧，只要换乘一次。
hǎo dào le Běijīng nǐ zuò dìtiě huí jiā ba zhǐyào huànchéng yí cì · Good. In Beijing, take the metro home; you only need to change once.

anna 好的。早上差点儿来不及，于是今天我一点儿东西都没吃。
hǎo de zǎoshang chàdiǎnr láibují yúshì jīntiān wǒ yìdiǎnr dōngxi dōu méi chī · OK. This morning I nearly didn’t make it, so I haven’t eaten a thing all day.

manager chen 车上有吃的，我请你。坐动车比坐大巴舒服多了。
chē shàng yǒu chī de wǒ qǐng nǐ zuò dòngchē bǐ zuò dàbā shūfu duō le · They sell food on the train, my treat. The bullet train is so much more comfortable than the coach.

anna 谢谢！在外面工作，同事之间就应该互相照顾。
xièxie zài wàimiàn gōngzuò tóngshì zhījiān jiù yīnggāi hùxiāng zhàogù · Thank you! When we’re working away from home, colleagues should look after each other.

write it trace the grey, then write your own



good to know · At big Chinese stations you show your ID or passport at the gate (检票口); you don’t need a paper ticket any more. In speech 坐 is the usual verb for transport. 乘 and 乘坐 are what you hear in announcements: 欢迎乘坐……

Now you can catch your train, find your seat and plan your change in Chinese.
Do this day interactively, with audio and games, free at **wishyou.today/learning**

day 30 how far is it?

Give and ask for rough distances, times and directions.

Nobody says “37 minutes” in real life: you say “about half an hour”. Rough numbers make you sound natural.

words

word	pinyin	meaning	example
大约	dàyuē	about, roughly	从这儿到机场大约要一个小时。 It takes about an hour from here to the airport.
左右	zuǒyòu	about, or so (after a number)	我们八点左右出发。 We’ll leave at about eight.
前后	qiánhòu	around (a time); before and after	春节前后，火车票特别难买。 Around the Spring Festival, train tickets are really hard to get.
公里	gōnglǐ	kilometre	我家离公司有十来公里。 My home is ten-odd kilometres from the office.
距离	jùlí	distance; be … away from	这里距离火车站不到两公里。 It’s less than two kilometres from here to the station.
速度	sùdù	speed	高铁的速度非常快。 High-speed trains are incredibly fast.
车速	chēsù	speed (of a vehicle)	下雨天开车要注意车速。 When it rains, watch your speed.
高速	gāosù	high-speed; the expressway	我们走高速吧，大约两个小时就到了。 Let’s take the expressway, we’ll be there in about two hours.
公路	gōnglù	road, highway	这条公路通到山里。 This road goes up into the mountains.
道路	dàolù	road (formal)	下大雪以后，道路情况不太好。 After the heavy snow, the roads aren’t in good shape.
前方	qiánfāng	ahead	前方路口请右转。 Turn right at the next junction.
十字路口	shízìlùkǒu	crossroads	到了十字路口往左走。 Go left when you get to the crossroads.
对面	duìmiàn	opposite, across from	银行就在超市对面。 The bank is right across from the supermarket.
指	zhǐ	point (at), point to	他指着地图说：“我们在这儿。” He pointed at the map and said: “We’re here.”
转	zhuǎn	turn	往前走，到红绿灯左转。 Go straight on and turn left at the lights.
直接	zhíjiē	direct(ly)	这趟车直接到机场，不用换乘。 This one goes straight to the airport, no need to change.

路过	lùguò	pass by (on the way)	我每天上班都路过这家咖啡店。 I pass this café every day on my way to work.
目的地	mùdìdì	destination	还有五公里就到目的地了。 Five more kilometres to our destination.

pattern about: 大约, 左右, 前后, and 十来个

大约 | number + measure | 左右 / 前后

大约 goes before a number, 左右 after it. 前后 is only for times and dates (春节前后). Number + 来 + measure word means “a bit over, -odd”: 十来个, 二十来公里. It works with round numbers like 十, 二十, 一百.

这趟车直接到机场，大约四十分钟。 **zhè tàng chē zhíjiē dào jīchǎng dàyuē sìshí fēnzhōng** This one goes straight to the airport, about forty minutes.

我们晚上八点左右到。 **wǒmen wǎnshang bā diǎn zuǒyòu dào** We’ll arrive at about eight in the evening.

中秋节前后，月饼卖得特别好。 **Zhōngqiūjié qiánhòu yuèbing mài de tèbié hǎo** Mooncakes sell really well around the Mid-Autumn Festival.

教室里有二十来个学生。 **jiàoshì lǐ yǒu èrshí lái gè xuéshēng** There are twenty-odd students in the classroom.

dialogue are we nearly there?

xiaoming 安娜，我们的目的地到底还有多远？
Ānnà wǒmen de mùdìdì dàodǐ hái yǒu duō yuǎn · Anna, how far is it to where we’re going, really?

anna 地图上说，距离目的地还有三十来公里。
dìtú shàng shuō jùlí mùdìdì hái yǒu sānshí lái gōnglǐ · The map says it’s another thirty-odd kilometres.

xiaoming 还有这么远？难道我们走错了吗？刚才好像路过这里了。
hái yǒu zhème yuǎn nándào wǒmen zǒu cuò le ma gāngcái hǎoxiàng lùguò zhèlǐ le · That far? Surely we haven’t gone the wrong way? I think we passed here earlier.

anna 没走错。前方的十字路口右转，就上高速了。
méi zǒu cuò qiánfāng de shízì lùkǒu yòu zhuǎn jiù shàng gāosù le · We haven’t. Turn right at the crossroads ahead and we’re on the expressway.

xiaoming 好。上了高速，车速可以快一点儿，大约二十分钟就到了。
hǎo shàng le gāosù chēsù kěyǐ kuài yìdiǎnr dàyuē èrshí fēnzhōng jiù dào le · Great. On the expressway we can go a bit faster: about twenty minutes and we’re there.

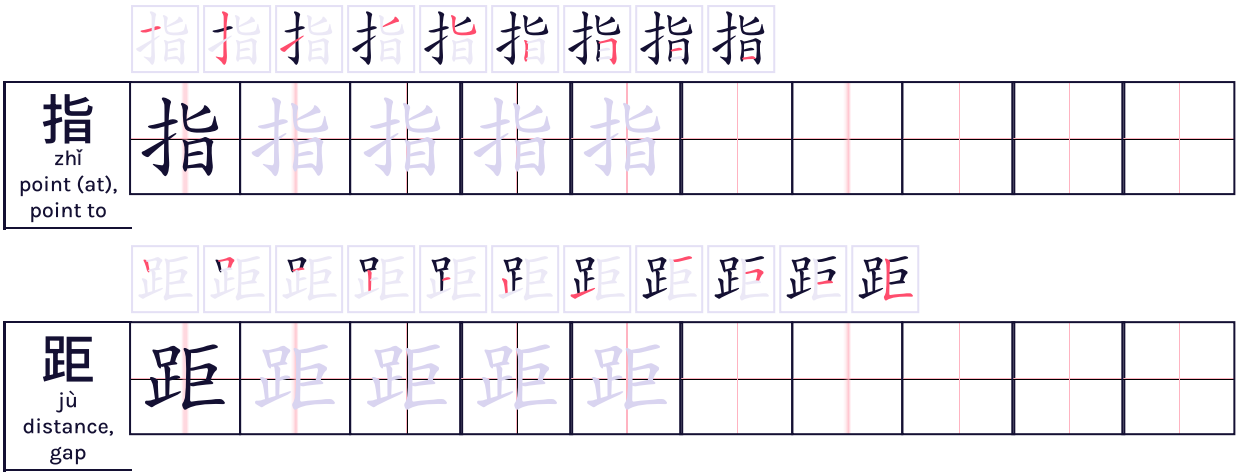
anna 别开太快，安全第一。这条公路两边都是树，真漂亮。
bié kāi tài kuài ānquán dì yī zhè tiáo gōnglù liǎng biān dōu shì shù zhēn piàoliang · Don’t drive too fast, safety first. This road has trees on both sides, it’s so pretty.

xiaoming 你看我指的那座山，那就是我们要去的地方。
nǐ kàn wǒ zhǐ de nà zuò shān nà jiùshì wǒmen yào qù de dìfang · Look at the mountain I’m pointing at: that’s where we’re going.

anna 太好了！那我们十一点半左右就能到吧？
tài hǎo le nà wǒmen shíyī diǎn bàn zuǒyòu jiù néng dào ba · Brilliant! So we’ll get there at about half past eleven?

xiaoming 对。我才不想再走错路呢！
duì wǒ cái bù xiǎng zài zǒu cuò lù ne · Yes. I’m certainly not taking a wrong turn again!

write it trace the grey, then write your own



good to know · Don’t double up 大约 and 左右 in careful writing: 大约十分钟 or 十分钟左右 is enough. In China you often hear directions by compass: 往东走 (go east). Look at the map if you’re not sure!

Rough numbers are real-life numbers: now you can plan a trip without a calculator.
Do this day interactively, with audio and games, free at **wishyou.today/learning**

day 31 on the road

Talk about traffic, parking and getting around a city by car or e-bike.

Traffic is everyone's favourite complaint: it's the small talk of every Chinese city.

words

word	pinyin	meaning	example
自	zì	from (formal)	自明天起，这条路上禁止停车。 From tomorrow, parking on this road is not allowed.
当	dāng	when; work as, be	当我到车站的时候，车已经开走了。 When I got to the station, the bus had already left.
由	yóu	by (who does it); from	这件事由小刘负责。 Xiao Liu is in charge of this.
随着	suízhe	along with, as	随着生活变好，买车的人越来越多。 As life gets better, more and more people buy cars.
等到	děngdào	by the time, when	等到我们到了，电影已经开始了。 By the time we arrived, the film had already started.
交通	jiāotōng	traffic, transport	北京的交通很方便，但是常常堵车。 Getting around Beijing is easy, but the traffic jams are frequent.
堵车	dǔchē	traffic jam; be stuck in traffic	路上堵车，我可能要晚到一会儿。 I'm stuck in traffic, I might be a bit late.
交警	jiāojǐng	traffic police	交警让我们把车停在路边。 The traffic police told us to pull over.
电动车	diàndòngchē	e-bike, electric scooter	我每天骑电动车上班。 I ride an e-bike to work every day.
停	tíng	stop; park	雨停了，我们走吧。 The rain has stopped, let's go.
停车	tíngchē	park (a car)	对不起，这里不能停车。 Sorry, you can't park here.
停车场	tíngchēchǎng	car park	商场下面有一个很大的停车场。 There's a big car park under the shopping centre.
车位	chēwèi	parking space	周末商场的车位很难找。 Parking spaces at the mall are hard to find at weekends.
加油站	jiāyóuzhàn	petrol station	车快没油了，前面有加油站吗？ We're almost out of petrol. Is there a petrol station ahead?
师傅	shīfu	master; driver (way to address)	师傅，麻烦您在路口停一下。 Excuse me, could you stop at the junction, please?
出口	chūkǒu	exit; export	我在地铁站出口等你。 I'll wait for you at the metro exit.

入口	rùkǒu	entrance	停车场的入口在大楼后面。 The car park entrance is behind the building.
进入	jìnrù	enter, get into	我们已经进入杭州市了。 We're already in Hangzhou city.

pattern from, when, along with: 自, 当, 由, 随着, 等

当 / 等(到) / 随着 **something happens** **,** **result**

These words set the time or the starting point. 当……的时候 = when; 等(到)…… = once, by the time; 随着…… = as, along with a change. 自 and 由 mean "from" in written Chinese, and 由 + person says who does a job.

当我到家的时候，大家已经吃完饭了。 **dāng wǒ dào jiā de shíhou dàjiā yǐjīng chī wán fàn le** When I got home, everyone had already eaten.

等到雨停了，我们再走吧。 **děngdào yǔ tíng le wǒmen zài zǒu ba** Let's go once the rain stops.

这趟动车由北京开往上海。 **zhè tàng dòngchē yóu Běijīng kāi wǎng Shànghǎi** This bullet train runs from Beijing to Shanghai.

随着天气变冷，骑电动车的人少了。 **suízhe tiānqì biàn lěng qí diàndòngchē de rén shǎo le** As the weather gets colder, fewer people ride e-bikes.

dialogue saturday night traffic

anna 小明，前面怎么不动了？
Xiǎomíng qiánmiàn zěnme bú dòng le · Xiaoming, why isn't anything moving?

xiaoming 又堵车了。随着车越来越多，北京的交通越来越麻烦了。
yòu dǔchē le suízhe chē yuè lái yuè duō Běijīng de jiāotōng yuè lái yuè máfan le · Another jam. With more and more cars, Beijing traffic just keeps getting worse.

anna 尽管堵车，我们还是来得及。电影七点才开始。
jǐnguǎn dǔchē wǒmen háishi láidejí diànyǐng qī diǎn cái kāishǐ · Even with the jam, we'll make it. The film doesn't start till seven.

xiaoming 等到了商场，还得找车位。周末停车特别难。
děngdào le shāngchǎng hái děi zhǎo chēwèi zhōumò tíngchē tèbié nán · Once we get to the mall, we still have to find a space. Parking at weekends is so hard.

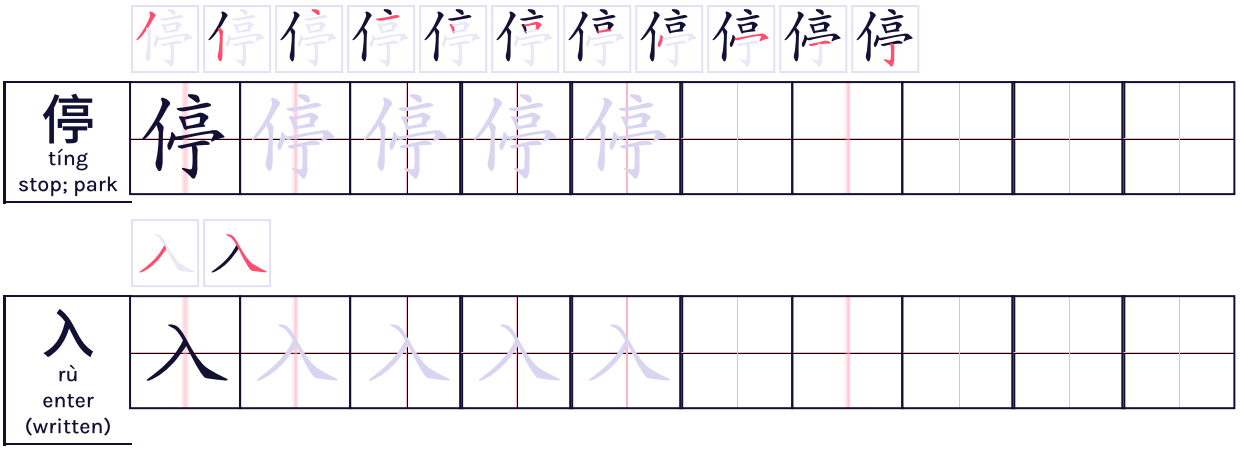
anna 你看，那边有个交警。我们问问他停车场的入口在哪儿吧。
nǐ kàn nàbiān yǒu gè jiāojǐng wǒmen wèn wen tā tíngchēchǎng de rùkǒu zài nǎr ba · Look, there's a traffic officer. Let's ask him where the car park entrance is.

xiaoming 他说入口在大楼后面。对了，车也快没油了。
tā shuō rùkǒu zài dà lóu hòumiàn duì le chē yě kuài méi yóu le · He says the entrance is behind the building. Oh, and we're nearly out of petrol.

anna 看完电影再去加油站吧。商场出口旁边就有一个。
kàn wán diànyǐng zài qù jiāyóuzhàn ba shāngchǎng chūkǒu pángbiān jiù yǒu yí gè · Let's go to the petrol station after the film. There's one right by the mall exit.

xiaoming 好主意。你看，车开始动了，我们马上就能进入停车场了。
hǎo zhǔyi nǐ kàn chē kāishǐ dòng le wǒmen mǎshàng jiù néng jìnrù tíngchēchǎng le · Good idea. Look, we're moving: we'll be in the car park in a minute.

write it trace the grey, then write your own



good to know · 等 can also mean “once, when”: 等他来了再说 (let’s talk when he’s here). You already know the verb, so this one is free! Say 师傅 to a taxi driver: 师傅，到火车站 is all you need to start the ride.

Next time you’re stuck in traffic, you can complain about it like a local.
Do this day interactively, with audio and games, free at **wishyou.today/learning**

day 32 a trip away

Plan a trip: say how long, how many, how often, and book a place to stay.

Planning a holiday with friends is half the fun, and it's full of "at least", "only" and "usually".

words

word	pinyin	meaning	example
共	gòng	in total (written)	这家旅馆共有二十个房间。 This guesthouse has twenty rooms in total.
全	quán	whole, all	我们全家都去云南度假了。 Our whole family went to Yunnan on holiday.
光	guāng	light; only; used up	光坐车就坐了八个小时。 The bus ride alone took eight hours.
仅	jǐn	only (formal)	这家旅馆离车站仅五百米。 The guesthouse is only 500 metres from the station.
仅仅	jǐnjǐn	only, merely	我们仅仅休息了一天，就又开始工作了。 We rested for just one day before going back to work.
至少	zhìshǎo	at least	去云南至少要玩一个星期。 You need at least a week to see Yunnan.
重新	chóngxīn	again, all over again	航班取消了，我们只好重新订机票。 The flight was cancelled, so we had to book tickets all over again.
往往	wǎngwǎng	usually, tend to	节假日的时候，火车票往往很难买。 Train tickets are usually hard to get during the holidays.
偶尔	ǒuěr	occasionally, once in a while	我偶尔一个人去旅行。 Once in a while I travel on my own.
再次	zàicì	once again	欢迎您再次来杭州！ Welcome back to Hangzhou!
旅行	lǚxíng	travel, trip	我很喜欢一个人旅行。 I love travelling alone.
出行	chūxíng	go out, travel (somewhere)	春节的时候，出行的人特别多。 Huge numbers of people travel at the Spring Festival.
外出	wàichū	go out (on business)	经理外出了，下午才回来。 The manager is out and won't be back until the afternoon.
度假	dùjià	go on holiday	他们一家去海边度假了。 Their family has gone to the seaside on holiday.
假日	jiàrì	holiday, day off	假日的时候，公园里人很多。 On days off, the park is full of people.
节假日	jiéjiàrì	public holidays	节假日的机票往往比平时贵。 Plane tickets are usually dearer on public holidays.

订	dìng	book, order	我已经在网上订好了酒店。 I've already booked the hotel online.
旅馆	lǚguǎn	guesthouse, small hotel	这家旅馆不大，但是很干净。 This guesthouse isn't big, but it's very clean.

pattern how much and how often: 共, 光, 仅, 至少 · 往往, 偶尔, 重新, 再次

who | 至少 / 光 / 往往 / 偶尔 | verb

Some adverbs say how much: 共 (in total), 全 (all), 光, 仅, 仅仅 (only, just), 至少 (at least). Others say how often: 往往 (usually, from experience), 偶尔 (now and then), 重新 and 再次 (again). They go before the verb; 老 + verb means "always, keeps on", often as a complaint.

从北京去杭州，坐高铁至少要四个多小时。 **cóng Běijīng qù Hángzhōu zuò gāotiě zhìshǎo yào sì gè duō xiǎoshí** From Beijing to Hangzhou, the high-speed train takes at least four hours.

周末的时候，商场往往人很多。 **zhōumò de shíhou shāngchǎng wǎngwǎng rén hěn duō** Shopping centres are usually crowded at weekends.

仅仅一个周末，怎么玩得完？ **jǐnjǐn yí gè zhōumò zěnme wán de wán** Just one weekend? How could we see it all?

我们全家都喜欢旅行。 **wǒmen quán jiā dōu xǐhuan lǚxíng** Our whole family loves travelling.

dialogue a plan for the holiday

xiao liu 下个月有个节假日，我们一起去杭州旅行吧！
xià gè yuè yǒu gè jiéjiàrì wǒmen yìqǐ qù Hángzhōu lǚxíng ba · There's a public holiday next month. Let's all go to Hangzhou!

anna 好啊！可是节假日出行的人往往特别多，票好买吗？
hǎo a kěshì jiéjiàrì chūxíng de rén wǎngwǎng tèbié duō piào hǎo mǎi ma · Great! But there are always crowds on holidays. Can we still get tickets?

xiao liu 别担心，我先帮大家订票。旅馆我也认识一家，又便宜又干净。
bié dānxīn wǒ xiān bāng dàjiā dìng piào lǚguǎn wǒ yě rènshi yì jiā yòu piányi yòu gānjìng · Don't worry, I'll book the tickets for everyone first. And I know a guesthouse, cheap and clean.

xiaoming 那我们去几天？光坐车就要四五个小时吧。
nà wǒmen qù jǐ tiān guāng zuò chē jiù yào sìwǔ gè xiǎoshí ba · So how many days? The journey alone takes four or five hours.

xiao liu 至少去三天。我们共三个人，订两个房间就够了。
zhìshǎo qù sān tiān wǒmen gòng sān gè rén dìng liǎng gè fángjiān jiù gòu le · Three days at least. There are three of us in total, so two rooms will do.

anna 我偶尔一个人外出度假，跟朋友一起去还是第一次！
wǒ ǒuěr yí gè rén wàichū dùjià gēn péngyou yìqǐ qù hái shì dì yī cì · I go away on my own now and then, but this is my first trip with friends!

xiaoming 我妈妈老说我不爱出门。这次我全听你们的！
wǒ māma lǎo shuō wǒ bú ài chūmén zhè cì wǒ quán tīng nǐmen de · My mum always says I never go anywhere. This time I'll do whatever you two say!

xiao liu 太好了！去过杭州的人，往往还想再次去。
tài hǎo le qù guo Hángzhōu de rén wǎngwǎng hái xiǎng zàicì qù · Great! People who've been to Hangzhou usually want to go back.

write it trace the grey, then write your own

偶
ǒu
by chance



尔
ěr
so, thus



good to know · 老 is also an adverb: 他老迟到 (he's always late). Like 老是, it often sounds a bit annoyed. 每 can open a sentence too: 每到周末，…… means "every time the weekend comes, …".

You can now plan a whole trip with friends: dates, rooms, tickets and all.
Do this day interactively, with audio and games, free at **wishyou.today/learning**

day 33 seeing the sights

Talk about sights and scenery, add “besides” and “but”, and find what you need at a scenic spot.

Every trip needs these words: where to go, what’s worth seeing, and where the toilets are.

words

word	pinyin	meaning	example
此外	cǐwài	besides, in addition	这个景区很美。此外，门票也不贵。 This scenic area is beautiful. Besides, the tickets aren’t expensive.
并且	bìngqiě	and also, moreover	导游给我们介绍了景点，并且回答了大家的问题。 The guide told us about the sights and answered everyone’s questions too.
不过	bùguò	but, however; only	这里的风景很美，不过人太多了。 The scenery here is lovely, but there are too many people.
入住	rùzhù	check in (at a hotel)	下午两点以后可以入住。 Check-in is from 2 pm.
导游	dǎoyóu	tour guide; guide	小刘是导游，他对杭州很熟悉。 Xiao Liu is a tour guide, he knows Hangzhou very well.
参观	cānguān	visit, look around	欢迎大家来我们学校参观。 You’re all welcome to visit our school.
游玩	yóuwán	go sightseeing, have fun	春天是去杭州游玩的好季节。 Spring is a great season to visit Hangzhou.
景点	jǐngdiǎn	tourist sight	这个景点不收门票。 This sight is free to enter.
景区	jǐngqū	scenic area	景区里不能骑电动车。 You can’t ride e-bikes in the scenic area.
景色	jǐngsè	scenery, view	山上的景色太美了！ The view from the mountain is stunning!
风景	fēngjǐng	scenery, landscape	我们一边走一边看风景。 We enjoyed the scenery as we walked.
美景	měijǐng	beautiful view	这样的美景，我从来没见过{guo}。 I’ve never seen a view like this.
顺便	shùnbiàn	while you’re at it, on the way	你去超市的时候，顺便帮我买瓶水。 When you go to the supermarket, could you grab me a bottle of water?
暂时	zànshí	for the moment, temporary	这个景点暂时关门了。 This sight is closed for the moment.
厕所	cèsuǒ	toilet	请问，厕所在哪儿? Excuse me, where’s the toilet?
入	rù	enter (written)	买好门票以后，请从这边入园。 Once you have your tickets, please enter the park this way.

背	bēi	carry on your back	他背着一个大包去旅行。 He went travelling with a big bag on his back.
背包	bēibāo	backpack	我的背包里有水和雨伞。 I've got water and an umbrella in my backpack.

pattern ……，不过……: but, only (and 此外, 并且)

something good **，不过** **a small catch**

不过 adds a softer "but": the first part stays true, the second adds a small catch. It's lighter than 但是 and very common in speech. Two more joiners for today: 此外 (besides, in addition) starts a new point; 并且 (and also) adds a second action.

这家旅馆很干净，不过离景点有点儿远。 **zhè jiā lǚguǎn hěn gānjìng búguò lí jǐngdiǎn yǒudiǎnr yuǎn**
This guesthouse is clean, but it's a bit far from the sights.

东西不错，不过有点儿贵。 **dōngxi búcuò búguò yǒudiǎnr guì** It's nice stuff, but a bit pricey.

门票不贵。此外，景区里还有免费的车。 **ménpiào bú guì cǐwài jǐngqū lǐ hái yǒu miǎnfèi de chē** The tickets aren't expensive. Besides, there are free buses inside the area.

dialogue a day with a real guide

xiao liu 大家好！今天由我来当导游，带大家参观这个景区。
dàjiā hǎo jīntiān yóu wǒ lái dāng dǎoyóu dài dàjiā cānguān zhège jǐngqū · Hi everyone! Today I'm your guide, and I'll show you around this scenic area.

anna 这里的景色真美！不过我背着这么大的背包，有点儿累。
zhèlǐ de jǐngsè zhēn měi búguò wǒ bēi zhe zhème dà de bēibāo yǒudiǎnr lèi · The view here is gorgeous! But I'm carrying such a big backpack, I'm a bit tired.

xiao liu 你可以暂时把背包存在入口那儿，那里是免费的。
nǐ kěyǐ zànshí bǎ bēibāo cún zài rùkǒu nàr nàlǐ shì miǎnfèi de · You can leave your backpack at the entrance for now. It's free.

xiaoming 小刘，请问厕所在哪儿？我得先去一下。
XiǎoLiú qǐngwèn cèsuǒ zài nǎr wǒ děi xiān qù yíxià · Xiao Liu, where are the toilets? I need to go first.

xiao liu 就在前面。这里的美景这么多，没有人不喜欢的。
jiù zài qiánmiàn zhèlǐ de měijǐng zhème duō méiyǒu rén bù xǐhuan de · Just ahead. There are so many beautiful views here, nobody leaves without loving it.

anna 我们还有时间去山上看看吗？
wǒmen hái yǒu shíjiān qù shān shàng kàn kan ma · Do we still have time to go up the hill?

xiao liu 有。山上的风景最好。此外，上面还有很多好吃的小吃。
yǒu shān shàng de fēngjǐng zuì hǎo cǐwài shàngmiàn hái yǒu hěn duō hǎochī de xiǎochī · We do. The best scenery is at the top. Besides, there are loads of tasty snacks up there.

xiaoming 太好了！那我们上去吧，顺便在上面吃午饭。
tài hǎo le nà wǒmen shàngqù ba shùnbiàn zài shàngmiàn chī wǔfàn · Brilliant! Let's go up, and have lunch there while we're at it.

write it trace the grey, then write your own



good to know · Big scenic areas in China are graded from A to AAAAA (5A): the 5A ones are the most famous, and the busiest. 不过 also means “only, no more than” before a number: 不过十分钟 (only ten minutes).

Now you can enjoy the view and still say what’s not perfect, politely.
Do this day interactively, with audio and games, free at **wishyou.today/learning**

day 34 a weekend in hangzhou

Follow a whole trip in Chinese: the train, the guesthouse, the sights, a cancelled train and the race back to the station.

This is unit 5 for real: everything you learned about travel, in one long weekend.

chapter 1 where is xiaoming?

anna 小刘，小明怎么还没到？他老是迟到！动车七点就开了。
XiǎoLiú Xiǎomíng zěnme hái méi dào tā lǎoshì chídào dòngchē qī diǎn jiù kāi le · Xiao Liu, why isn't Xiaoming here yet? He's always late! The train leaves at seven.

xiao liu 他刚才发短信说，路上堵车，大约十分钟以后到。
tā gāngcái fā duǎnxìn shuō lùshang dǔchē dàyuē shí fēnzhōng yǐhòu dào · He just texted: he's stuck in traffic and will be here in about ten minutes.

anna 要是他七点以前还没到，我们就会错过这趟车。
yàoshi tā qī diǎn yǐqián hái méi dào wǒmen jiù huì cuòguò zhè tàng chē · If he can't get here before seven, we'll miss this train.

xiao liu 别着急，现在才六点半，还来得及。我们先过安检，去大厅等他吧。
bié zháojí xiànzài cái liù diǎn bàn hái láidejí wǒmen xiān guò ānjiǎn qù dàtīng děng tā ba · Don't worry, it's only half past six, there's still time. Let's go through security and wait for him in the hall.

xiaoming 对不起，我来迟了！当我到地铁站的时候，地铁刚开走。我怕来不及，于是打了个车，没想到路上又堵车。
duìbuqǐ wǒ lái chí le dāng wǒ dào dìtiě zhàn de shíhou dìtiě gāng kāi zǒu wǒ pà láibují yúshì dǎ le gè chē méi xiǎng dào lùshang yòu dǔchē · Sorry I'm late! When I got to the metro station, the train had just left. I was afraid I wouldn't make it, so I took a taxi, and then got stuck in traffic.

xiao liu 没关系，你还是赶上了。你听，广播说去杭州的旅客可以检票了。我们赶紧走吧。
méi guānxi nǐ háishi gǎnshàng le nǐ tīng guǎngbō shuō qù Hángzhōu de lǚkè kěyǐ jiǎnpiào le wǒmen gǎnjǐn zǒu ba · Never mind, you made it. Listen, the announcement says passengers for Hangzhou can go through. Let's hurry.

anna 我们的座位在一起吗？
wǒmen de zuòwèi zài yìqǐ ma · Are our seats together?

xiao liu 在一起。我提前一个星期就订好了。节假日出行的人往往特别多，晚了就买不到了。
zài yìqǐ wǒ tíqián yí gè xīngqī jiù dìng hǎo le jiéjiàrì chūxíng de rén wǎngwǎng tèbié duō wǎn le jiù mǎi bu dào le · They are. I booked them a week ahead. Loads of people travel on public holidays; leave it late and there's nothing left.

xiaoming 我在网上看了时间表，这趟车不用换乘，直接到杭州。
wǒ zài wǎngshang kàn le shíjiānbiǎo zhè tàng chē búyòng huànchéng zhíjiē dào Hángzhōu · I checked the timetable online: this train doesn't need a change, it goes straight to Hangzhou.

anna 太好了。乘坐动车比坐大巴舒服多了，速度也快得多。
tài hǎo le chéngzuò dòngchē bǐ zuò dàbā shūfu duō le sùdù yě kuài de duō · Great. The bullet train is much more comfortable than the coach, and much faster too.

xiao liu 是啊。广播说动车将要出发了，大家坐好吧。我们中午前后就能到杭州。
shì a guǎngbō shuō dòngchē jiāngyào chūfā le dàjiā zuò hǎo ba wǒmen zhōngwǔ qiánhòu jiù néng dào Hángzhōu · Exactly. The announcement says the train is about to leave, so sit tight. We'll be in Hangzhou around noon.

chapter 2 from the station to the guesthouse

xiaoming 终于到杭州了！我们的旅馆离车站有多远？
zhōngyú dào Hángzhōu le wǒmen de lǚguǎn lí chēzhàn yǒu duō yuǎn · Hangzhou at last! How far is our guesthouse from the station?

xiao liu 不太远，大约十来公里。我们坐地铁去，不用换乘。
bú tài yuǎn dàyuē shí lái gōnglǐ wǒmen zuò dìtiě qù búyòng huànchéng · Not too far, ten-odd kilometres. We'll take the metro, no need to change.

anna 下了地铁以后呢？
xià le dìtiě yǐhòu ne · And after we get off the metro?

xiao liu 出口对面有一个十字路口，往右转，走五分钟左右就到了。
chūkǒu duìmiàn yǒu yí gè shízì lùkǒu wǎng yòu zhuǎn zǒu wǔ fēnzhōng zuǒyòu jiù dào le · Opposite the exit there's a crossroads. Turn right, and it's about five minutes' walk.

xiaoming 杭州骑电动车的人真多！
Hángzhōu qí diàndòngchē de rén zhēn duō · So many people ride e-bikes in Hangzhou!

xiao liu 是啊。随着地铁越来越多，这里的交通比以前好多了。
shì a suízhe dìtiě yuè lái yuè duō zhèlǐ de jiāotōng bǐ yǐqián hǎo duō le · They do. And as more metro lines open, the traffic here is much better than it used to be.

xiaoming 你们看我指的那座白色的楼，是不是我们的旅馆？
nǐmen kàn wǒ zhǐ de nà zuò báisè de lóu shì bu shì wǒmen de lǚguǎn · Look at that white building I'm pointing at. Is that our guesthouse?

xiao liu 不是，那是个停车场。我们刚才路过的加油站，你们看见了吗？旅馆就在它后面。
bú shì nà shì gè tíngchēchǎng wǒmen gāngcái lùguò de jiāyóuzhàn nǐmen kànjiàn le ma lǚguǎn jiù zài tā hòumiàn · No, that's a car park. Did you see the petrol station we just passed? The guesthouse is right behind it.

anna 地图上说，距离目的地还有两百米，就在前方。
dìtú shàng shuō jùlí mùdìdì hái yǒu liǎngbǎi mǐ jiù zài qiánfāng · The map says the destination is two hundred metres away, straight ahead.

anna 到了！现在能入住吗？
dào le xiànzài néng rùzhù ma · We're here! Can we check in now?

xiao liu 他们说两点以后才能入住。我们可以暂时把背包放在这儿。
tāmen shuō liǎng diǎn yǐhòu cái néng rùzhù wǒmen kěyǐ zànshí bǎ bēibāo fàng zài zhèr · They say check-in is only after two. We can leave our backpacks here for now.

xiaoming 太好了，背着这么大的包，我真受不了。那我们先去景区吧！
tài hǎo le bēi zhe zhème dà de bāo wǒ zhēn shòubuliǎo nà wǒmen xiān qù jǐngqū ba · Great, I can't stand carrying this huge bag. Let's go to the scenic area first!

xiao liu 好！这三天由我来当你们的导游。等到下午回来，我们再入住。
hǎo zhè sān tiān yóu wǒ lái dāng nǐmen de dǎoyóu děngdào xiàwǔ huílái wǒmen zài rùzhù · OK! For these three days I'll be your guide. We'll check in when we get back this afternoon.

chapter 3 a cup of tea, while we're at it

anna 这里的风景太美了！我从来没见过这样的美景。
zhèlǐ de fēngjǐng tài měi le wǒ cónglái méi jiàn guo zhèyàng de měijǐng · The scenery here is stunning! I've never seen a view like this.

xiao liu 春天和秋天来杭州游玩的人往往最多。不过今天人不太多。
chūntiān hé qiūtiān lái Hángzhōu yóuwán de rén wǎngwǎng zuì duō búguò jīntiān rén bú tài duō · Spring and autumn are usually the busiest times in Hangzhou. But it's not too crowded today.

xiaoming 这个景区要门票吗？
zhège jǐngqū yào ménpiào ma · Do we need tickets for this area?

xiao liu 不要，是免费的。此外，景区里共有二十来个景点，并且每个都很有意思。
búyào shì miǎnfèi de cǐwài jǐngqū lǐ gòng yǒu èrshí lái gè jǐngdiǎn bìngqiě měi gè dōu hěn yǒu yìsi · No, it's free. Besides, there are twenty-odd sights in the area, and every one is worth seeing.

anna 二十来个？光这个景区，我们就至少要玩一天！
èrshí lái gè guāng zhège jǐngqū wǒmen jiù zhìshǎo yào wán yì tiān · Twenty-odd? This scenic area alone will take us at least a day!

xiao liu 那我们先去参观最有名的几个景点吧，那里的景色最美。
nà wǒmen xiān qù cānguān zuì yǒumíng de jǐ gè jǐngdiǎn ba nàlǐ de jǐngsè zuì měi · Then let's visit the most famous sights first. That's where the views are best.

xiaoming 北京已经很冷了，而杭州还一点儿也不冷。来这儿度假真舒服！
Běijīng yǐjīng hěn lěng le ér Hángzhōu hái yìdiǎnr yě bù lěng lái zhèr dùjià zhēn shūfu · It's already cold in Beijing, while Hangzhou isn't cold at all. A holiday here is so nice!

anna 我想去喝杯茶。听说杭州的茶叶很有名。
wǒ xiǎng qù hē bēi chá tīngshuō Hángzhōu de cháyè hěn yǒumíng · I'd love a cup of tea. I hear Hangzhou tea is famous.

xiao liu 我叔叔家就在附近，他做的茶特别好喝。我们顺便去他家看看吧！
wǒ shūshu jiā jiù zài fùjìn tā zuò de chá tèbié hǎo hē wǒmen shùnbiàn qù tā jiā kàn kan ba · My uncle lives nearby, and the tea he makes is wonderful. Let's drop in on him while we're here!

xiaoming 好啊！不过我得先去一下厕所。
hǎo a búguò wǒ děi xiān qù yíxià cèsuǒ · Great! But I need to find a toilet first.

xiao liu 厕所就在入口旁边。我们在那儿等你。
cèsuǒ jiù zài rùkǒu pángbiān wǒmen zài nàr děng nǐ · The toilets are right by the entrance. We'll wait for you there.

chapter 4 the train is cancelled

anna 叔叔的茶真好喝！在北京往往买不到这么好的茶。
shūshu de chá zhēn hǎo hē zài Běijīng wǎngwǎng mǎi bu dào zhème hǎo de chá · Your uncle's tea is delicious! You can rarely get tea this good in Beijing.

xiao liu 你喜欢的话，可以多买一些带回去。叔叔平时很少出门，只是偶尔去市里卖茶。
nǐ xǐhuan dehuà kěyǐ duō mǎi yìxiē dài huiqu shūshu píngshí hěn shǎo chūmén zhǐshì ǒuěr qù shì lǐ mài chá · If you like it, you can buy some more to take back. My uncle hardly ever goes out; he only goes into town to sell tea now and then.

xiaoming 你们看，我刚收到短信：由于天气原因，明天上午的动车已取消。
nǐmen kàn wǒ gāng shōudào duǎnxìn yóuyú tiānqì yuányīn míngtiān shàngwǔ de dòngchē yǐ qǔxiāo · Look, I've just had a text: because of the weather, tomorrow morning's train is cancelled.

anna 那怎么办？我后天还得按时上班。
nà zěnme bàn wǒ hòutiān hái děi ànshí shàngbān · What do we do? I have to be at work on time the day after tomorrow.

xiaoming 坐飞机也不行，明天的航班全推迟了。
zuò fēijī yě bùxíng míngtiān de hángbān quán tuīchí le · Flying won't work either: all of tomorrow's flights are delayed.

xiao liu 别担心，我们重新订票就是了。下午还有一列动车，现在订还来得及。
bié dānxīn wǒmen chóngxīn dìng piào jiùshì le xiàwǔ hái yǒu yí liè dòngchē xiànzài dìng hái láidejí · Don't worry, we'll just book again. There's another train in the afternoon, and we can still get on it if we book now.

anna 订好了！下午三点的车仅有几张票了，差点儿就买不到了。
dìng hǎo le xiàwǔ sān diǎn de chē jǐn yǒu jǐ zhāng piào le chàdiǎnr jiù mǎi bu dào le · Booked! There were only a few tickets left for the three o'clock train. We nearly missed out.

xiao liu 师傅，我们要赶三点的动车，走高速的话来得及吗？
shīfu wǒmen yào gǎn sān diǎn de dòngchē zǒu gāosù dehuà láidejí ma · (The next day, in a taxi) Excuse me, we need to catch the three o'clock train. Will we make it if we take the expressway?

xiao liu 师傅说，走高速四十分钟左右就到，比走公路快多了。
shīfu shuō zǒu gāosù sìshí fēnzhōng zuǒyòu jiù dào bǐ zǒu gōnglù kuài duō le · The driver says it's about forty minutes on the expressway, much faster than the ordinary road.

anna 师傅，请在前面停一下。我们就在这儿下车吧。
shīfu qǐng zài qiánmiàn tíng yíxià wǒmen jiù zài zhèr xià chē ba · Could you stop just ahead, please? We'll get out here.

xiao liu 车站门口不能停车，交警不让停。师傅把我们送到停车场，从那儿进入车站只要五分钟。
chēzhàn ménkǒu bù néng tíngchē jiāojǐng bú ràng tíng shīfu bǎ wǒmen sòng dào tíngchēchǎng cóng nàr jìnrù chēzhàn zhǐyào wǔ fēnzhōng · You can't stop outside the station, the traffic police won't allow it. The driver will drop us at the car park; it's only five minutes from there into the station.

anna 你看，那儿写着：自十月一日起，车站门口禁止停车。
nǐ kàn nàr xiě zhe zì shí yuè yī rì qǐ chēzhàn ménkǒu jìnzhǐ tíngchē · Look, the sign says: from 1 October, no parking outside the station.

xiaoming 我们准时到了！广播说，开往北京的动车将在十分钟后检票，请乘客们做好准备。
wǒmen zhǔnshí dào le guǎngbō shuō kāi wǎng Běijīng de dòngchē jiāng zài shí fēnzhōng hòu jiǎnpiào qǐng chéngkèmen zuò hǎo zhǔnbèi · We made it on time! The announcement says the train to Beijing will start boarding in ten minutes, and passengers should get ready.

anna 仅仅三天，我已经爱上杭州了。这是我最开心的一次旅行，下次我们一定要再次来！
jǐnjǐn sān tiān wǒ yǐjīng ài shàng Hángzhōu le zhè shì wǒ zuì kāixīn de yí cì lǚxíng xià cì wǒmen yídìng yào zàicì lái · Just three days, and I've already fallen for Hangzhou. It's the best trip I've ever had. We have to come back next time!

You just got through a whole trip in Chinese: trains, maps, check-in, sights, a cancelled train and a race to the station. That's real travel.
Do this day interactively, with audio and games, free at **wishyou.today/learning**

wishyou.today learning

day 35 how much more?

Chinese HSK 4 in 69 days
unit 6 · shopping, money & the internet

Say prices and numbers that go up and down, with per cent, fractions, decimals and “times”.

Prices, discounts, results and the news are full of numbers: “20% more”, “a third”, “twice as much”.

words

word	pinyin	meaning	example
倍	bèi	times, -fold	这台电脑的价格是那台的两倍。 This computer costs twice as much as that one.
分数	fēnshù	score, mark; fraction	他这次考试的分数很高。 He got a high score in this exam.
之	zhī	of (written); in fractions	班里三分之一的学生是外国人。 A third of the students in the class are from abroad.
数	shù	number	你想一个数，我来猜。 Think of a number and I’ll guess it.
数字	shùzì	number, figure, digit	很多中国人喜欢八这个数字。 Lots of Chinese people like the number eight.
数量	shùliàng	quantity, amount	今年游客的数量增加了很多。 The number of tourists has gone up a lot this year.
价格	jiàgé	price	这两件衣服价格差不多。 These two pieces of clothing cost about the same.
价钱	jiàqián	price (spoken)	价钱合适的话，我就买了。 If the price is right, I’ll buy it.
高价	gāojià	high price	他用高价买了两张门票。 He paid a high price for two tickets.
低价	dījià	low price	这家{=(measure word for shops, firms)}店常常低价卖水果。 This shop often sells fruit cheaply.
超过	chāoguò	exceed, be more than	行李不能超过二十公斤。 Luggage can’t be more than twenty kilos.
低于	dīyú	be lower than, below	这台电脑的价钱低于五千块。 This computer costs less than five thousand yuan.
高于	gāoyú	be higher than, above	今年的价格高于去年。 Prices this year are higher than last year.
增加	zēngjiā	increase, add	学汉语的人增加了很多。 Many more people are learning Chinese now.
增长	zēngzhǎng	grow, rise	今年游客的数量增长了百分之十。 Tourist numbers grew by ten per cent this year.
下降	xiàjiàng	fall, drop, decline	这个月的价格下降了一点儿。 Prices fell a little this month.

降低	jiàngdī	lower, reduce	我们得{dei3}想办法降低价格。 We need to find a way to bring the price down.
大大	dàdà	greatly, hugely	高铁大大方便了人们的出行。 High-speed rail has made travel much easier.

pattern decimals, fractions, per cent and times (倍)

三分之一 · 百分之十 · 二点五 · 两倍

Fractions go bottom first: 三分之一 = ⅓ (“of three parts, one”). Per cent is 百分之 + number: 百分之二十 = 20%. Decimals use 点: 二点五 = 2.5. 倍 counts times: A是B的两倍 = A is twice B, and 增加了一倍 = it doubled.

我们班三分之一的学生是男生。 **wǒmen bān sān fēn zhī yī de xuéshēng shì nánshēng** A third of the students in our class are boys.

今年的游客增长了百分之二十。 **jīnnián de yóukè zēngzhǎng le bǎi fēn zhī èrshí** Tourist numbers rose by twenty per cent this year.

从家到公司是三点五公里。 **cóng jiā dào gōngsī shì sān diǎn wǔ gōnglǐ** It’s 3.5 kilometres from home to the office.

他这次的分数比上次增加了一倍。 **tā zhè cì de fēnshù bǐ shàng cì zēngjiā le yí bèi** His score this time is double what it was last time.

dialogue twenty new computers

manager chen 安娜，公司要买二十台新电脑，你看了价格吗?
Ānnà gōngsī yào mǎi èrshí tái xīn diànnǎo nǐ kàn le jiàgé ma · Anna, the company needs twenty new computers. Have you looked at prices?

anna 看了。这家店的价格低于别的店，每台四千五百块。
kàn le zhè jiā diàn de jiàgé dīyú biéde diàn měi tái sìqiānwǔbǎi kuài · Yes. This shop is cheaper than the others: 4,500 yuan each.

manager chen 另一家呢?
lìng yì jiā ne · And the other one?

anna 另一家每台九千块，是这家的两倍。不过他们说下个月会降低价格。
lìng yì jiā měi tái jiǔqiān kuài shì zhè jiā de liǎng bèi búguò tāmen shuō xià gè yuè huì jiàngdī jiàgé · The other one is 9,000 each: twice as much. But they say they’ll lower the price next month.

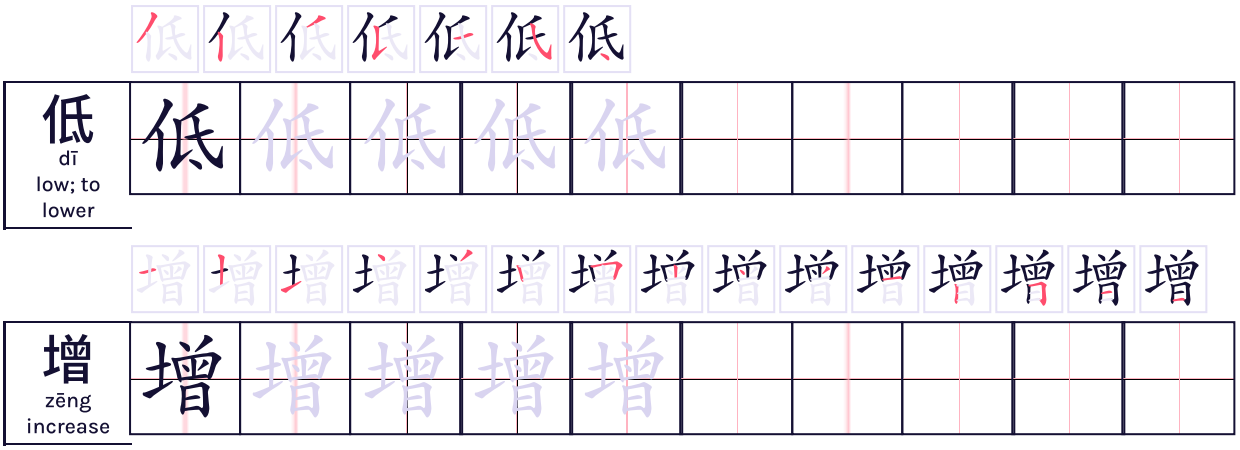
manager chen 高价的不一定好，低价的也不一定差。
gāojià de bù yídìng hǎo dījià de yě bù yídìng chà · Expensive isn’t always good, and cheap isn’t always bad.

anna 是啊。而且要是买的数量超过十台，就能便宜百分之十。
shì a érqiě yàoshi mǎi de shùliàng chāoguò shí tái jiù néng piányi bǎi fēn zhī shí · Right. And if we buy more than ten, we get ten per cent off.

manager chen 好。就是价钱便宜，我们也得先试一试。
hǎo jiùshì jiàqián piányi wǒmen yě děi xiān shì yi shi · Good. Even if the price is low, we should try one first.

anna 没问题。这样的话，二十台一共只要八万一千块。
méi wèntí zhèyàng dehuà èrshí tái yígòng zhǐ yào bā wàn yìqiān kuài · No problem. That way, twenty of them come to just 81,000 yuan.

write it trace the grey, then write your own



good to know · 点 is also the decimal point: 三点五 = 3.5. Context tells you it's not three o'clock! Careful with 倍: 增加了两倍 means it went up by 200% (three times as much); 是……的两倍 means twice as much.

Numbers are the same everywhere; now you can say them the Chinese way, fractions and all.
Do this day interactively, with audio and games, free at **wishyou.today/learning**

wishyou.today learning

day 36 shop till you drop

Chinese HSK 4 in 69 days
unit 6 · shopping, money & the internet

Shop for clothes, talk about brands, quality and sales, and say what “got taken” by someone else.

Shopping is the best real-life practice: you ask, compare, bargain and pay, all in a few minutes.

words

word	pinyin	meaning	example
购物	gòuwù	shopping; go shopping	周末很多人去商场购物。 Lots of people go shopping at the mall at weekends.
购买	gòumǎi	purchase, buy	您可以在网上购买门票。 You can buy tickets online.
逛	guàng	stroll, browse (the shops)	我们去逛逛商场吧。 Let’s go and have a look around the mall.
商品	shāngpǐn	goods, product	这家{=(measure word for shops, firms)}超市的商品很丰富。 This supermarket has a great range of products.
顾客	gùkè	customer	店里的顾客越来越多。 There are more and more customers in the shop.
牌子	páizi	brand; sign	你喜欢哪个牌子的手机? Which brand of phone do you like?
牌	pái	brand; sign, plate	她穿的都是名{=famous}牌。 She only wears big brands.
质量	zhìliàng	quality	这件毛衣不贵，质量也不错。 This sweater isn’t expensive, and the quality is good too.
适合	shìhé	suit, be right for	这个颜色很适合你。 This colour really suits you.
毛衣	máoyī	sweater, jumper	天冷了，我想买一件毛衣。 It’s getting cold, I want to buy a sweater.
外套	wàitào	coat, jacket	外面很冷，穿上外套吧。 It’s cold out, put your coat on.
袜子	wàzi	socks	我买了三双袜子。 I bought three pairs of socks.
货	huò	goods, stock	这种鞋卖完了，下{=next}个星期才有货。 These shoes are sold out; new stock comes next week.
假	jiǎ	fake, false	这个包是假{jia3}的，别买。 This bag is a fake, don’t buy it.
打折	dǎzhé	be on sale, give a discount	商场在打折，很多衣服都便宜了一半。 The mall has a sale, lots of clothes are half price.

降价	jiàngjià	cut prices, go down in price	这台电脑降价了，现在买很合适。 This computer has come down in price, it's a good time to buy.
算	suàn	calculate; count as	你算一下，一共多少钱? Work it out: how much is it altogether?
付	fù	pay	这次我来付钱吧。 Let me pay this time.

pattern passive with 叫 and 让 (and 将, 由)

thing | 叫 / 让 | person | verb + result

In speech, 叫 and 让 can make a passive, like 被: 那件外套叫别人买走了 = that coat got bought by someone. Unlike 被, they always need the person. Two written cousins: 将 works like 把 (请将手机关上), and 由 says who does the job (由我来付).

我的蛋糕叫妹妹吃了。 **wǒ de dàngāo jiào mèimei chī le** My cake got eaten by my little sister.

那件外套让别人买走了。 **nà jiàn wàitào ràng biérén mǎi zǒu le** That coat has been bought by someone else.

请将手机关上。 **qǐng jiāng shǒujī guān shàng** Please switch off your phones.

这次由我来付钱。 **zhè cì yóu wǒ lái fù qián** This time I'm paying.

dialogue the winter sales

little sister 安娜姐姐，商场在打折！我们去逛逛吧。
Ānnà jiějie shāngchǎng zài dǎzhé wǒmen qù guàng guang ba · Anna, the mall's got a sale on! Let's go and look around.

anna 好啊。我正好想买一件毛衣，天越来越冷了。
hǎo a wǒ zhènghǎo xiǎng mǎi yí jiàn máoyī tiān yuè lái yuè lěng le · OK. I was just thinking of getting a sweater, it's getting colder.

little sister 你看这件红色的，很适合你！
nǐ kàn zhè jiàn hóngsè de hěn shìhé nǐ · Look at this red one, it really suits you!

anna 颜色不错，质量也好。不过这个牌子我没听说过，会不会是假的?
yánsè búcuò zhìliàng yě hǎo búguò zhège páizi wǒ méi tīngshuō guo huì bu huì shì jiǎ de · Nice colour, and good quality. But I've never heard of this brand. Could it be a fake?

little sister 不会的。这是大商场，卖的都是名牌，没有假货。
bú huì de zhè shì dà shāngchǎng mài de dōu shì míng pái méiyǒu jiǎ huò · No way. This is a big mall, they only sell proper brands, no fakes.

anna 那好。对了，我刚才看到的那件外套呢?
nà hǎo duì le wǒ gāngcái kàn dào de nà jiàn wàitào ne · OK then. Oh, where's that coat I saw just now?

little sister 已经叫别人买走了。不过那边还有很多外套降价了。
yǐjīng jiào biérén mǎi zǒu le búguò nàbiān hái yǒu hěn duō wàitào jiàngjià le · Someone's already bought it. But there are lots more coats on sale over there.

anna 没关系。今天由我来付钱，你也选一件吧!
méi guānxi jīntiān yóu wǒ lái fù qián nǐ yě xuǎn yí jiàn ba · Never mind. Today it's on me: you pick something too!

little sister 谢谢姐姐！那我就买两双袜子吧。
xièxie jiějie nà wǒ jiù mǎi liǎng shuāng wàzi ba · Thanks, Anna! Then I'll get two pairs of socks.

write it trace the grey, then write your own



牌
pái
brand; sign, plate



套
tào
cover; set

good to know · 叫 and 让 also mean “ask, let” (妈妈让我回家). When a passive is meant, the subject is the thing that something happened to. Sales say 打八折 (pay 80%) or 五折 (half price). The number is what you pay, so 七折 is a better deal than 八折.

Next time you find something you love in a Chinese shop, you can talk brands, quality and price.
Do this day interactively, with audio and games, free at **wishyou.today/learning**

wishyou.today learning

day 37 paying & ordering online

Chinese HSK 4 in 69 days
unit 6 · shopping, money & the internet

Order and pay online, and link your points with “and also”, “besides” and “plus”.

In China almost everything is bought on a phone: scanning, paying and home delivery are daily life.

words

word	pinyin	meaning	example
另外	lìngwài	besides; another, other	我买了一件外套，另外还买了两双袜子。 I bought a coat, and two pairs of socks as well.
加上	jiāshàng	plus, on top of that	今天下雨，加上堵车，我迟到了半个小时。 It rained today and, on top of that, there was traffic, so I was half an hour late.
网购	wǎnggòu	shop online	现在很多人喜欢网购。 Lots of people like shopping online now.
线上	xiànshàng	online	这家{=(measure word for shops, firms)}店线上线下都能买。 You can buy from this shop online or in person.
线下	xiànxià	offline, in person	我们线上聊了很久，下{=next}个星期线下见面吧。 We’ve chatted online for ages, let’s meet in person next week.
扫码	sǎomǎ	scan a QR code	扫码就能付钱，非常方便。 You just scan the code to pay, it’s really easy.
支付	zhīfù	pay (formal)	您可以用手机支付。 You can pay by phone.
上门	shàngmén	come to your door, home service	他们可以免费上门送{=to deliver}货。 They can deliver to your door for free.
会员	huìyuán	member	成为会员以后，买东西可以打折。 Once you’re a member, you get discounts.
费	fèi	fee, charge; cost (effort)	这个月的电话费有点儿高。 My phone bill is a bit high this month.
费用	fèiyong	cost, expenses	这次旅行的费用一共多少? How much does this trip cost in total?
全部	quánbù	all, the whole	这些东西我全部要了。 I’ll take all of these.
全都	quándōu	all (of them)	我们班的同学全都来了。 Everyone in our class came.
所有	suǒyǒu	all, every	所有|的商品都可以在网上买到。 Every product can be bought online.
许多	xǔduō	many, a lot of	许多人觉得网购很方便。 Lots of people find online shopping convenient.
多数	duōshù	the majority, most	多数顾客都选择用手机支付。 Most customers choose to pay by phone.

部分	bùfen	part, section	一部分商品只能在店里买。 Some of the products can only be bought in store.
其中	qízhōng	among them, of which	我买了五本书，其中两本是给妹妹的。 I bought five books, two of them for my little sister.

pattern ……，并且……: and also (with 另外, 加上)

first point **，并且** **second point**

并且 adds a second point or action of the same weight: “and also”. It often follows 不仅 or 不光 (not only … but also). 另外 starts an extra point (besides), and 加上 adds one more reason: “plus, on top of that”.

这家店不光东西好，并且送货很快。 **zhè jiā diàn bùguāng dōngxi hǎo bìngqiě sòng huò hěn kuài** This shop doesn’t just have good stuff, it delivers fast too.

网上东西多。另外，价格也便宜。 **wǎngshang dōngxi duō lìngwài jiàgé yě piányi** There’s a lot to choose from online. Besides, the prices are low.

天气不好，加上路上堵车，快递晚到了一天。 **tiānqì bù hǎo jiāshàng lùshang dǔchē kuàidì wǎn dào le yì tiān** The weather was bad, plus there was traffic, so the parcel came a day late.

由于买的人太多，因此快递要晚两天。 **yóuyú mǎi de rén tài duō yīncǐ kuàidì yào wǎn liǎng tiān** So many people are buying that deliveries are two days late.

dialogue ms zhang goes online

ms zhang 安娜，小明说你很会网购。你能教教我吗?
Ānnà Xiǎomíng shuō nǐ hěn huì wǎnggòu nǐ néng jiāo jiao wǒ ma · Anna, Xiaoming says you're great at shopping online. Could you teach me?

anna 当然！首先在手机上打开购物网站，然后选您想买的东西。
dāngrán shǒuxiān zài shǒujī shàng dǎkāi gòuwù wǎngzhàn ránhòu xuǎn nín xiǎng mǎi de dōngxi · Of course! First open a shopping site on your phone, then choose what you want.

ms zhang 这么多商品！其中哪些比较好?
zhème duō shāngpǐn qízhōng nǎxiē bǐjiào hǎo · So many things! Which of them are the good ones?

anna 首先看看价格，其次看看别的顾客怎么说。许多人说好的，质量往往不错。
shǒuxiān kàn kan jiàgé qícì kàn kan biéde gùkè zěnme shuō xǔduō rén shuō hǎo de zhìliàng wǎngwǎng búcuò · First look at the price, and second, see what other customers say. If lots of people say it's good, the quality is usually fine.

ms zhang 买好了。怎么付钱？要用现金吗?
mǎi hǎo le zěnme fù qián yào yòng xiànjīn ma · Done. How do I pay? Do I need cash?

anna 不用，扫码就能支付。另外，他们会送货上门。
búyòng sǎomǎ jiù néng zhīfù lìngwài tāmen huì sòng huò shàngmén · No, just scan the code to pay. Besides, they deliver to your door.

ms zhang 不光方便，并且不用出门！那送货的费用谁付?
bùguāng fāngbiàn bìngqiě búyòng chūmén nà sòng huò de fèiyong shéi fù · Not only easy, I don't even have to go out! Who pays for the delivery?

anna 多数时候是店里付。要是您成为会员，所有的商品都能再便宜一点儿。
duōshù shíhou shì diàn lǐ fù yàoshi nín chéngwéi huìyuán suǒyǒu de shāngpǐn dōu néng zài piányi yìdiǎnr · Most of the time the shop does. And if you become a member, everything gets a bit cheaper.

ms zhang 好，那我也当会员！以后线上线下我都能买东西了。
hǎo nà wǒ yě dāng huìyuán yǐhòu xiànshàng xiànxià wǒ dōu néng mǎi dōngxi le · Right, I'll be a member too! From now on I can shop online and in person.

write it trace the grey, then write your own

线
xiàn
line, wire

部
bù
part; (measure word for films, books)

good to know · Many shops in China barely use cash any more: people scan a QR code with their phone. Visitors can link a foreign bank card to the big payment apps. 线上 and 线下 are everywhere now: 线上课 (online class), 线下见面 (meet in person).

You can now order, pay and get it delivered to your door, all in Chinese.
Do this day interactively, with audio and games, free at **wishyou.today/learning**

day 38 life online

Talk about videos, links and life online, and say “no matter what, who or how”.

Sharing videos and sending links is how friends talk now, and “no matter” is how you say your rules.

words

word	pinyin	meaning	example
不管	bùguǎn	no matter (spoken)	不管多忙，他每天都看新闻。 However busy he is, he reads the news every day.
不论	bùlùn	no matter	不论刮风还是下雨，快递都会准时送{=to deliver}到。 Rain or shine, the parcels arrive on time.
无论	wúlùn	no matter, whatever	无论你在哪儿，都可以上网。 Wherever you are, you can get online.
互联网	hùliánwǎng	the internet	互联网改变了我们的生活。 The internet has changed our lives.
网页	wǎngyè	web page	这个网页打{=(打开) open}不开。 This page won’t open.
网址	wǎngzhǐ	web address	你把网址发给我吧。 Send me the link.
网友	wǎngyǒu	online friend; netizen	许多网友觉得这个视频很有意思。 Lots of people online think this video is fun.
视频	shìpín	video	我每天晚上都看一会儿视频。 I watch videos for a while every evening.
图	tú	picture, chart, map	我发一张图给你看看。 I’ll send you a picture.
图片	túpiàn	picture, image	这张图片真好看。 This picture is really nice.
转发	zhuǎnfā	share, forward	我把这条消息转发给你了。 I’ve forwarded that message to you.
技术	jìshù	technology; skill	他的开车技术很好。 He’s a very good driver.
使用	shǐyòng	use	使用以前，请先看说明书。 Please read the instructions before use.
用来	yònglái	be used for	这个手机我主要用来看视频。 I mainly use this phone for watching videos.
用于	yòngyú	be used in, for (formal)	这种技术已经用于网上支付。 This technology is already used in online payments.
便于	biànyú	make it easy to	把文件放在网上，便于大家查看。 Put the file online so everyone can check it easily.
快速	kuàisù	fast, rapid	用这个方法，可以快速找到你要的东西。 This way, you can quickly find what you need.
获取	huòqǔ	obtain, get (information)	现在人们主要通过手机获取新闻。 These days people get their news mainly from

their phones.

pattern 不管 / 无论 / 不论……，都 / 也……: no matter

不管 / 无论	谁 / 什么 / 多 + adj / A还是B	，都 / 也	result

不管, 无论 and 不论 all mean “no matter”. After them comes a question word (谁, 什么, 多, 怎么) or a choice with 还是, never a plain statement. The second part needs 都 or 也. 不管 is the spoken one; 无论 and 不论 sound more formal.

不管多晚，他都会回复网友的消息。 **bùguǎn duō wǎn tā dōu huì huífù wǎngyǒu de xiāoxi** However late it is, he always answers messages from people online.

无论刮风还是下雨，他都骑电动车上班。 **wúlùn guā fēng háishi xià yǔ tā dōu qí diàndòngchē shàngbān** Wind or rain, he rides his e-bike to work.

不论什么问题，都可以在网上查一查。 **búlùn shénme wèntí dōu kěyǐ zài wǎngshang chá yi cha** Whatever the question, you can look it up online.

dialogue the video everyone is sharing

reporter zhou 安娜，你看了我昨天发的视频吗?
Ānnà nǐ kàn le wǒ zuótiān fā de shìpín ma · Anna, did you see the video I posted yesterday?

anna 看了！昨天晚上我们一屋子人都在看。许多网友都在转发呢。
kàn le zuótiān wǎnshang wǒmen yì wūzi rén dōu zài kàn xǔduō wǎngyǒu dōu zài zhuǎnfā ne · Yes! Last night a whole roomful of us were watching it. Loads of people are sharing it.

reporter zhou 真没想到。这个视频是用手机做的，使用的技术很简单。
zhēn méi xiǎng dào zhège shìpín shì yòng shǒujī zuò de shǐyòng de jìshù hěn jiǎndān · I never expected that. I made it on my phone, the tech is really simple.

anna 不管技术怎么样，大家喜欢就好。
bùguǎn jìshù zěnmeyàng dàjiā xǐhuan jiù hǎo · Whatever the tech, what matters is that people like it.

reporter zhou 是啊。现在无论做什么，都离不开互联网。
shì a xiànzài wúlùn zuò shénme dōu lí bu kāi hùliánwǎng · True. These days, whatever you do, you can’t do without the internet.

anna 我也是。不管去哪儿，我都带着手机。我的手机主要用来看新闻和视频。
wǒ yě shì bùguǎn qù nǎr wǒ dōu dài zhe shǒujī wǒ de shǒujī zhǔyào yònglái kàn xīnwén hé shìpín · Me too. Wherever I go, I take my phone. I mostly use it for news and videos.

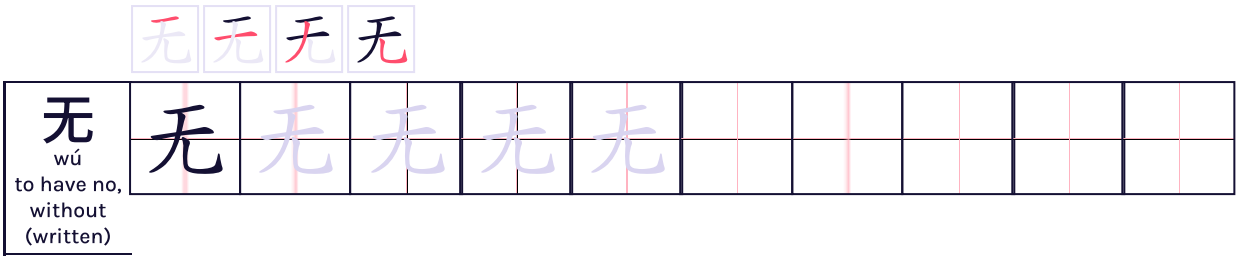
reporter zhou 那我把我们网站的网址发给你。上面有很多有意思的图片和视频。
nà wǒ bǎ wǒmen wǎngzhàn de wǎngzhǐ fā gěi nǐ shàngmiàn yǒu hěn duō yǒu yìsi de túpiàn hé shìpín · Then I’ll send you our site’s link. There are lots of fun pictures and videos on it.

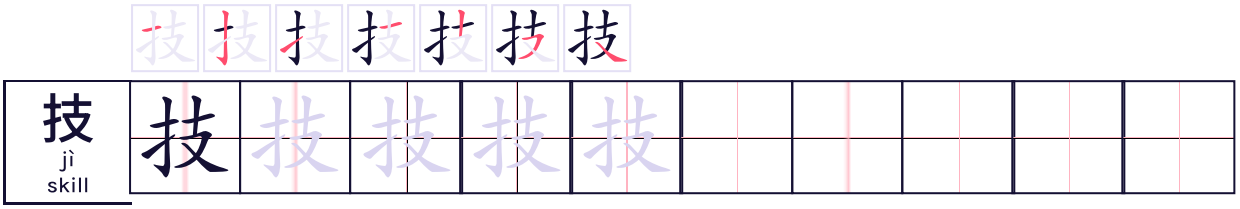
anna 好啊！看完我也帮你转发。
hǎo a kàn wán wǒ yě bāng nǐ zhuǎnfā · Great! I’ll share it for you when I’ve looked.

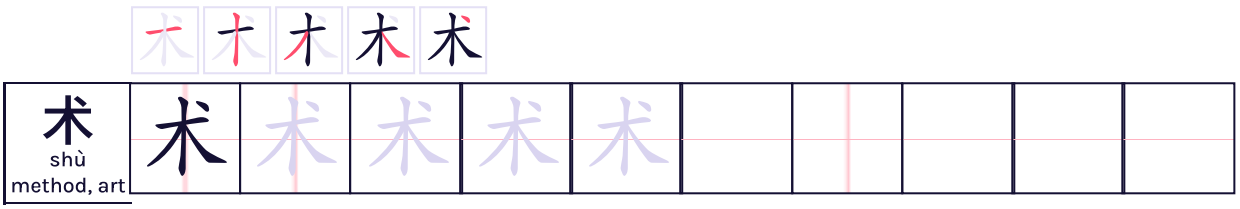
reporter zhou 谢谢！下次我请你吃一顿饭。
xièxie xià cì wǒ qǐng nǐ chī yí dùn fàn · Thanks! Next time I’ll treat you to a meal.

write it trace the grey, then write your own

论 lùn discuss







good to know · After 不管 / 无论, ask a question: 不管谁, 不管什么, 不管多远, 不管去不去. A plain statement (不管他很忙) is a common mistake. Use 还是, not 或者, inside a 不管 / 无论 choice: 无论刮风还是下雨.

Whatever you share and wherever you are, you can now talk about it in Chinese.
Do this day interactively, with audio and games, free at **wishyou.today/learning**

day 39 business

Talk about business, markets and adverts, and give your view “on” a topic.

Work meetings in Chinese are full of these words: the market, the competition, the budget and “as for this…”.

words

word	pinyin	meaning	example
对于	duìyú	regarding, as for, towards	对于这个问题，大家有什么看法? What does everyone think about this question?
方面	fāngmiàn	aspect, side, area	在工作方面，她给了我很多帮助。 She has helped me a lot with work.
生意	shēngyi	business, trade	这家{=(measure word for shops, firms)}店的生意越来越好。 Business at this shop keeps getting better.
市场	shìchǎng	market	周末我常去市场买菜。 At weekends I often go to the market for groceries.
经济	jīngjì	economy; economical	这几年，这个城市的经济发展得很快。 This city’s economy has grown fast in recent years.
竞争	jìngzhēng	compete; competition	卖手机的店很多，竞争很厉害。 There are lots of phone shops, and the competition is fierce.
赚	zhuàn	earn, make (money)	他做生意赚了不少钱。 He made quite a lot of money in business.
收入	shōurù	income	她的收入比以前高多了。 Her income is much higher than before.
广告	guǎnggào	advertisement	我不太喜欢看电视上的广告。 I don’t really like the adverts on TV.
推出	tuīchū	launch, bring out	这家{=(measure word for shops, firms)}店推出了几种新饮料。 This shop has launched some new drinks.
提供	tígōng	provide, offer	这家{=(measure word for shops, firms)}酒店提供免费早餐。 This hotel offers free breakfast.
流行	liúxíng	be popular, in fashion	今年流行这种颜色。 This colour is in fashion this year.
普遍	pǔbiàn	common, widespread	现在用手机支付已经很普遍了。 Paying by phone is very common now.
目前	mùqián	at present, currently	目前我们只{zhi3}在网上卖。 For now we only sell online.
现有	xiànyǒu	existing, currently available	现有的座位不够，还要再加几把椅子。 There aren’t enough seats, we need a few more chairs.
实际	shíjì	reality; practical, real	这个想法很好，但是不太实际。 It’s a nice idea, but not very practical.

实际上	shíjìshàng	in fact, actually	|看起来{==looks, seems}很贵，实际上并不贵。 It looks expensive, but actually it isn't.
估计	gūjì	estimate, reckon	我估计他今天不会来了。 I reckon he won't come today.

pattern towards and with: 对于, 与

对于 **topic** **,** **what you think or do**

对于 + topic puts what you're talking about first: 对于这件事，我同意. It's a bit more formal than 对, and 对 can always replace it (not the other way round). 与 means "and, with" in written or formal Chinese: 与他见面 = 跟他见面.

对于年轻人来说，收入很重要。 **duìyú niánqīng rén lái shuō shōurù hěn zhòngyào** For young people, income matters a lot.

对于这个市场，我们还不太了解。 **duìyú zhège shìchǎng wǒmen hái bú tài liǎojiě** We don't know this market very well yet.

这件事与你没有关系。 **zhè jiàn shì yǔ nǐ méiyǒu guānxì** This has nothing to do with you.

我们要与顾客多交流。 **wǒmen yào yǔ gùkè duō jiāoliú** We need to talk to our customers more.

dialogue anna's first business meeting

manager chen 安娜，下个月我们要推出新的服务。对于这件事，你有什么想法?
Ānnà xià gè yuè wǒmen yào tuīchū xīn de fúwù duìyú zhè jiàn shì nǐ yǒu shénme xiǎngfǎ · Anna, next month we're launching a new service. What are your thoughts on it?

anna 我觉得首先要了解市场。目前做这种服务的公司很多，竞争很厉害。
wǒ juéde shǒuxiān yào liǎojiě shìchǎng mùqián zuò zhè zhǒng fúwù de gōngsī hěn duō jìngzhēng hěn lìhai · I think first we need to understand the market. Lots of companies offer this now, and the competition is fierce.

manager chen 是的。不过我们现有的顾客很多，这是我们的优点。
shì de búguò wǒmen xiànyǒu de gùkè hěn duō zhè shì wǒmen de yōudiǎn · True. But we already have lots of customers; that's our strength.

anna 另外，广告也很重要。现在在网上做广告很流行，而且比电视便宜。
lìngwài guǎnggào yě hěn zhòngyào xiànzài zài wǎngshang zuò guǎnggào hěn liúxíng érqiě bǐ diànshì piányi · Also, adverts matter. Advertising online is really popular now, and cheaper than TV.

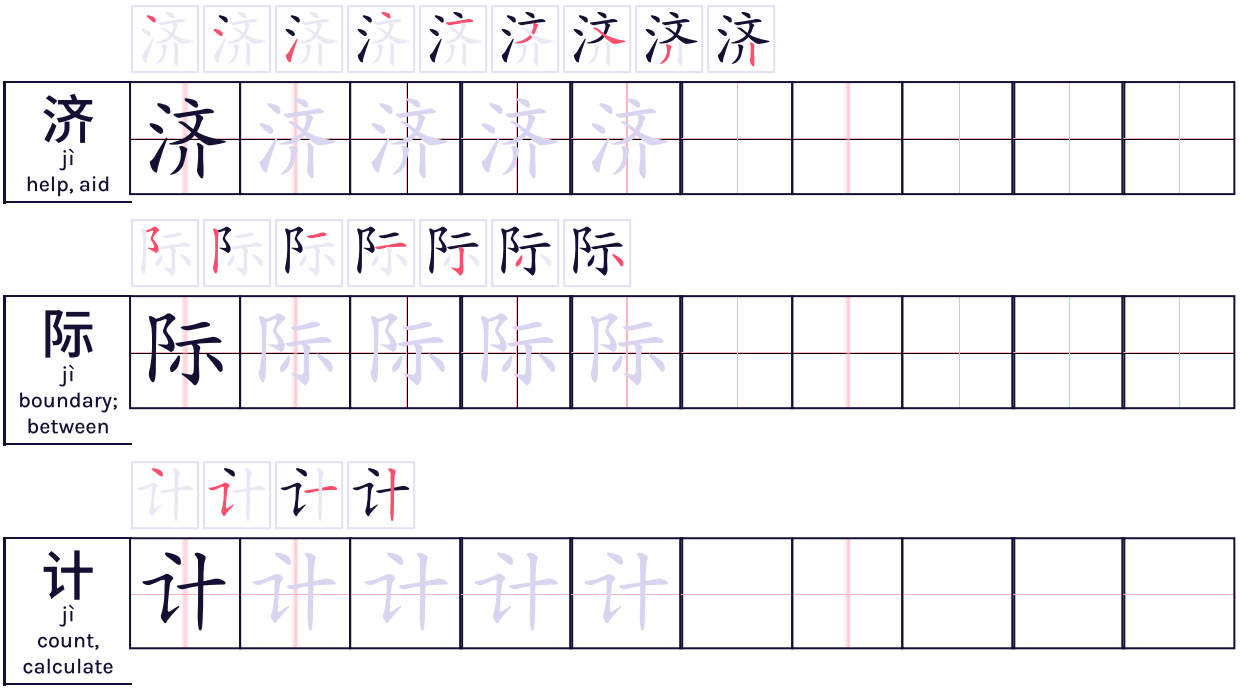
manager chen 这个想法很实际。你估计要花多少钱?
zhège xiǎngfǎ hěn shíjì nǐ gūjì yào huā duōshao qián · That's a practical idea. How much do you reckon it'll cost?

anna 我估计十万块左右。实际上，这些钱很快就能赚回来。
wǒ gūjì shí wàn kuài zuǒyòu shíjìshàng zhèxiē qián hěn kuài jiù néng zhuàn huilai · About a hundred thousand, I'd say. Actually, we'll earn that back fast.

manager chen 好。由于今年经济不太好，因此在价格方面，我们得便宜一点儿。
hǎo yóuyú jīnnián jīngjì bú tài hǎo yīncǐ zài jiàgé fāngmiàn wǒmen děi piányi yìdiǎnr · Good. Since the economy isn't great this year, we'll need to keep our prices a bit lower.

anna 明白。我会与同事们好好商量一下，再提供几个办法。
míngbai wǒ huì yǔ tóngshìmen hǎohǎo shāngliang yíxià zài tígōng jǐ gè bànfǎ · Understood. I'll talk it through with the team and come back with a few options.

write it trace the grey, then write your own



good to know · 对于……来说 means “for …, as far as … is concerned”: 对于我来说，这很难. In meetings, 我估计 (I reckon) and 实际上 (in fact) help you sound careful and clear.

You just held your own in a business meeting. Your next one can be in Chinese for real.
Do this day interactively, with audio and games, free at **wishyou.today/learning**

wishyou.today learning

day 40 is it worth it?

Chinese HSK 4 in 69 days
unit 6 · shopping, money & the internet

Weigh up whether something is worth it: two sides, results, and “so that”.

Before you spend money or time, you weigh it up. Now you can do it out loud, in Chinese.

words

word	pinyin	meaning	example
值	zhí	be worth	这件外套值五百块吗? Is this coat worth five hundred yuan?
值得	zhídé	be worth (doing)	这本书很值得读。 This book is well worth reading.
效果	xiàoguǒ	effect, result	这个广告的效果很好。 This advert has worked really well.
是否	shìfǒu	whether, if (formal)	我还不知道他是否同意。 I don’t know yet whether he agrees.
能否	néngfǒu	whether (something) can	能否成功，就看这一次了。 Whether it works now depends on this one try.
无法	wúfǎ	be unable to, no way to	雪太大了，飞机无法起飞。 The snow is too heavy, the planes can’t take off.
缺	quē	lack, be short of	我们公司现在很缺人。 Our company is really short of staff right now.
缺少	quēshǎo	lack, be short of	他不缺少能力，缺少的是信心。 He doesn’t lack ability; what he lacks is confidence.
人数	rénshù	number of people	今天参加会议的人数比上{=last}次多。 More people came to today’s meeting than last time.
以内	yǐnèi	within, less than	七天以内，商品可以免费换。 You can exchange items for free within seven days.
同时	tóngshí	at the same time; meanwhile	他工作的同时，还在学汉语。 He’s learning Chinese while he works.
从中	cóngzhōng	from it, out of it	这次失败了，但是我从中|学到了很多。 It didn’t work this time, but I learned a lot from it.
此次	cǐcì	this time (formal)	此次会议共有二百人参加。 Two hundred people took part in this meeting.
不断	bùduàn	continuously, keep (doing)	网购的人数不断增加。 The number of people shopping online keeps growing.
加快	jiākuài	speed up	我们得{dei3}加快速度了。 We need to speed up.
方式	fāngshì	way, method	每个人的学习方式都不一样。 Everyone has their own way of learning.
大量	dàliàng	a large amount of, lots of	春节前，大量旅客回家过年。 Before the Spring Festival, huge numbers of travellers go home for the New Year.

pattern 一方面……，另一方面……: on the one hand (and ……，好…… so that)

一方面 side 1 ，另一方面 side 2

一方面……，另一方面…… lays out two sides or two reasons: “on the one hand … on the other”. Unlike in English, both sides can point the same way. Today’s second pattern, ……，好……, means “so that”: 早一点儿睡，好明天早起.

一方面我想多赚钱，另一方面我也想多休息。 **yì fāngmiàn wǒ xiǎng duō zhuàn qián lìng yì fāngmiàn wǒ yě xiǎng duō xiūxi** On the one hand I want to earn more, on the other I want more rest.

他学汉语，一方面是为了工作，另一方面是因为喜欢中国文化。 **tā xué Hànyǔ yì fāngmiàn shì wèile gōngzuò lìng yì fāngmiàn shì yīnwèi xǐhuan Zhōngguó wénhuà** He learns Chinese partly for work and partly because he loves Chinese culture.

你早一点儿睡，好明天早起。 **nǐ zǎo yìdiǎnr shuì hǎo míngtiān zǎo qǐ** Go to bed early so you can get up early tomorrow.

把地址发给我，好让快递送到。 **bǎ dìzhǐ fā gěi wǒ hǎo ràng kuàidì sòng dào** Send me the address so the parcel can get to you.

dialogue is the course worth it?

xiaoming 安娜，我想上一个网上的课，学做视频。可是要五千块，你觉得值得吗?
Ānnà wǒ xiǎng shàng yí gè wǎngshang de kè xué zuò shìpín kěshì yào wǔqiān kuài nǐ juéde zhídé ma · Anna, I want to take an online course in making videos. But it’s five thousand yuan. Do you think it’s worth it?

anna 一方面要看课的效果，另一方面也要看你是否真的需要。
yì fāngmiàn yào kàn kè de xiàoguǒ lìng yì fāngmiàn yě yào kàn nǐ shìfǒu zhēn de xūyào · On the one hand it depends how good the course is, and on the other whether you really need it.

xiaoming 我找工作的时候发现，很多公司都缺少会做视频的人。
wǒ zhǎo gōngzuò de shíhou fāxiàn hěn duō gōngsī dōu quēshǎo huì zuò shìpín de rén · While job-hunting I noticed that lots of companies are short of people who can make videos.

anna 那就值得！既然公司缺这样的人，你就去学吧。
nà jiù zhídé jìrán gōngsī quē zhèyàng de rén nǐ jiù qù xué ba · Then it’s worth it! Since companies need people like that, go and learn.

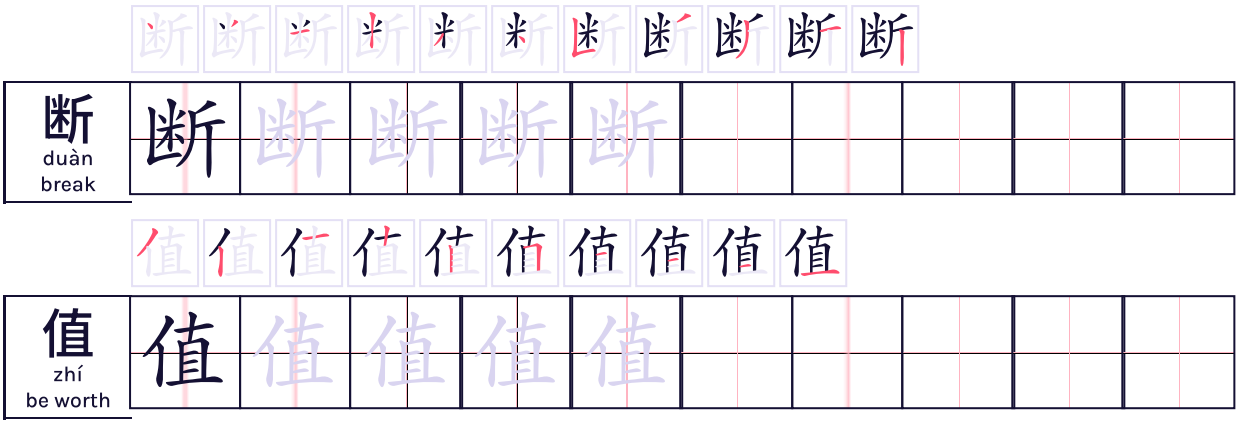
xiaoming 不过我不知道自己能否学好。三十天以内要学完所有的课。
búguò wǒ bù zhīdào zìjǐ néng fǒu xué hǎo sānshí tiān yǐnèi yào xué wán suǒyǒu de kè · But I don’t know if I can do it well. I’d have to finish every lesson within thirty days.

anna 别担心。你可以上课的同时做几个小视频，好从中学到更多。
bié dānxīn nǐ kěyǐ shàngkè de tóngshí zuò jǐ gè xiǎo shìpín hǎo cóngzhōng xué dào gèng duō · Don’t worry. You can make a few short videos while you take the course, so you learn even more from it.

xiaoming 听说网上有大量的人在学这个，人数还在不断增加。
tīngshuō wǎngshang yǒu dàliàng de rén zài xué zhège rénshù hái zài búduàn zēngjiā · I hear huge numbers of people are learning this online, and more join all the time.

anna 这说明这种学习方式很受欢迎。我们加快速度，今天就决定吧!
zhè shuōmíng zhè zhǒng xuéxí fāngshì hěn shòu huānyíng wǒmen jiākuài sùdù jīntiān jiù juédìng ba · That shows this way of learning is popular. Let’s get a move on and decide today!

write it trace the grey, then write your own



good to know · 好 has two new jobs today: “so that” (……，好早点儿到) and “easy to” (这条路好找, the road is easy to find). 是否 and 能否 are the formal “whether”: in speech, say 是不是 and 能不能.

Two sides, one decision: you can now think a choice through out loud in Chinese.
Do this day interactively, with audio and games, free at **wishyou.today/learning**

wishyou.today learning

day 41 anna's online shop

Chinese HSK 4 in 69 days
unit 6 · shopping, money & the internet

Follow a small online business from idea to first sales: prices, videos, orders, a big order and whether it's worth it.

This is unit 6 in one story: numbers, shopping, paying online, the internet and business talk.

chapter 1 let's sell it online

anna 小刘，你叔叔的茶太好喝了。我想在网上帮他卖，你觉得怎么样？
XiǎoLiú nǐ shūshu de chá tài hǎo hē le wǒ xiǎng zài wǎngshang bāng tā mài nǐ juéde zěnmeyàng · Xiao Liu, your uncle's tea is so good. I'd like to sell it online for him. What do you think?

xiao liu 好主意！叔叔的茶质量很好，不过他不会使用互联网，也不懂这些技术。
hǎo zhǔyi shūshu de chá zhìliàng hěn hǎo búguò tā bú huì shǐyòng hùliánwǎng yě bù dǒng zhèxiē jìshù · Great idea! His tea is top quality, but he doesn't use the internet and doesn't understand the technology.

xiaoming 我来帮你们做视频和图片！我正好在学做视频。
wǒ lái bāng nǐmen zuò shìpín hé túpiàn wǒ zhènghǎo zài xué zuò shìpín · I'll make the videos and pictures! I'm learning to make videos right now.

anna 太好了，视频就由你来做。那价格多少比较合适？
tài hǎo le shìpín jiù yóu nǐ lái zuò nà jiàgé duōshao bǐjiào héshì · Brilliant, the videos are yours then. So what would be a good price?

xiao liu 叔叔卖一斤三百块，比市场上的价格便宜三分之一左右。
shūshu mài yì jīn sānbǎi kuài bǐ shìchǎng shàng de jiàgé piányi sān fēn zhī yī zuǒyòu · My uncle sells it at 300 yuan a jin, about a third cheaper than the market price.

xiaoming 我在网上看了，卖茶的店很多，高价的、低价的都有。我们的价钱最好不要高于三百块。
wǒ zài wǎngshang kàn le mài chá de diàn hěn duō gāojià de dījià de dōu yǒu wǒmen de jiàqián zuìhǎo búyào gāoyú sānbǎi kuài · I've looked online: there are loads of tea shops, some expensive, some cheap. We'd better not charge more than 300.

anna 那我们也卖三百块吧。即使比别的店便宜，叔叔也能赚钱。
nà wǒmen yě mài sānbǎi kuài ba jíshǐ bǐ biéde diàn piányi shūshu yě néng zhuàn qián · Then let's sell it for 300 too. Even though it's cheaper than other shops, your uncle still makes money.

xiaoming 我算了一下，要是一个月卖一百斤，收入就有三万块！
wǒ suàn le yíxià yàoshi yí gè yuè mài yìbǎi jīn shōurù jiù yǒu sān wàn kuài · I've worked it out: if we sell a hundred jin a month, that's thirty thousand yuan!

xiao liu 别想得太好。刚开始的时候，顾客往往不多。价格也不能再降低了，否则叔叔就赚不到钱了。
bié xiǎng de tài hǎo gāng kāishǐ de shíhou gùkè wǎngwǎng bù duō jiàgé yě bù néng zài jiàngdī le fǒuzé shūshu jiù zhuàn bu dào qián le · Don't get carried away. At the start, there usually aren't many customers. And we can't go any lower on price, or my uncle won't make anything.

anna 我估计第一个月能卖二三十斤就不错了。
wǒ gūjì dì yī gè yuè néng mài èrsānshí jīn jiù búcuò le · I reckon twenty or thirty jin in the first month would be pretty good.

xiao liu 无论卖多少，叔叔都会很高兴的。
wúlùn mài duōshao shūshu dōu huì hěn gāoxìng de · However much we sell, my uncle will be delighted.

chapter 2 the first video

xiaoming 周记者，这是我做的视频，您觉得效果怎么样?
Zhōujìzhě zhè shì wǒ zuò de shìpín nín juéde xiàoguǒ zěnmeyàng · Reporter Zhou, here's the video I made. How do you think it works?

reporter zhou 很好！一方面茶叶看起来很新鲜，另一方面杭州的风景也很美。
hěn hǎo yì fāngmiàn cháyè kànqǐlai hěn xīnxiān lìng yì fāngmiàn Hángzhōu de fēngjǐng yě hěn měi · Really good! On the one hand the tea looks really fresh, and on the other the Hangzhou scenery is beautiful.

anna 我们还做了一个网页，用来介绍叔叔的茶。我们把网址放在视频下面，好让大家快速找到我们的店。
wǒmen hái zuò le yí gè wǎngyè yònglái jièshào shūshu de chá wǒmen bǎ wǎngzhǐ fàng zài shìpín xiàmiàn hǎo ràng dàjiā kuàisù zhǎo dào wǒmen de diàn · We've also made a web page to introduce the uncle's tea. We'll put the link under the video so people can find our shop quickly.

reporter zhou 网页上最好多放几张图，便于顾客获取更多信息。
wǎngyè shàng zuìhǎo duō fàng jǐ zhāng tú biànyú gùkè huòqǔ gèng duō xìnxī · Put a few more pictures on the page; it makes it easier for customers to find out more.

xiaoming 我们没有钱做广告，只能请网友帮忙转发。
wǒmen méiyǒu qián zuò guǎnggào zhǐ néng qǐng wǎngyǒu bāngmáng zhuǎnfā · We've got no money for adverts, so we can only ask people online to share it.

reporter zhou 我帮你们转发吧。我的网友很多，其中不少人喜欢喝茶。
wǒ bāng nǐmen zhuǎnfā ba wǒ de wǎngyǒu hěn duō qízhōng bù shǎo rén xǐhuan hē chá · I'll share it for you. I have lots of friends online, and quite a few of them love tea.

xiaoming 太谢谢您了！不管有多少人看，我们都很高兴。
tài xièxie nín le bùguǎn yǒu duōshao rén kàn wǒmen dōu hěn gāoxìng · Thank you so much! However many people watch it, we'll be happy.

reporter zhou 现在很多人在网上购物，用视频卖东西很流行，也很普遍。用视频来介绍商品，效果往往比图片好。
xiànzài hěn duō rén zài wǎngshang gòuwù yòng shìpín mài dōngxi hěn liúxíng yě hěn pǔbiàn yòng shìpín lái jièshào shāngpǐn xiàoguǒ wǎngwǎng bǐ túpiàn hǎo · Lots of people shop online now, and selling with videos is popular and very common. Using video to show a product usually works better than pictures.

anna 是啊。不论是谁看到视频，都可以直接在网上购买。
shì a búlùn shì shéi kàn dào shìpín dōu kěyǐ zhíjiē zài wǎngshang gòumǎi · That's right. Whoever sees the video can buy straight away online.

chapter 3 nearly sold out

anna 小明，你看这个数字！周记者转发以后，看视频的人数大大增加了，已经超过一万了。这个星期买茶的人是上个星期的两倍！

Xiǎomíng nǐ kàn zhège shùzì Zhōujìzhě zhuǎnfā yǐhòu kàn shìpín de rénshù dàdà zēngjiā le yǐjīng chāoguò yí wàn le zhège xīngqī mǎi chá de rén shì shàng gè xīngqī de liǎng bèi · Xiaoming, look at this number! Since Reporter Zhou shared it, the number of viewers has shot up: it's passed ten thousand. Twice as many people bought tea this week as last week!

xiaoming 太好了！不过我们现在最缺的是茶叶，快让顾客买完了。我留给自己的那盒也叫妹妹拿去送老师了。

tài hǎo le búguò wǒmen xiànzài zuì quē de shì cháyè kuài ràng gùkè mǎi wán le wǒ liú gěi zìjǐ de nà hé yě jiào mèimei ná qù sòng lǎoshī le · Brilliant! But what we're shortest of now is tea: the customers have nearly bought it all. Even the box I kept for myself got taken by my sister, as a present for her teacher.

anna 我已经给叔叔打电话了，他明天就寄来一大袋。我们得加快送货的速度，有的顾客已经等了三天了。

wǒ yǐjīng gěi shūshu dǎ diànhuà le tā míngtiān jiù jì lái yí dà dài wǒmen děi jiākuài sòng huò de sùdù yǒude gùkè yǐjīng děng le sān tiān le · I've already called the uncle; he's sending a big bag tomorrow. We need to deliver faster: some customers have waited three days already.

ms zhang 安娜，我也在你的店里买了茶。扫码支付，特别方便！

Ānnà wǒ yě zài nǐ de diàn lǐ mǎi le chá sǎomǎ zhīfù tèbié fāngbiàn · Anna, I bought tea from your shop too. Scan and pay, so easy!

anna 谢谢阿姨！您是我们的第一位会员。

xièxie āyí nín shì wǒmen de dì yī wèi huìyuán · Thank you! You're our very first member.

ms zhang 以前我都在线下买茶，逛了很多商店，还老怕买到假的。现在网购就方便多了。

yǐqián wǒ dōu zài xiànxià mǎi chá guàng le hěn duō shāngdiàn hái lǎo pà mǎi dào jiǎ de xiànzài wǎnggòu jiù fāngbiàn duō le · I used to buy tea in shops, going round lots of them, always worried about getting fakes. Shopping online is so much easier.

ms zhang 你们的茶不光好喝，价格也不贵，很适合送人。加上能送货上门，同事们全都说要买。

nǐmen de chá bùguāng hǎo hē jiàgé yě bú guì hěn shìhé sòng rén jiāshàng néng sòng huò shàngmén tóngshìmen quándōu shuō yào mǎi · Your tea isn't just delicious, it's not expensive either, perfect as a gift. And on top of that you deliver to the door, so my colleagues all want some.

ms zhang 另外，她们问，送货的费用怎么算？

lìngwài tāmen wèn sòng huò de fèiyong zěnme suàn · Oh, and they're asking: how much is delivery?

anna 在北京，两天以内就能送到，并且费用全部由我们来付。

zài Běijīng liǎng tiān yǐnèi jiù néng sòng dào bìngqiě fèiyong quánbù yóu wǒmen lái fù · In Beijing it arrives within two days, and we pay all the delivery costs.

anna 我在网页上写了一句：“请将地址和电话写清楚。”这样就不会送错了。

wǒ zài wǎngyè shàng xiě le yí jù qǐng jiāng dìzhǐ hé diànhuà xiě qīngchu zhèyàng jiù bú huì sòng cuò le · I've written a line on the web page: "Please write your address and phone number clearly." That way nothing goes to the wrong place.

xiaoming 我看了一下，买茶的人里多数是年轻人，也有一部分是阿姨们。许多人买了一次，又来买第二次。

wǒ kàn le yíxià mǎi chá de rén lǐ duōshù shì niánqīng rén yě yǒu yí bùfen shì āyímen xǔduō rén mǎi le yí cì yòu lái mǎi dì èr cì · I've had a look: most of the buyers are young people, and some are aunties. Lots of people come back to buy a second time.

chapter 4 manager chen hears the news

manager chen 安娜，听说你在网上卖茶叶？
Ānnà tīngshuō nǐ zài wǎngshang mài cháyè · Anna, I hear you're selling tea online?

anna 是的，是周末做的。我保证不会影响工作。
shì de shì zhōumò zuò de wǒ bǎozhèng bú huì yǐngxiǎng gōngzuò · Yes, at weekends. I promise it won't affect my work.

manager chen 我相信你。对于年轻人来说，多试试是好事。生意怎么样？
wǒ xiāngxìn nǐ duìyú niánqīng rén lái shuō duō shì shi shì hǎo shì shēngyi zěnmeyàng · I believe you. For young people, trying things out is good. How's business?

anna 还不错。目前一个月能卖五十多斤，不过市场竞争很厉害。实际上，送货费很高，每斤只能赚二十块左右。
hái búcuò mùqián yí gè yuè néng mài wǔshí duō jīn búguò shìchǎng jìngzhēng hěn lìhai shíjìshàng sòng huò fèi hěn gāo měi jīn zhǐ néng zhuàn èrshí kuài zuǒyòu · Not bad. Right now we sell fifty-odd jin a month, but the competition is fierce. In fact delivery is expensive, so we only make about twenty yuan a jin.

manager chen 现在经济不太好，很多店的收入都在下降。你们的生意能不断增长，很不容易。
xiànzài jīngjì bú tài hǎo hěn duō diàn de shōurù dōu zài xiàjiàng nǐmen de shēngyi néng búduàn zēngzhǎng hěn bù róngyì · The economy isn't great right now, and lots of shops are earning less. For your business to keep growing is no small thing.

anna 谢谢您。一方面我学到了做生意的方法，另一方面也交了很多新朋友。
xièxie nín yì fāngmiàn wǒ xué dào le zuò shēngyi de fāngfǎ lìng yì fāngmiàn yě jiāo le hěn duō xīn péngyou · Thank you. On the one hand I've learned how business works, and on the other I've made lots of new friends.

manager chen 是否赚钱不是最重要的，你能从中学到很多东西。不过要与大公司竞争，你们还得有自己的牌子。
shìfǒu zhuàn qián bú shì zuì zhòngyào de nǐ néng cóngzhōng xué dào hěn duō dōngxi búguò yào yǔ dà gōngsī jìngzhēng nǐmen hái děi yǒu zìjǐ de páizi · Whether you make money isn't what matters most; you'll learn a lot from it. But to compete with big companies, you'll need your own brand.

anna 我们也是这样想的。下个月我们打算推出自己的牌子，同时用更多的方式介绍我们的茶。
wǒmen yě shì zhèyàng xiǎng de xià gè yuè wǒmen dǎsuàn tuīchū zìjǐ de páizi tóngshí yòng gèng duō de fāngshì jièshào wǒmen de chá · That's what we think too. Next month we plan to launch our own brand, and at the same time find more ways to present our tea.

manager chen 这个想法值得试一试。春节前公司要给现有的顾客送礼物，你们能否提供大量的茶？
zhège xiǎngfǎ zhídé shì yi shi Chūnjié qián gōngsī yào gěi xiànyǒu de gùkè sòng lǐwù nǐmen néng fǒu tígōng dàliàng de chá · That idea is worth a try. Before the Spring Festival the company gives gifts to our existing clients. Could you supply a large amount of tea?

anna 要是数量太大，叔叔一个人无法做那么多。此次我们最多能提供一百盒。
yàoshi shùliàng tài dà shūshu yí gè rén wúfǎ zuò nàme duō cǐ cì wǒmen zuì duō néng tígōng yìbǎi hé · If it's a very big order, the uncle can't make that much on his own. This time we can supply a hundred boxes at most.

manager chen 一百盒就够了。一盒值多少钱？
yìbǎi hé jiù gòu le yì hé zhí duōshao qián · A hundred boxes is plenty. How much is a box?

anna 一盒半斤，一百五十块，已经低于市场的价格了。不过公司买得多，我们可以降价百分之二十。
yì hé bàn jīn yìbǎiwǔshí kuài yǐjīng dīyú shìchǎng de jiàgé le búguò gōngsī mǎi de duō wǒmen kěyǐ jiàngjià bǎi fēn zhī èrshí · A box is half a jin, 150 yuan, which is already below the market price. But since the company is buying a lot, we can take twenty per cent off.

manager chen 好，那就这样吧！
hǎo nà jiù zhèyàng ba · Good, let's do that!

From an idea to your first big order, all in Chinese. You could really run a little shop now.
Do this day interactively, with audio and games, free at **wishyou.today/learning**

day 42 at the doctor's

Tell a doctor what's wrong and understand what they ask you to do.

Sooner or later everyone needs a doctor abroad, and being able to say "I've had a cough for three days" makes it far less scary.

words

word	pinyin	meaning	example
大夫	dàifu	doctor (spoken)	大夫说我得{dei3}多休息。 The doctor says I need to rest more.
护士	hùshi	nurse	护士给我量了体温。 The nurse took my temperature.
体检	tǐjiǎn	check-up, medical	我们公司每年体检一次。 Our company has a medical check-up once a year.
量	liáng	to measure	护士，请帮我量一下体重。 Nurse, could you weigh me, please?
体温	tǐwēn	body temperature	你的体温有点儿高。 Your temperature is a bit high.
体重	tǐzhòng	body weight	我的体重这几个月没有变化。 My weight hasn't changed in the last few months.
打针	dǎzhēn	to give or get an injection	我最怕打针了。 I'm most afraid of injections.
咳	ké	to cough	他咳了一个晚上。 He coughed all night.
咳嗽	késou	to cough; a cough	我咳嗽得很厉害。 I've got a bad cough.
头痛	tóutòng	headache; to have a headache	我今天有点儿头痛。 I've got a bit of a headache today.
痛	tòng	pain; painful, sore	我的腿很痛。 My leg really hurts.
肚子	dùzi	belly, tummy	我肚子疼，不想吃饭。 My stomach hurts; I don't feel like eating.
难受	nánshòu	to feel unwell, awful	我感冒了，觉得很难受。 I've got a cold and feel awful.
严重	yánzhòng	serious, severe	你的病不严重，别担心。 Your illness isn't serious, don't worry.
正常	zhèngcháng	normal	你的体温很正常。 Your temperature is normal.
血	xiě	blood	我的手出血了。 My hand is bleeding.
困	kùn	sleepy; stuck	我昨天睡得太晚，现在很困。 I went to bed too late last night, so I'm sleepy now.

躺	tǎng	to lie down	你躺下来休息一会儿吧。 Lie down and rest for a bit.

pattern 把 + thing + verb + how many times or how long, and 把 + thing + how + verb

who | 把 | thing | (how) | verb | times / how long

With 把 the thing comes before the verb, so the verb is free to carry the details. Put how many times or how long right after it: 把药吃三天 (take the medicine for three days). Put how you do it right before it: 把药按时吃 (take the medicine on time).

请把这个药吃三天。 **qǐng bǎ zhège yào chī sān tiān** Please take this medicine for three days.

护士把我的体重量了两次。 **hùshi bǎ wǒ de tǐzhòng liáng le liǎng cì** The nurse weighed me twice.

大夫把我的情况认真地问了一遍。 **dàifu bǎ wǒ de qíngkuàng rènzhēn de wèn le yí biàn** The doctor went carefully through what was wrong with me.

记得把药按时吃了。 **jìde bǎ yào ànshí chī le** Remember to take your medicine on time.

dialogue anna sees dr li

dr li 安娜，你哪儿不舒服?
Ānnà nǐ nǎr bù shūfu · Anna, what seems to be the problem?

anna 李大夫，我咳嗽三天了，晚上睡不好，白天特别困。
Lǐ dàifu wǒ késou sān tiān le wǎnshang shuì bu hǎo báitiān tèbié kùn · Dr Li, I've been coughing for three days. I can't sleep at night and I'm really sleepy in the day.

dr li 头痛吗？肚子疼不疼?
tóutòng ma dùzi téng bu téng · Do you have a headache? Does your stomach hurt?

anna 有点儿头痛，肚子不疼，就是觉得很难受。
yǒudiǎnr tóutòng dùzi bù téng jiùshì juéde hěn nánshòu · A bit of a headache. My stomach's fine, I just feel awful.

dr li 护士已经把你的体温量了两次，都有点儿高。
hùshi yǐjīng bǎ nǐ de tǐwēn liáng le liǎng cì dōu yǒudiǎnr gāo · The nurse has taken your temperature twice already, and it was a bit high both times.

anna 严重吗？要打针吗？我最怕打针了。
yánzhòng ma yào dǎzhēn ma wǒ zuì pà dǎzhēn le · Is it serious? Do I need an injection? I hate injections.

dr li 不严重，不用打针，也不用查血。你把这个药吃三天，每天按时吃。
bù yánzhòng búyòng dǎzhēn yě búyòng chá xiě nǐ bǎ zhège yào chī sān tiān měi tiān ànshí chī · It's not serious. No injection, and no blood test either. Take this medicine for three days, on time every day.

anna 好的。我还要注意什么?
hǎo de wǒ hái yào zhùyì shénme · OK. Is there anything else I should be careful about?

dr li 多喝水，回家躺着好好休息。三天以后还咳嗽，就再来。回家以后，把药的说明认真看一遍。
duō hē shuǐ huí jiā tǎng zhe hǎohǎo xiūxi sān tiān yǐhòu hái késou jiù zài lái huí jiā yǐhòu bǎ yào de shuōmíng rènzhēn kàn yí biàn · Drink lots of water, go home, lie down and rest properly. If you're still coughing in three days, come back. And when you get home, read the instructions carefully.

write it trace the grey, then write your own



good to know · In Chinese hospitals you usually register at a desk first, then see the doctor. Many people go straight to a hospital rather than a family doctor. Dr Li is 李医生 on paper, but patients often call him 李大夫: warm and respectful.

You can now describe a cough, a headache and a temperature, and follow the doctor's orders. That's real-life Chinese.
Do this day interactively, with audio and games, free at **wishyou.today/learning**

day 43 get well soon

Say what you can or can't manage, and talk about getting fit again after an injury.

"I can't make it" and "I can't even walk" are things you say all the time, about health, work and plans.

words

word	pinyin	meaning	example
连	lián	even; to link	我累得连饭都不想吃。 I'm so tired I don't even want to eat.
受伤	shòushāng	to get hurt, be injured	小明踢球的时候受伤了。 Xiaoming got hurt playing football.
全身	quánshēn	the whole body	我病了，全身都没有力气。 I'm ill and have no strength at all.
身	shēn	body; (measure word for outfits)	他穿了一身新衣服。 He's wearing a whole new outfit.
重	zhòng	heavy; serious	这个箱子太重了。 This box is too heavy.
轻	qīng	light (not heavy); gentle	这个包很轻，我自己拿吧。 This bag is light; I'll carry it myself.
压	yā	to press, push down	你用手压一下这里，疼不疼? Press here with your hand: does it hurt?
汗	hàn	sweat	天太热了，我出了很多汗。 It's so hot that I'm sweating a lot.
力气	lìqi	strength, physical power	我病了三天，一点儿力气都没有。 I've been ill for three days and have no strength at all.
建议	jiànyì	to suggest; suggestion	大夫建议我多喝水，多休息。 The doctor suggested I drink more water and rest more.
减	jiǎn	to reduce, subtract	我想减掉五公斤。 I want to lose five kilos.
减轻	jiǎnqīng	to ease, lighten	这种药可以减轻头痛。 This medicine can ease a headache.
放松	fàngsōng	to relax	周末我喜欢听音乐放松一下。 At the weekend I like to relax with some music.
轻松	qīngsōng	relaxed; easy	考完试，我觉得很轻松。 After the exam I feel really relaxed.
散步	sànbù	to go for a walk	吃完晚饭，我们去公园散步吧。 After dinner, let's go for a walk in the park.
健身	jiànshēn	to work out, keep fit	我每周健身三次。 I work out three times a week.
健身房	jiànshēnfáng	gym	我家附近新开了一家{=(measure word for shops, firms)}健身房。 A new gym has opened near my home.

步	bù	step, pace	我今天走了一万多步{bu4-4}。 I walked over ten thousand steps today.
了	liǎo	to manage (in V得了 / V不了)	雨太大了，我们今天走不了{liao3-4}了。 It's raining too hard: we can't leave today.

pattern verb + 得了 / 不了: can or can't manage it

verb | 得了 / 不了

Put 得了 after a verb for "can manage it" and 不了 for "can't manage it": 去不了 can't go, 吃得了 can finish it. Here 了 reads liǎo. To say "even … , let alone …", use 连……都……，……更……: 连路都走不了，更别说跑步了.

我腿疼，明天的比赛去不了了。 **wǒ tuǐ téng míngtiān de bǐsài qù bu liǎo le** My leg hurts, so I can't make it to tomorrow's match.

这么多菜，我们吃得了吗？ **zhème duō cài wǒmen chī de liǎo ma** Can we really eat all this food?

这个箱子很轻，我一个人拿得了。 **zhège xiāngzi hěn qīng wǒ yí gè rén ná de liǎo** This box is light; I can carry it on my own.

他连饭都吃不了，更别说跑步了。 **tā lián fàn dōu chī bu liǎo gèng bié shuō pǎobù le** He can't even eat, let alone go running.

dialogue anna visits xiaoming

anna 小明，听说你踢球的时候受伤了？现在怎么样？
Xiǎomíng tīngshuō nǐ tī qiú de shíhou shòushāng le xiànzài zěnmeyàng · Xiaoming, I heard you got hurt playing football. How are you?

xiaoming 腿还很疼。大夫压了一下，我疼得受不了。
tuǐ hái hěn téng dàifu yā le yíxià wǒ téng de shòubuliǎo · My leg still really hurts. The doctor pressed on it and I couldn't bear the pain.

anna 那下周的比赛呢？
nà xià zhōu de bǐsài ne · What about next week's match?

xiaoming 肯定去不了了。我现在连站都站不了多久，更别说踢球了。
kěndìng qù bu liǎo le wǒ xiànzài lián zhàn dōu zhàn bu liǎo duō jiǔ gèng bié shuō tī qiú le · No way I can go. I can't even stand for long right now, let alone play football.

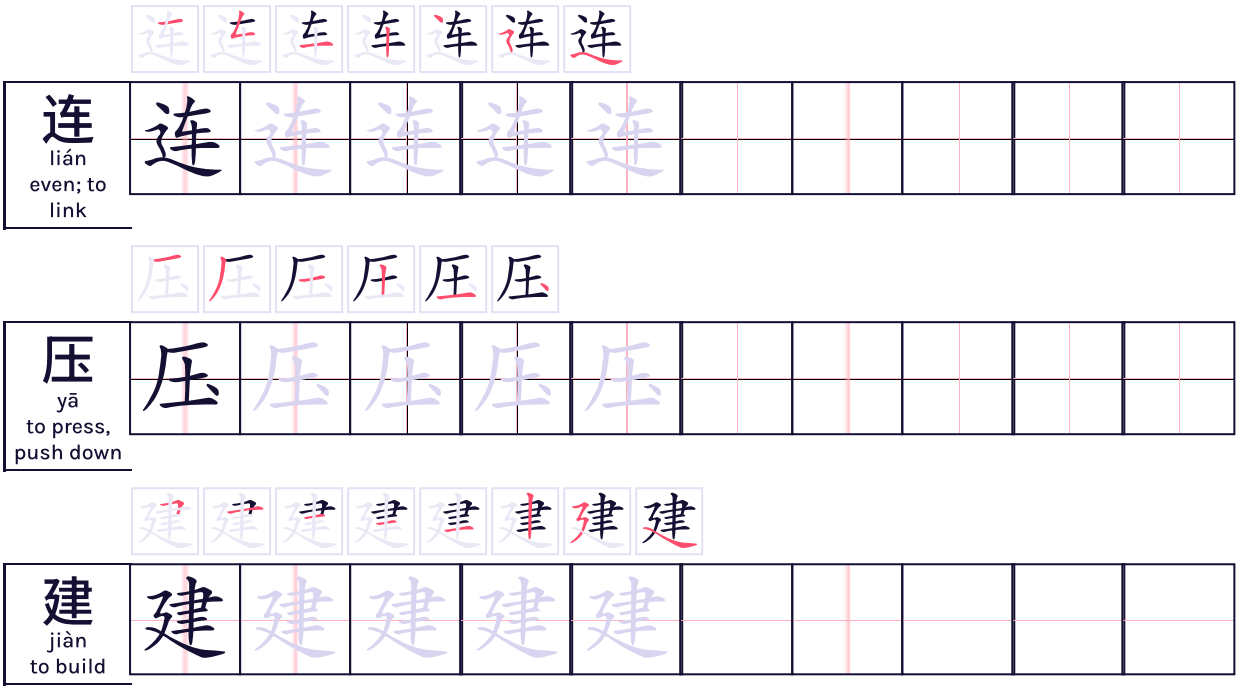
anna 太可惜了。那你也不能去健身房了吧？
tài kěxī le nà nǐ yě bù néng qù jiànshēnfáng le ba · What a shame. So you can't go to the gym either?

xiaoming 对。大夫建议我先多躺着，好了以后再慢慢散步，一步一步来。
duì dàifu jiànyì wǒ xiān duō tǎng zhe hǎo le yǐhòu zài màn màn sànbù yí bù yí bù lái · Right. The doctor says to lie down a lot first, and once it's better, start with slow walks, one step at a time.

anna 别着急，身体最重要。你就放松心情，好好休息。来，吃一点儿水果。
bié zháojí shēntǐ zuì zhòngyào nǐ jiù fàngsōng xīnqíng hǎohǎo xiūxi lái chī yìdiǎnr shuǐguǒ · Don't rush, your health comes first. Just relax and rest properly. Here, have some fruit.

xiaoming 谢谢！有你陪我聊天，我觉得轻松多了。
xièxie yǒu nǐ péi wǒ liáotiān wǒ juéde qīngsōng duō le · Thanks! With you here to chat, I feel much better.

write it trace the grey, then write your own



good to know · 更别说 (let alone) often follows 连……都……: 连 marks the surprising easy thing, 更别说 the even harder one. 受不了 (can't bear it) is the same pattern, and so common it's a word of its own.

"I can't make it" and "not even …" are now yours: two small patterns you'll use every week.
Do this day interactively, with audio and games, free at **wishyou.today/learning**

day 44 match day

Talk about a team, a match and its result, and say you'll do something no matter what.

Sport is easy small talk in China: table tennis, volleyball, football. And "whatever happens, we've got to win" works for exams and deadlines too.

words

word	pinyin	meaning	example
球队	qiúduì	team (ball games)	我们公司有自己的球队。 Our company has its own team.
队	duì	team; queue	我们队今天赢了。 Our team won today.
队员	duìyuán	team member	我们队一共有十二个队员。 Our team has twelve players in all.
队长	duìzhǎng	team captain	小明是我们足球队的队长。 Xiaoming is the captain of our football team.
教练	jiàoliàn	coach, trainer	教练让我们每天跑五公里。 The coach has us run five kilometres every day.
球迷	qiúmí	fan (of a ball game)	我爸爸是个老球迷。 My dad has been a fan for years.
排球	páiqiú	volleyball	安娜每周打两次排球。 Anna plays volleyball twice a week.
乒乓球	pīngpāngqiú	table tennis, ping-pong	很多中国人喜欢打乒乓球。 Lots of Chinese people like playing table tennis.
参赛	cānsài	to take part in a contest	这次大赛一共有二十个队参赛。 Twenty teams are taking part in this tournament.
大赛	dàsài	big competition, tournament	我们队要参加明年的大赛。 Our team is entering next year's big tournament.
赢	yíng	to win	这场比赛我们赢了。 We won this match.
输	shū	to lose (a game)	输了也没关系，下{=next}次再来。 It doesn't matter if we lose; we'll try again next time.
打败	dǎbài	to defeat, beat	我们打败了去年的第一名。 We beat last year's winners.
加油	jiāyóu	come on! (cheer); refuel	加油！你们一定能赢！ Come on! You can do it!
暂停	zàntíng	to pause; time-out	教练马上叫{=to call}了暂停。 The coach called a time-out straight away.
秒	miǎo	second (of time)	比赛只{zhi3}剩十秒了！ There are only ten seconds left in the match!

结果	jiéguǒ	result; as a result	比赛的结果是三比二。 The result of the match was three-two.
最终	zuìzhōng	final; in the end	最终，我们队赢了。 In the end, our team won.

pattern x也得x，不x也得x: like it or not · 说什么也得x: no matter what

X 也得 X ，不 X 也得 X

Here 得 reads děi, “must”. X也得X，不X也得X means “you have to X whether you want to or not”: 去也得去，不去也得去. 说什么也得X (literally: whatever anyone says, must X) shows strong will: 说什么也得赢, we’re winning, full stop.

明天的会，你去也得去，不去也得去。 **míngtiān de huì nǐ qù yě děi qù bú qù yě děi qù** You’re going to tomorrow’s meeting, like it or not.

药很苦，可是吃也得吃，不吃也得吃。 **yào hěn kǔ kěshì chī yě děi chī bù chī yě děi chī** The medicine is bitter, but you’ve got to take it all the same.

这次大赛，我们说什么也得赢！ **zhè cì dàsài wǒmen shuō shénme yě děi yíng** We’re winning this tournament, no matter what!

dialogue the volleyball tournament

manager chen 大家听好，这次大赛有二十来个球队参赛，我们说什么也得赢一场！
dàjiā tīng hǎo zhè cì dàsài yǒu èrshí lái gè qiúduì cānsài wǒmen shuō shénme yě děi yíng yì chǎng · Listen up, everyone: about twenty teams are in this tournament, and we have to win at least one match, whatever happens!

anna 陈经理，您是队长，我们都听您的！
Chénjīnglǐ nín shì duìzhǎng wǒmen dōu tīng nín de · Manager Chen, you’re the captain: we’ll do what you say!

xiaoming 我是你们的球迷，我来给你们加油！
wǒ shì nǐmen de qiúmí wǒ lái gěi nǐmen jiāyóu · I’m your number one fan: I’m here to cheer you on!

anna 不好，对方太厉害了，我们快输了！
bù hǎo duìfāng tài lìhai le wǒmen kuài shū le · Oh no, the other side is too good. We’re about to lose!

manager chen 别急，教练叫了暂停。大家喝一点儿水，放松一下。
bié jí jiàoliàn jiào le zàntíng dàjiā hē yìdiǎnr shuǐ fàngsōng yíxià · Don’t panic, the coach has called a time-out. Everyone, drink some water and relax.

anna 我太累了，跑不动了。
wǒ tài lèi le pǎo bu dòng le · I’m so tired, I can’t run any more.

manager chen 跑也得跑，不跑也得跑！只剩最后几分钟了。
pǎo yě děi pǎo bù pǎo yě děi pǎo zhǐ shèng zuìhòu jǐ fēnzhōng le · Like it or not, you’ve got to keep running! There are only a few minutes left.

xiaoming 加油！加油！还差两分！
jiāyóu jiāyóu hái chà liǎng fēn · Come on! Come on! Two more points!

anna 我们赢了！我们打败了去年的第一名！
wǒmen yíng le wǒmen dǎbài le qùnián de dì yī míng · We won! We beat last year’s champions!

manager chen 太好了！最终的结果是三比二。
tài hǎo le zuìzhōng de jiéguǒ shì sān bǐ èr · Brilliant! The final result is three-two.

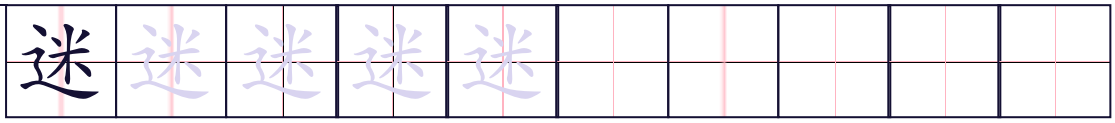
write it trace the grey, then write your own



输
shū
to lose (a game)



迷
mí
lost in, crazy about



good to know · Shout 加油 for any team, any exam, any friend who's trying hard. It works everywhere. Scores use 比: 三比二 is 3–2.

You can follow a match now: teams, scores, time-outs and the final whistle. 加油!
Do this day interactively, with audio and games, free at **wishyou.today/learning**

day 45 the winners

Talk about prizes, shows and events, and say “not very” and “no matter how hard I try”.

Events, shows and prize-givings fill the weekend in China, and you’ll want to say what was brilliant and what was a bit boring.

words

word	pinyin	meaning	example
赢得	yíngdé	to win (a prize, support)	他们赢得了观众的喜爱。 They won the audience’s hearts.
奖	jiǎng	prize, award	我们队得{de2}了一个大奖。 Our team won a big prize.
获奖	huòjiǎng	to win an award	她的照片在大赛中获奖了。 Her photo won a prize in the competition.
动作	dòngzuò	movement, action	他的动作又快又好看。 His moves are fast and beautiful.
功夫	gōngfu	kung fu; time and effort	小刘从小就学功夫。 Xiao Liu has learned kung fu since he was small.
棒	bàng	great, excellent	你今天跳得真棒！ You danced brilliantly today!
精彩	jīngcǎi	brilliant, exciting (show, match)	昨天的比赛太精彩了！ Yesterday’s match was so exciting!
加入	jiārù	to join	欢迎你加入我们的球队！ Welcome to our team!
活动	huódòng	activity, event; to move about	周末学校有很多活动。 The school has lots of activities at the weekend.
举办	jǔbàn	to host, organise (an event)	我们公司下{=next}个月举办运动会。 Our company is holding a sports day next month.
举行	jǔxíng	to hold, take place	比赛将在体育馆举行。 The match will be held in the sports hall.
排	pái	row; to line up	我们坐在第一排。 We’re sitting in the first row.
拍	pāi	to clap, pat; to shoot (a photo)	观众都在拍手。 The whole audience is clapping.
有趣	yǒuqù	interesting, fun	这个活动很有趣。 This event is a lot of fun.
无聊	wúliáo	boring; bored	一个人在家太无聊了。 It’s so boring at home on my own.
吸引	xīyǐn	to attract, draw in	这场表演吸引了很多观众。 The show drew a big audience.
观看	guānkàn	to watch (a show, a match)	欢迎大家来观看比赛！ Welcome, everyone, to the match!

观众	guānzhòng	audience, spectators	观众都站{zhan4-3}起来了。 The whole audience stood up.

pattern 怎么 + 也 / 都 + 不 / 没: no matter how · 不怎么: not very

怎么 | verb | 也 / 都 | 不 / 没 + verb

怎么 + verb + 也 / 都 + 不 / 没 says “however I try, it doesn’t work”: 怎么找也没找到 (I looked everywhere and couldn’t find it). 不怎么 before an adjective or verb softens “not” to “not very, not much”: 不怎么好看 (not that good).

这个动作我怎么练都练不好。 **zhège dòngzuò wǒ zěnme liàn dōu liàn bu hǎo** No matter how much I practise, I can’t get this move right.

我的钥匙怎么找也没找到。 **wǒ de yàoshi zěnme zhǎo yě méi zhǎo dào** However hard I looked, I couldn’t find my keys.

这个活动不怎么有意思。 **zhège huódòng bù zěnme yǒu yìsi** This event isn’t all that interesting.

他平时不怎么运动。 **tā píngshí bù zěnme yùndòng** He doesn’t do much exercise usually.

dialogue prizes and kung fu

manager chen 各位，现在给这次比赛的第一名发奖：我们的排球队！
gèwèi xiànzài gěi zhè cì bǐsài de dì yī míng fā jiǎng wǒmen de páiqiú duì · Everyone, it’s time to hand out the prize for first place: our volleyball team!

anna 太棒了！我们获奖了！
tài bàng le wǒmen huòjiǎng le · Fantastic! We’ve won a prize!

xiaoming 你们最后的动作太精彩了，观众都在拍手。
nǐmen zuìhòu de dòngzuò tài jīngcǎi le guānzhòng dōu zài pāi shǒu · Your last moves were amazing; the whole crowd was clapping.

manager chen 下面还有一个活动：小刘给大家表演功夫！
xiàmiàn hái yǒu yí gè huódòng XiǎoLiú gěi dàjiā biǎoyǎn gōngfu · And there’s one more event: Xiao Liu is going to show us some kung fu!

xiao liu 我从七岁开始学功夫，今天给大家表演几个动作。
wǒ cóng qī suì kāishǐ xué gōngfu jīntiān gěi dàjiā biǎoyǎn jǐ gè dòngzuò · I started learning kung fu at seven. Today I’ll show you a few moves.

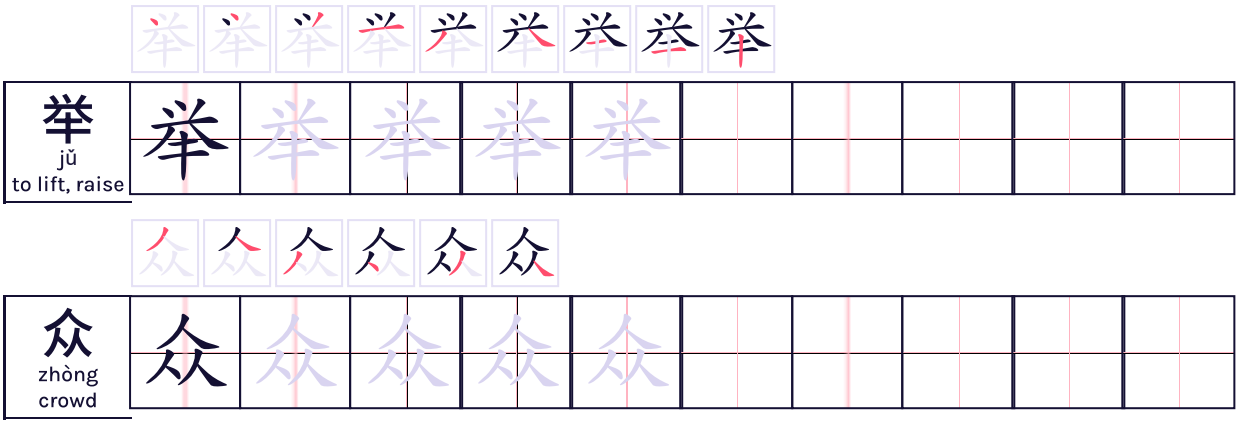
anna 小刘，这个动作我怎么学都学不会。
XiǎoLiú zhège dòngzuò wǒ zěnme xué dōu xué bu huì · Xiao Liu, however hard I try, I can’t learn that move.

xiao liu 不难！你加入我们的功夫班吧，我每周六都教。
bù nán nǐ jiārù wǒmen de gōngfu bān ba wǒ měi zhōu liù dōu jiāo · It’s not hard! Join our kung fu class; I teach every Saturday.

xiaoming 我以前觉得功夫不怎么有意思，今天才发现它这么吸引人。
wǒ yǐqián juéde gōngfu bù zěnme yǒu yìsi jīntiān cái fāxiàn tā zhème xīyǐn rén · I used to think kung fu wasn’t very interesting. Only today did I see how gripping it is.

anna 我拍了很多照片，等一会儿发给大家。
wǒ pāi le hěn duō zhàopiàn děng yíhuìr fā gěi dàjiā · I took loads of photos; I’ll send them to everyone in a bit.

write it trace the grey, then write your own



good to know · 举办 puts the organiser first (公司举办活动); 举行 puts the event first (活动在体育馆举行). 拍 is a hand word: 拍手 to clap, 拍照 to take a photo, 拍电影 to shoot a film.

Brilliant, boring, not very, no matter how: you can review any show or event now.
Do this day interactively, with audio and games, free at **wishyou.today/learning**

day 46 on stage

Talk about concerts, plays and music, and paint a scene with four-character patterns.

A night at the theatre or a favourite singer is great small talk, and four-character patterns make your Chinese sound alive.

words

word	pinyin	meaning	example
演	yǎn	to act, perform	他在电影里演一个医生。 He plays a doctor in the film.
演出	yǎnchū	to perform; show	今天晚上的演出几点开始? What time does tonight's show start?
演员	yǎnyuán	actor, actress, performer	她是一个很有名的演员。 She's a very well-known actress.
演唱	yǎnchàng	to sing (on stage)	下面请她为我们演唱一首歌。 Next, she will sing a song for us.
歌手	gēshǒu	singer	我最喜欢的歌手下{=next}个月来北京。 My favourite singer is coming to Beijing next month.
歌声	gēshēng	singing (voice)	她的歌声真好听。 Her singing is beautiful.
首	shǒu	(measure word for songs, poems)	这首歌我听了很多遍。 I've listened to this song many times.
钢琴	gāngqín	piano	妹妹从五岁开始学钢琴。 Xiaoming's sister started learning the piano at five.
琴	qín	musical instrument; piano	她每天练两个小时琴。 She practises the piano for two hours every day.
弹	tán	to play (piano, guitar)	你会弹钢琴吗? Can you play the piano?
话剧	huàjù	play, drama (spoken)	周末我们去看话剧吧。 Let's go and see a play at the weekend.
京剧	jīngjù	Peking opera	爷爷很喜欢听京剧。 Grandpa loves listening to Peking opera.
剧院	jùyuàn	theatre	剧院就在地铁站旁边。 The theatre is right next to the metro station.
艺术	yìshù	art	京剧是一种很有名的中国艺术。 Peking opera is a famous Chinese art.
著名	zhùmíng	famous, well-known	他是一位著名的歌手。 He's a famous singer.
听众	tīngzhòng	audience, listeners	听众都为她拍手。 The audience all clapped for her.
收听	shōutīng	to listen in (radio)	我每天早上收听新闻。 I listen to the news every morning.

播放	bōfàng	to broadcast, play (video)	这个网站可以播放很多电影。 You can play lots of films on this website.

pattern four-character patterns: 有a有b and 一a一b

有 A 有 B

有A有B fills a scene with two things at once: 有说有笑 talking and laughing, 有山有水 hills and water. 一A一B pairs two people or things, often opposites: 一男一女 a man and a woman, 一前一后 one in front, one behind.

我们一路上有说有笑。 **wǒmen yí lùshang yǒu shuō yǒu xiào** We chatted and laughed all the way.

这个地方有山有水，很漂亮。 **zhège dìfang yǒu shān yǒu shuǐ hěn piàoliang** This place has hills and water; it's beautiful.

台上站着一男一女两个演员。 **tái shàng zhàn zhe yì nán yì nǚ liǎng gè yǎnyuán** Two actors, a man and a woman, are standing on stage.

他们两个人一前一后走进了剧院。 **tāmen liǎng gè rén yì qián yí hòu zǒu jìn le jùyuàn** The two of them walked into the theatre, one behind the other.

dialogue a night at the theatre

ms zhang 安娜，今天的歌手很著名，我听她的歌听了二十年了。
Ānnà jīntiān de gēshǒu hěn zhùmíng wǒ tīng tā de gē tīng le èrshí nián le · Anna, tonight's singer is really famous. I've been listening to her songs for twenty years.

anna 真的吗？我只在网上看过她的视频。
zhēn de ma wǒ zhǐ zài wǎngshang kàn guo tā de shìpín · Really? I've only seen her videos online.

ms zhang 我年轻的时候，每天晚上都收听她的节目。她的歌声特别好听。
wǒ niánqīng de shíhou měi tiān wǎnshang dōu shōutīng tā de jiémù tā de gēshēng tèbié hǎotīng · When I was young I listened to her show every night. Her voice is wonderful.

anna 演出开始了！台上一男一女，男的是谁？
yǎnchū kāishǐ le tái shàng yì nán yì nǚ nán de shì shéi · It's starting! There's a man and a woman on stage: who's the man?

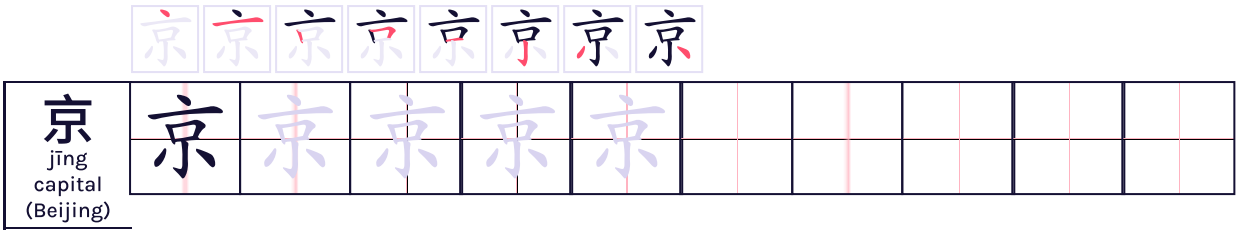
ms zhang 男的弹钢琴，女的就是她。今天她要演唱十二首歌。
nán de tán gāngqín nǚ de jiùshì tā jīntiān tā yào yǎnchàng shíèr shǒu gē · He plays the piano, and the woman is her. She's singing twelve songs tonight.

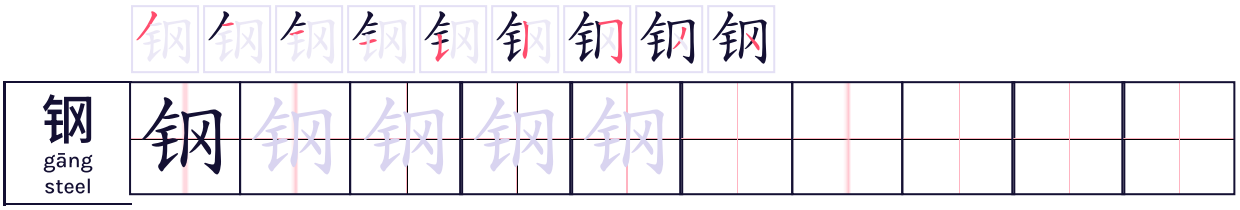
anna 太好听了！听众都站起来了。
tài hǎotīng le tīngzhòng dōu zhàn qǐlai le · That was beautiful! The audience is on its feet.

ms zhang 是啊。你看，大家有说有笑，多开心！下次我们去看京剧吧？
shì a nǐ kàn dàjiā yǒu shuō yǒu xiào duō kāixīn xià cì wǒmen qù kàn jīngjù ba · Yes. Look, everyone's chatting and laughing, so happy! Shall we see Peking opera next time?

anna 好啊！京剧是中国的艺术，我早就想去剧院看看了。
hǎo a jīngjù shì Zhōngguó de yìshù wǒ zǎo jiù xiǎng qù jùyuàn kàn kan le · Yes, please! Peking opera is a Chinese art; I've wanted to see it at the theatre for ages.

write it trace the grey, then write your own





good to know · 共 on its own is a formal “in all”, common in announcements; in chat say 一共. 观众 watch (a match, a film); 听众 listen (a concert, the radio).

Concerts, plays, opera and piano: you can now share what moves you.
Do this day interactively, with audio and games, free at **wishyou.today/learning**

day 47 books, films & news

Talk about books, TV series and the news, and say “maybe” and “there’s plenty of it”.

“Have you read it? Is there a TV series?” is how book talk goes everywhere, and 有的是 is pure everyday Chinese.

words

word	pinyin	meaning	example
小说	xiǎoshuō	novel	我最近在看一本中文小说。 I’m reading a Chinese novel at the moment.
作家	zuòjiā	writer	她是一位著名的作家。 She’s a famous writer.
作者	zuòzhě	author	这本书的作者是谁? Who is the author of this book?
作品	zuòpǐn	work (of art, writing)	我读过{guo}他的很多作品。 I’ve read many of his works.
读者	dúzhě	reader	这本杂志有很多年轻读者。 This magazine has lots of young readers.
杂志	zázhì	magazine	我在机场买了一本杂志。 I bought a magazine at the airport.
电视剧	diànshìjù	TV series, TV drama	我最近在看一部电视剧，很好看。 I’m watching a TV series at the moment; it’s really good.
部	bù	part; (measure word for films, books)	这部电影我看了两遍。 I’ve seen this film twice.
内容	nèiróng	content	这本书的内容很有意思。 The content of this book is really interesting.
记者	jìzhě	reporter, journalist	我的邻居是一名{=(measure word for people)}记者。 My neighbour is a journalist.
调查	diàochá	to investigate; survey	记者调查了这件事。 The reporter looked into the matter.
社会	shèhuì	society	这本小说写的是今天的中国社会。 This novel is about Chinese society today.
重	chóng	again, anew	这个字写错了，请重{chong2}写一遍。 This character is wrong; please write it again.

pattern 有的是: plenty of · 也许: maybe

thing **有的是**

有的是 means “there’s plenty of it”, and it comes after the thing: 时间有的是 (there’s plenty of time). For “maybe”, keep using 也许; on day 53 you’ll add 说不定, the spoken “who knows, it could be”.

明天也许会下雨，你带上伞吧。 **míngtiān yěxǔ huì xià yǔ nǐ dài shàng sǎn ba** It might rain tomorrow, so take an umbrella.

他还没来，也许忘了。 **tā hái méi lái yěxǔ wàng le** He’s not here yet; maybe he forgot.

别着急，时间有的是。 **bié zháojí shíjiān yǒudeshì** Don’t rush; there’s plenty of time.

网上有的是这样的视频。 **wǎngshang yǒudeshì zhèyàng de shìpín** The internet is full of videos like that.

dialogue a novel and a news story

reporter zhou 安娜，你在看什么书?
Ānnà nǐ zài kàn shénme shū · Anna, what are you reading?

anna 一本中文小说。作者是一位年轻作家，内容是关于大城市里年轻人的生活。
yì běn Zhōngwén xiǎoshuō zuòzhě shì yí wèi niánqīng zuòjiā nèiróng shì guānyú dà chéngshì lǐ niánqīng rén de shēnghuó · A Chinese novel. The author is a young writer, and it’s about young people’s lives in a big city.

reporter zhou 我知道这本书！它很有名，还有一部电视剧呢。
wǒ zhīdào zhè běn shū tā hěn yǒumíng hái yǒu yí bù diànshìjù ne · I know that book! It’s really famous; there’s a TV series too.

anna 真的吗？既然有电视剧，我看完书就去看。
zhēn de ma jìrán yǒu diànshìjù wǒ kàn wán shū jiù qù kàn · Really? Well, since there’s a series, I’ll watch it when I finish the book.

reporter zhou 不过电视剧和小说的内容不太一样。
búguò diànshìjù hé xiǎoshuō de nèiróng bú tài yíyàng · But the series and the novel aren’t quite the same.

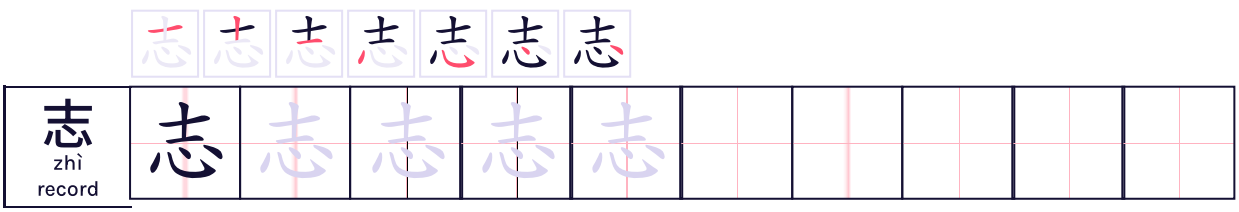
anna 你最近在忙什么呢?
nǐ zuìjìn zài máng shénme ne · What are you busy with these days?

reporter zhou 我在调查一个社会问题：年轻人为什么越来越不爱看书了。
wǒ zài diàochá yí gè shèhuì wèntí niánqīng rén wèi shénme yuè lái yuè bú ài kàn shū le · I’m looking into a social issue: why young people read less and less.

anna 也许是因为手机吧。网上有的是好看的视频。
yěxǔ shì yīnwèi shǒujī ba wǎngshang yǒudeshì hǎokàn de shìpín · Maybe it’s because of phones. There are loads of good videos online.

reporter zhou 我的读者也这么说，甚至有人说一年没看过一本书。
wǒ de dúzhě yě zhème shuō shènzhì yǒu rén shuō yì nián méi kàn guo yì běn shū · My readers say the same. Some even say they haven’t read a single book in a year.

write it trace the grey, then write your own





社
shè
group, community

good to know · 部 counts films, TV series and long books: 一部电影, 一部小说. A short book is still 一本书. 重 before a verb reads chóng, “again”: 重看 watch again, 重写 rewrite. Elsewhere it’s zhòng, heavy.

Novels, series, magazines and the news: you can now talk about what you read and watch.
Do this day interactively, with audio and games, free at **wishyou.today/learning**

day 48 the big match

Follow a whole story about health, sport and a show, using everything from this unit.
Putting a week of words into one story is how they stick: a cough, a final, a prize and a news report.

chapter 1 anna sees dr li again

dr li 安娜，你哪儿不舒服?
Ānnà nǐ nǎr bù shūfu · Anna, what seems to be the problem?

anna 李大夫，我又咳嗽了，可是明天就是最后一场比赛。
Lǐ dàifu wǒ yòu késou le kěshì míngtiān jiùshì zuìhòu yì chǎng bǐsài · Dr Li, I've got a cough again, and tomorrow is the final match.

dr li 头痛吗？肚子痛不痛?
tóutòng ma dùzi tòng bu tòng · Do you have a headache? Does your stomach hurt?

anna 有点儿头痛，肚子不痛。晚上我一直咳，睡不好，白天特别困。
yǒudiǎnr tóutòng dùzi bú tòng wǎnshang wǒ yìzhí ké shuì bu hǎo báitiān tèbié kùn · A bit of a headache, but my stomach's fine. I cough all night, so I can't sleep, and I'm really sleepy in the day.

dr li 别着急。护士已经把你的体温量了两次，很正常，体重也没问题。
bié zháojí hùshi yǐjīng bǎ nǐ de tǐwēn liáng le liǎng cì hěn zhèngcháng tǐzhòng yě méi wèntí · Don't worry. The nurse has taken your temperature twice, and it's normal. Your weight is fine too.

anna 要打针吗？要不要查血？我最怕打针了。
yào dǎzhēn ma yào búyào chá xiě wǒ zuì pà dǎzhēn le · Do I need an injection? A blood test? I hate injections.

dr li 不用打针，也不用查血。上个月公司体检的时候，你的身体情况都很好。
búyòng dǎzhēn yě búyòng chá xiě shàng gè yuè gōngsī tǐjiǎn de shíhou nǐ de shēntǐ qíngkuàng dōu hěn hǎo · No injection and no blood test. At the company check-up last month, everything was fine.

anna 那我明天打得了比赛吗?
nà wǒ míngtiān dǎ de liǎo bǐsài ma · So can I play tomorrow?

dr li 不严重，打得了。回家以后，先把药的说明认真看一看，今天按时吃两次。
bù yánzhòng dǎ de liǎo huí jiā yǐhòu xiān bǎ yào de shuōmíng rènzhēn kàn yi kan jīntiān ànshí chī liǎng cì · It's not serious, you can play. When you get home, read the instructions on the medicine carefully first, and take it twice today, on time.

anna 这个药苦不苦?
zhège yào kǔ bu kǔ · Is this medicine bitter?

dr li 药是有点儿苦，可是你吃也得吃，不吃也得吃。
yào shì yǒudiǎnr kǔ kěshì nǐ chī yě děi chī bù chī yě děi chī · It's a bit bitter, but like it or not, you're taking it.

anna 好吧。这场比赛我说什么也得参加。
hǎo ba zhè chǎng bǐsài wǒ shuō shénme yě děi cānjiā · All right. I'm playing in that match, whatever happens.

dr li 那就回家躺着好好休息，晚上早一点儿睡。要是觉得难受，就别打了，身体最重要。
nà jiù huí jiā tǎng zhe hǎohǎo xiūxi wǎnshang zǎo yìdiǎnr shuì yàoshi juéde nánshòu jiù bié dǎ le shēntǐ zuì zhòngyào · Then go home, lie down and rest properly, and go to bed early tonight. If you feel unwell, don't play: your health comes first.

chapter 2 one point to go

manager chen 大家听好：今天参赛的球队都很厉害，对方是去年的第一名，可是我们说什么也不能放弃！
dàjiā tīng hǎo jīntiān cānsài de qiúduì dōu hěn lìhai duìfāng shì qùnián de dì yī míng kěshì wǒmen shuō shénme yě bù néng fàngqì · Listen, everyone: every team here today is strong, and the other side are last year's champions. But whatever happens, we don't give up!

anna 陈经理，您是队长，我们都听您的！
Chénjīnglǐ nín shì duìzhǎng wǒmen dōu tīng nín de · Manager Chen, you're the captain: we'll do what you say!

xiaoming 加油！你们的球迷都来了！我平时只打乒乓球，今天也来给排球队加油！
jiāyóu nǐmen de qiúmí dōu lái le wǒ píngshí zhǐ dǎ pīngpāngqiú jīntiān yě lái gěi páiqiú duì jiāyóu · Come on! All your fans are here! I usually only play table tennis, but today I'm cheering for the volleyball team too!

anna 不好，我们的一个队员受伤了！
bù hǎo wǒmen de yí gè duìyuán shòushāng le · Oh no, one of our players is hurt!

manager chen 别急。教练把他的腿轻轻压了一下，说不严重，可是今天他打不了了。
bié jí jiàoliàn bǎ tā de tuǐ qīng qīng yā le yíxià shuō bù yánzhòng kěshì jīntiān tā dǎ bu liǎo le · Don't panic. The coach pressed gently on his leg and says it isn't serious, but he can't play any more today.

anna 陈经理，我出了一身汗，已经没有力气了，连手都快动不了了，更别说打球了。
Chénjīnglǐ wǒ chū le yì shēn hàn yǐjīng méiyǒu lìqi le lián shǒu dōu kuài dòng bu liǎo le gèng bié shuō dǎ qiú le · Manager Chen, I'm sweating all over and I've got no strength left. I can hardly even move my arms, let alone play.

manager chen 教练叫了暂停。喝一点儿水，放松一下，你一定行。
jiàoliàn jiào le zàntíng hē yìdiǎnr shuǐ fàngsōng yíxià nǐ yídìng xíng · The coach has called a time-out. Drink some water and relax: you can do it.

xiaoming 还差一分！最后十秒了！加油！
hái chà yì fēn zuìhòu shí miǎo le jiāyóu · One more point! Ten seconds left! Come on!

anna 我们赢了！我们打败了去年的第一名！
wǒmen yíng le wǒmen dǎbài le qùnián de dì yī míng · We won! We beat last year's champions!

manager chen 最终的结果是三比一。对方输了，可是他们也打得很好。大家太棒了！
zuìzhōng de jiéguǒ shì sān bǐ yī duìfāng shū le kěshì tāmen yě dǎ de hěn hǎo dàjiā tài bàng le · The final result is three–one. They lost, but they played well too. You were all brilliant!

anna 小明，你的腿怎么样了？上次你连站都站不了多久。
Xiǎomíng nǐ de tuǐ zěnmeyàng le shàng cì nǐ lián zhàn dōu zhàn bu liǎo duō jiǔ · Xiaoming, how's your leg? Last time you couldn't even stand for long.

xiaoming 好多了。大夫建议我每天散步，一步一步来。现在我每周去两次健身房，体重也减了两公斤。
hǎo duō le dàifu jiànyì wǒ měi tiān sànbù yí bù yí bù lái xiànzài wǒ měi zhōu qù liǎng cì jiànshēnfáng tǐzhòng yě jiǎn le liǎng gōngjīn · Much better. The doctor told me to go for a walk every day and take it one step at a time. Now I go to the gym twice a week, and I've lost two kilos too.

anna 你看起来很轻松！看来健身真有用。
nǐ kàn qǐlai hěn qīngsōng kànlái jiànshēn zhēn yǒuyòng · You look so relaxed! Working out really does help, then.

chapter 3 a song for the winners

manager chen 这次大赛由我们公司举办，我们队还赢得了第一名！现在给大家发奖。
zhè cì dàsài yóu wǒmen gōngsī jǔbàn wǒmen duì hái yíngdé le dì yī míng xiànzài gěi dàjiā fā jiǎng · This tournament was hosted by our company, and our team came first too! Now for the prizes.

anna 太棒了！我们获奖了！这个奖是大家的，特别是我们的队长。
tài bàng le wǒmen huòjiǎng le zhège jiǎng shì dàjiā de tèbié shì wǒmen de duìzhǎng · Fantastic! We've won a prize! This prize belongs to all of us, especially our captain.

manager chen 下面请一位著名歌手为大家演唱。
xiàmiàn qǐng yí wèi zhùmíng gēshǒu wèi dàjiā yǎnchàng · And now a famous singer will perform for us.

xiao liu 她是我的朋友，在剧院演出过很多次，还演过话剧呢。
tā shì wǒ de péngyou zài jùyuàn yǎnchū guo hěn duō cì hái yǎn guo huàjù ne · She's a friend of mine. She's performed at the theatre many times, and she's even acted in plays.

anna 她的歌声真好听！还有一个人在弹钢琴。
tā de gēshēng zhēn hǎotīng hái yǒu yí gè rén zài tán gāngqín · Her singing is beautiful! And someone is playing the piano.

xiaoming 台上一男一女，太精彩了。观众都站起来拍手了。
tái shàng yì nán yì nǚ tài jīngcǎi le guānzhòng dōu zhàn qǐlai pāi shǒu le · A man and a woman on stage: amazing. The whole audience is on its feet, clapping.

anna 我以前不怎么听中文歌，今天才发现这么好听。
wǒ yǐqián bù zěnme tīng Zhōngwén gē jīntiān cái fāxiàn zhème hǎotīng · I didn't used to listen to Chinese songs much. Only today did I realise how good they are.

xiao liu 网上有的是好听的中文歌，我发给你几首。她每周还有一个音乐节目，很多听众都收听。
wǎngshang yǒudeshì hǎotīng de Zhōngwén gē wǒ fā gěi nǐ jǐ shǒu tā měi zhōu hái yǒu yí gè yīnyuè jiémù hěn duō tīngzhòng dōu shōutīng · There are loads of great Chinese songs online; I'll send you a few. She has a music show every week too, and lots of people tune in.

manager chen 下面，小刘给大家表演功夫！
xiàmiàn XiǎoLiú gěi dàjiā biǎoyǎn gōngfu · Next, Xiao Liu is going to show us some kung fu!

anna 小刘的功夫真吸引人！可是这个动作我怎么学也学不会。
XiǎoLiú de gōngfu zhēn xīyǐn rén kěshì zhège dòngzuò wǒ zěnme xué yě xué bu huì · Xiao Liu's kung fu is so gripping! But however hard I try, I can't learn that move.

xiao liu 不难！你加入我们的功夫班吧。下个月剧院还有京剧演出，几位著名演员都来，你们想去观看吗？
bù nán nǐ jiārù wǒmen de gōngfu bān ba xià gè yuè jùyuàn hái yǒu jīngjù yǎnchū jǐ wèi zhùmíng yǎnyuán dōu lái nǐmen xiǎng qù guānkàn ma · It's not hard! Join our kung fu class. And next month there's Peking opera at the theatre, with several famous actors. Would you like to go and see it?

anna 当然想！京剧是中国的艺术，我早就想去看了。以前我觉得公司的活动都很无聊，没想到今天这么有趣。
dāngrán xiǎng jīngjù shì Zhōngguó de yìshù wǒ zǎo jiù xiǎng qù kàn le yǐqián wǒ juéde gōngsī de huódòng dōu hěn wúliáo méi xiǎng dào jīntiān zhème yǒuqù · Of course! Peking opera is a Chinese art; I've wanted to see it for ages. I used to think company events were boring, but today was such fun.

manager chen 你们看，大家有说有笑，这次活动真成功！明年我们还在这里举行。
nǐmen kàn dàjiā yǒu shuō yǒu xiào zhè cì huódòng zhēn chénggōng míngnián wǒmen hái zài zhèlǐ jǔxíng · Look, everyone's chatting and laughing. This event has been a real success! Next year we'll hold it here again.

chapter 4 reporter zhou writes it up

reporter zhou 安娜，听说你们队赢了大赛？我想写一下这件事。
Ānnà tīngshuō nǐmen duì yíng le dàsài wǒ xiǎng xiě yíxià zhè jiàn shì · Anna, I hear your team won the tournament? I'd like to write about it.

anna 真的吗？比赛前一天我还在医院呢，咳嗽得很厉害。
zhēn de ma bǐsài qián yì tiān wǒ hái zài yīyuàn ne késou de hěn lìhai · Really? The day before the match I was still at the hospital, coughing badly.

reporter zhou 这个内容太好了！生病了也不放弃，读者一定喜欢。
zhège nèiróng tài hǎo le shēngbìng le yě bú fàngqì dúzhě yídìng xǐhuan · That's a great angle! Not giving up even when you're ill: readers will love it.

reporter zhou 我最近在调查一个社会问题：为什么年轻人越来越不爱运动了。可是你们下班以后还一起练球，真不简单。
wǒ zuìjìn zài diàochá yí gè shèhuì wèntí wèi shénme niánqīng rén yuè lái yuè bú ài yùndòng le kěshì nǐmen xiàbān yǐhòu hái yìqǐ liàn qiú zhēn bù jiǎndān · I've been looking into a social issue lately: why young people exercise less and less. But you lot still practise together after work. That's impressive.

anna 我们公司的排球队有十来个队员，大家每周练两次。以前也有人不想来，可是大家互相加油，越打越喜欢。
wǒmen gōngsī de páiqiú duì yǒu shí lái gè duìyuán dàjiā měi zhōu liàn liǎng cì yǐqián yě yǒu rén bù xiǎng lái kěshì dàjiā hùxiāng jiāyóu yuè dǎ yuè xǐhuan · Our company volleyball team has ten-odd players, and we practise twice a week. Some people didn't want to come at first, but we cheer each other on, and the more we play, the more we love it.

reporter zhou 我写好以后，会发在我们的网站上。一家体育杂志也想要这个故事。
wǒ xiě hǎo yǐhòu huì fā zài wǒmen de wǎngzhàn shàng yì jiā tǐyù zázhì yě xiǎng yào zhège gùshi · When I've written it, it'll go on our website. A sports magazine wants the story too.

anna 你写完了给我看看吧。
nǐ xiě wán le gěi wǒ kàn kan ba · Show me when you've finished writing it.

reporter zhou 好。我把第一段重写了三遍，现在终于满意了。
hǎo wǒ bǎ dì yī duàn chóng xiě le sān biàn xiànzài zhōngyú mǎnyì le · OK. I've rewritten the first paragraph three times, and now I'm finally happy with it.

anna 你写东西这么认真，以后也能当作家！
nǐ xiě dōngxi zhème rènzhēn yǐhòu yě néng dāng zuòjiā · You take such care over your writing, you could be a writer one day!

reporter zhou 我是记者，不是作家。不过我很喜欢一位作家，她的作品写的都是普通人的生活。
wǒ shì jìzhě bú shì zuòjiā búguò wǒ hěn xǐhuan yí wèi zuòjiā tā de zuòpǐn xiě de dōu shì pǔtōng rén de shēnghuó · I'm a reporter, not a writer. But I love one writer: her books are all about ordinary people's lives.

anna 我知道她！我正在看的那部电视剧就是根据她的小说拍的。
wǒ zhīdào tā wǒ zhèngzài kàn de nà bù diànshìjù jiùshì gēnjù tā de xiǎoshuō pāi de · I know her! The TV series I'm watching is based on one of her novels.

reporter zhou 那你先看小说吧，电视剧和小说的内容不太一样。
nà nǐ xiān kàn xiǎoshuō ba diànshìjù hé xiǎoshuō de nèiróng bú tài yíyàng · Then read the novel first: the series and the book aren't quite the same.

anna 好！也许以后我们的故事也会变成电视剧！
hǎo yěxǔ yǐhòu wǒmen de gùshi yě huì biànchéng diànshìjù · OK! Maybe one day our story will become a TV series too!

A doctor's visit, a nail-biting final, a concert and a news story: a whole unit of real-life Chinese, done.
Do this day interactively, with audio and games, free at **wishyou.today/learning**

day 49 family ties

Talk about your family and relatives, and tease or reassure someone the way families do.

Family comes up in every first conversation in China, and the teasing 还X呢 is how real families talk.

words

word	pinyin	meaning	example
家庭	jiātíng	family, household	小明的家庭很幸福。 Xiaoming's family is very happy.
父母	fùmǔ	parents	我的父母都住在英国。 My parents both live in the UK.
父亲	fùqīn	father	李医生是一位很严格的父亲。 Dr Li is a very strict father.
母亲	mǔqīn	mother	她是我的母亲。 She is my mother.
父子	fùzǐ	father and son	李医生和小明是父子。 Dr Li and Xiaoming are father and son.
父女	fùnǚ	father and daughter	他们父女俩感情很好。 The father and daughter are very close.
母子	mǔzǐ	mother and son	张女士和小明是母子。 Ms Zhang and Xiaoming are mother and son.
母女	mǔnǚ	mother and daughter	她们母女长{zhang3}得很像。 The mother and daughter look very alike.
兄弟	xiōngdì	brothers	我有两个兄弟，没有姐妹。 I have two brothers and no sisters.
亲戚	qīnqi	relative, relation	春节的时候，很多亲戚来我家。 At Spring Festival lots of relatives come to our home.
孙子	sūnzi	grandson	爷爷最喜欢跟孙子聊天。 Grandpa loves chatting with his grandson.
孙女	sūnnǚ	granddaughter	奶奶的孙女今年十五岁。 Grandma's granddaughter is fifteen this year.
俩	liǎ	two, the two of (spoken)	我们俩是好朋友。 The two of us are good friends.
家长	jiāzhǎng	parent (of a pupil)	明天学校开家长会{hui4-3}。 There's a parents' meeting at school tomorrow.
教育	jiàoyù	education; to educate	父母都很关心孩子的教育。 Parents care a lot about their children's education.
责任	zérèn	responsibility	照顾孩子是父母的责任。 Looking after children is the parents' responsibility.
严格	yángé	strict	王老师对学生很严格。 Teacher Wang is strict with her students.
辛苦	xīnkǔ	hard, tiring; to work hard	你辛苦了，快休息一下吧。 You've worked so hard; have a rest.

pattern 还x呢: and you call yourself x! · 你x你的吧: you carry on

还 | who you are | 呢 | what you failed to do

还 + a role + 呢 teases or complains: “and you call yourself X!”. What the person failed to do comes next: 你还大学生呢，这个字都不认识？ The friendly 你X你的吧 means “you carry on with your X, don’t mind me”: 你忙你的吧.

你还大学生呢，这个字都不认识？ **nǐ hái dàxuéshēng ne zhège zì dōu bú rènshi** Call yourself a university student? You don’t even know this character?

他还队长呢，比赛都迟到。 **tā hái duìzhǎng ne bǐsài dōu chídào** Some captain he is: he’s even late for matches.

你看你的书吧，我自己做饭。 **nǐ kàn nǐ de shū ba wǒ zìjǐ zuòfàn** You go on reading your book; I’ll cook.

你们聊你们的吧，我去休息了。 **nǐmen liáo nǐmen de ba wǒ qù xiūxi le** You two carry on chatting; I’m off to rest.

dialogue who goes to the parents’ meeting?

ms zhang 小明，明天学校开家长会，我和你爸爸都要上班，你去吧。
Xiǎomíng míngtiān xuéxiào kāi jiāzhǎng huì wǒ hé nǐ bàba dōu yào shàngbān nǐ qù ba · Xiaoming, there’s a parents’ meeting at school tomorrow. Your dad and I both have work, so you go.

xiaoming 我？我又不是家长。
wǒ wǒ yòu bú shì jiāzhǎng · Me? I’m not a parent!

little sister 你还哥哥呢！连我的家长会都不想去。
nǐ hái gēge ne lián wǒ de jiāzhǎng huì dōu bù xiǎng qù · Some brother you are! You don’t even want to come to my parents’ meeting.

ms zhang 老师说，班里百分之九十的家长都会去。
lǎoshī shuō bān lǐ bǎi fēn zhī jiǔshí de jiāzhǎng dōu huì qù · The teacher says ninety per cent of the parents in the class are going.

xiaoming 好吧，我去。妈妈，你忙你的吧，别担心了。
hǎo ba wǒ qù māma nǐ máng nǐ de ba bié dānxīn le · All right, I’ll go. Mum, carry on with what you’re doing, don’t worry.

anna 你们家真有意思。你们父母教育孩子严格吗？
nǐmen jiā zhēn yǒu yìsi nǐmen fùmǔ jiàoyù háizi yángé ma · Your family is such fun. Are your parents strict with you?

xiaoming 我爸爸很严格，我妈妈还好。不过爸爸对妹妹就不那么严格，他们父女俩感情特别好。
wǒ bàba hěn yángé wǒ māma hái hǎo búguò bàba duì mèimei jiù bú nàme yángé tāmen fùnǚ liǎ gǎnqíng tèbié hǎo · My dad is strict, my mum’s fine. But Dad isn’t so strict with my sister; the two of them are really close.

anna 你们这个家庭真幸福，大家都互相关心。
nǐmen zhège jiātíng zhēn xìngfú dàjiā dōu hùxiāng guānxīn · Your family is so happy: you all look out for each other.

ms zhang 谢谢！安娜，你母亲身体好吗？
xièxie Ānnà nǐ mǔqīn shēntǐ hǎo ma · Thank you! Anna, how is your mother keeping?

anna 她很好，谢谢您。她说今年春节想来北京看我。
tā hěn hǎo xièxie nín tā shuō jīnnián Chūnjié xiǎng lái Běijīng kàn wǒ · She’s very well, thank you. She says she’d like to visit me in Beijing for Spring Festival.

write it trace the grey, then write your own

庭
tíng
courtyard, hall

父
fù
father

兄
xiōng
elder brother

俩
liǎ
two, the two of (spoken)

good to know · 父亲 and 母亲 are for writing and talking about parents in general; to your own parents, say 爸爸 and 妈妈. Add 俩 after a pair for “the two of them”: 父子俩, 母子俩, 我们俩.

Parents, brothers, grandchildren and relatives: you can talk about the people who matter most.
Do this day interactively, with audio and games, free at **wishyou.today/learning**

day 50 a flat to rent

Look for a flat: ask about rent, rooms and the neighbourhood, and weigh up the pros and cons.

Renting is one of the first big jobs when you move to a Chinese city, and every flat-hunt needs “it’s pretty pricey” and “far? fine then”.

words

word	pinyin	meaning	example
租	zū	to rent	我想在公司附近租一个房子。 I want to rent a flat near my office.
出租	chūzū	to rent out, let	这个房子要出租。 This flat is to let.
房租	fángzū	rent (money)	这里的房租一个月三千块。 The rent here is three thousand yuan a month.
房东	fángdōng	landlord, landlady	我的房东人很好。 My landlord is really nice.
客厅	kètīng	living room	我们在客厅看电视。 We watch TV in the living room.
厨房	chúfáng	kitchen	妈妈在厨房做饭。 Mum is cooking in the kitchen.
窗	chuāng	window	请把窗关上。 Please close the window.
窗户	chuānghu	window	这个房间的窗户很大。 This room has big windows.
院子	yuànzi	courtyard, yard	爷爷的院子里有很多花。 There are lots of flowers in Grandpa’s yard.
家具	jiājù	furniture	这个房子的家具都是新的。 All the furniture in this flat is new.
空	kōng	empty; in vain	冰箱是空的，我们去超市吧。 The fridge is empty; let’s go to the supermarket.
空	kòng	free time; to leave empty	周末你有空{kong4}吗? Are you free at the weekend?
条件	tiáojiàn	condition, terms	这个房子条件很好，就是有点儿贵。 This flat is in great shape; it’s just a bit expensive.
郊区	jiāoqū	suburbs, outskirts	郊区的房子比市区便宜。 Houses in the suburbs are cheaper than in the city.
市区	shìqū	city centre, urban area	我每天坐地铁去市区上班。 Every day I take the metro into the city to work.
区	qū	district, area	我家和公司在一个区。 My home and my office are in the same district.
街道	jiēdào	street; neighbourhood	这条街道很干净。 This street is very clean.

周围	zhōuwéi	around, surroundings	房子周围有超市和公园。 There are supermarkets and parks around the flat.

pattern 够……的: pretty, really · x就x吧: x it is, then

够 | adjective | 的

够 + adjective + 的 means “really quite …”, often with a sigh or a smile: 够贵的 (pretty pricey). X就X吧 accepts something you can’t change: 远就远吧 (so it’s far: fine then).

今天够冷的，你多穿一点儿。 **jīntiān gòu lěng de nǐ duō chuān yìdiǎnr** It’s pretty cold today; put on something warmer.

这个房子够大的，就是有点儿远。 **zhège fángzi gòu dà de jiùshì yǒudiǎnr yuǎn** This flat is really big; it’s just a bit far.

贵就贵吧，我喜欢这个房子。 **guì jiù guì ba wǒ xǐhuan zhège fángzi** Pricey? Fine then: I like this flat.

远就远吧，周围很安静。 **yuǎn jiù yuǎn ba zhōuwéi hěn ānjìng** So it’s far, never mind: it’s quiet round here.

dialogue a flat in the suburbs

anna 我住的房子让房东卖了，我得重新找房子。
wǒ zhù de fángzi ràng fángdōng mài le wǒ děi chóngxīn zhǎo fángzi · My landlord has sold the flat I live in, so I have to find a new place.

xiaoming 市区的房子你看了吗?
shìqū de fángzi nǐ kàn le ma · Have you looked at flats in the city centre?

anna 看了，房租够贵的，一个月要八千块。
kàn le fángzū gòu guì de yí gè yuè yào bāqiān kuài · I have. The rents are pretty steep: eight thousand yuan a month.

xiaoming 那你看看这个郊区的房子吧。客厅很大，厨房也不小。
nà nǐ kàn kan zhège jiāoqū de fángzi ba kètīng hěn dà chúfáng yě bù xiǎo · Then have a look at this one in the suburbs. The living room’s big and the kitchen’s not small either.

anna 窗户也很大，外面还有一个小院子。家具呢?
chuānghu yě hěn dà wàimiàn hái yǒu yí gè xiǎo yuànzi jiājù ne · The windows are big too, and there’s a little yard outside. What about furniture?

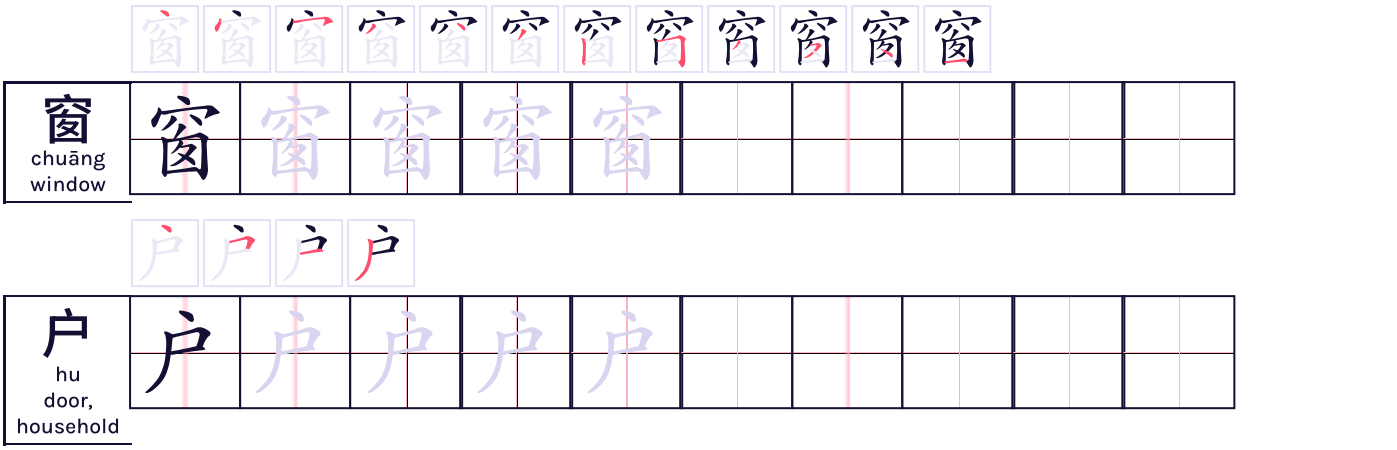
xiaoming 房东说家具都是新的，房租只要四千块。
fángdōng shuō jiājù dōu shì xīn de fángzū zhǐ yào sìqiān kuài · The landlord says the furniture is all new, and the rent is only four thousand.

anna 就是离公司有点儿远，坐地铁要一个小时。
jiùshì lí gōngsī yǒudiǎnr yuǎn zuò dìtiě yào yí gè xiǎoshí · It’s just a bit far from work: an hour on the metro.

xiaoming 远就远吧，条件这么好！周围还有超市和公园。
yuǎn jiù yuǎn ba tiáojiàn zhème hǎo zhōuwéi hái yǒu chāoshì hé gōngyuán · So it’s far, never mind: it’s such a good place! And there are supermarkets and parks around.

anna 好吧，我周末有空，再来看一次。
hǎo ba wǒ zhōumò yǒu kòng zài lái kàn yí cì · All right, I’m free at the weekend; I’ll come and look again.

write it trace the grey, then write your own



good to know · 空 has two readings: kōng empty (空的), kòng free time (有空, 没空). Flats in China are often described by rooms: 两室一厅 is two bedrooms and a living room.

You can now hunt for a flat in Chinese: rent, rooms, landlord and neighbourhood.
Do this day interactively, with audio and games, free at **wishyou.today/learning**

day 51 chores

Talk about chores: tidying, cleaning, carrying, fixing, and say “it’s X all right, but …”.

Housework is everyday life, and “it’s good all right, just a bit pricey” is one of the most useful ways to give an honest opinion.

words

word	pinyin	meaning	example
收拾	shōushi	to tidy up; to pack	房间太乱了，我们收拾一下吧。 The room is a mess; let’s tidy it up.
整理	zhěnglǐ	to sort out, put in order	我在整理我的书。 I’m sorting out my books.
擦	cā	to wipe, rub, polish	请把桌子擦干净。 Please wipe the table clean.
乱	luàn	messy; at random	我的房间有点儿乱。 My room is a bit of a mess.
卫生	wèishēng	hygiene; clean	厨房要注意卫生。 You have to keep the kitchen hygienic.
扔	rēng	to throw, throw away	这些旧杂志可以扔了。 These old magazines can go.
垃圾	lājī	rubbish, trash	请不要乱扔垃圾。 Please don’t drop litter.
桶	tǒng	bucket, bin	垃圾桶在门口。 The bin is by the door.
干活儿	gànhuór	to work, do the work (spoken)	周末我们全家一起干活儿。 At the weekend the whole family does the chores together.
弄	nòng	to do, make, handle	别把房间弄乱了。 Don’t mess up the room.
挂	guà	to hang	请把外套挂在门后面。 Please hang your coat behind the door.
抬	tái	to lift, carry (together)	这个沙发太重，我们一起抬吧。 This sofa is too heavy; let’s lift it together.
提	tí	to carry (in the hand); to raise	我帮你提这个包吧。 Let me carry this bag for you.
推	tuī	to push	门推一下就开了。 Just push the door and it opens.
装	zhuāng	to pack, load; to install	请把这些书装在箱子里。 Please pack these books into the box.
修	xiū	to repair, fix	我的自行车坏了，你会修吗？ My bike’s broken; can you fix it?
修理	xiūlǐ	to repair (formal)	洗衣机坏了，得{dei3}找人修理。 The washing machine’s broken; we need someone to repair it.
脱	tuō	to take off (clothes, shoes)	进门请脱鞋。 Please take your shoes off when you come in.

pattern x是x: it's x all right · x是x，就是……: x all right, only …

X	是	X	，就是 / 不过 / 可是	the catch

X是X admits something is true before a "but": 好是好 (it's good, granted). Then add the catch with 就是, 不过 or 可是: 好是好，就是太贵了 (it's good all right, it's just too expensive).

这件衣服好看是好看，就是太贵了。 **zhè jiàn yīfu hǎokàn shì hǎokàn jiùshì tài guì le** This top looks great, it's just too expensive.

干活儿累是累，可是心里很高兴。 **gànhuór lèi shì lèi kěshì xīnlǐ hěn gāoxìng** The work is tiring, sure, but I feel good about it.

他的房间大是大，不过很乱。 **tā de fángjiān dà shì dà búguò hěn luàn** His room is big all right, but it's a mess.

dialogue saturday chores

ms zhang 今天大家一起干活儿！小明，你把客厅收拾一下。
jīntiān dàjiā yìqǐ gànhuór Xiǎomíng nǐ bǎ kètīng shōushi yíxià · Today everyone pitches in! Xiaoming, tidy up the living room.

xiaoming 妈妈，客厅乱是乱，可是一点儿也不脏啊。
māma kètīng luàn shì luàn kěshì yìdiǎnr yě bù zāng a · Mum, the living room is messy, sure, but it isn't dirty at all.

ms zhang 不光要收拾，还要把桌子擦干净。
bùguāng yào shōushi hái yào bǎ zhuōzi cā gānjìng · Not just tidy it: wipe the table clean too.

little sister 我来整理书吧。另外，这些旧杂志要扔吗？
wǒ lái zhěnglǐ shū ba lìngwài zhèxiē jiù zázhì yào rēng ma · I'll sort out the books. And should these old magazines go?

ms zhang 要扔。你把它们装在袋子里，提到楼下去。
yào rēng nǐ bǎ tāmen zhuāng zài dàizi lǐ tí dào lóu xiàqù · Yes, throw them out. Put them in a bag and take them downstairs.

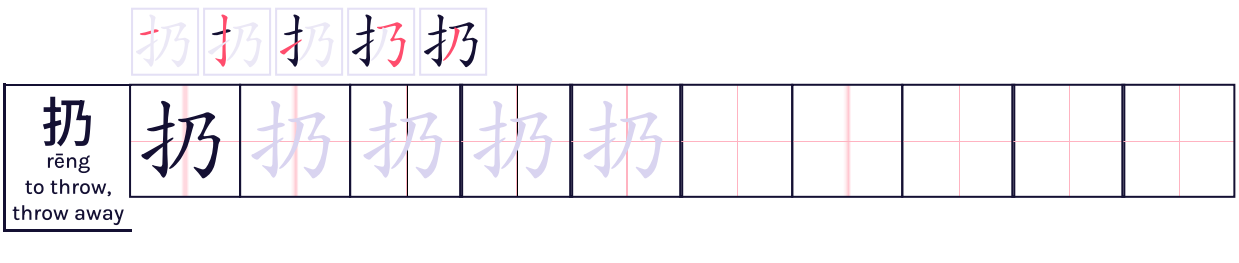
xiaoming 妈妈，洗衣机好像坏了，我来修一下。
māma xǐyījī hǎoxiàng huài le wǒ lái xiū yíxià · Mum, the washing machine seems to be broken. I'll fix it.

ms zhang 你会修吗？别弄坏了！要是修不好，就找人来修理。
nǐ huì xiū ma bié nòng huài le yàoshi xiū bu hǎo jiù zhǎo rén lái xiūlǐ · Can you fix it? Don't break it! If you can't, we'll get someone in to repair it.

xiaoming 放心吧。妹妹，帮我把洗衣机往外推一下。
fàngxīn ba mèimei bāng wǒ bǎ xǐyījī wǎng wài tuī yíxià · Don't worry. Sis, help me push the washing machine out a bit.

little sister 好！哥哥，你先把外套脱了吧，干活儿多热啊。
hǎo gēge nǐ xiān bǎ wàitào tuō le ba gànhuór duō rè a · OK! Big brother, take your coat off first: it's hot work.

write it trace the grey, then write your own





弄
nòng
to do, make, handle



挂
guà
to hang



装
zhuāng
to pack, load; to install

good to know · For carrying, Chinese is precise: 提 in your hand (a bag), 抬 lifted between people (a sofa), 搬 moved somewhere (a box), 推 pushed. Many cities now sort rubbish, and bins are labelled by kind.

Tidy, wipe, carry, push, fix: you can now share the housework, and give an honest “yes, but”.
Do this day interactively, with audio and games, free at **wishyou.today/learning**

day 52 every morning

Describe your morning routine and habits, and keep two things apart: work is work, life is life.

Mornings are the same everywhere: the phone rings, you can't wake up, the toothpaste has run out. Now you can say all of it.

words

word	pinyin	meaning	example
早晨	zǎochen	early morning	早晨的公园很安静。 The park is quiet early in the morning.
醒	xǐng	to wake up	我今天五点就醒了。 I woke up at five today.
着	zháo	(manages to: 睡着 fall asleep)	我昨天晚上一直睡不着{zhao2}。 I couldn't get to sleep last night.
响	xiǎng	to ring, sound; loud	手机响了，你快接一下。 Your phone's ringing; answer it, quick.
亮	liàng	bright, light; to light up	早上六点，天就亮了。 It's already light at six in the morning.
日常	rìcháng	daily, everyday	运动是我日常生活的一部分。 Exercise is part of my daily life.
养成	yǎngchéng	to form (a habit)	我养成了早上跑步的习惯。 I've got into the habit of running in the morning.
牙膏	yágāo	toothpaste	牙膏用完了，我得{dei3}去买。 We're out of toothpaste; I need to buy some.
毛巾	máojīn	towel	这条毛巾是新的。 This towel is new.
镜子	jìngzi	mirror	出门前，我照了照镜子。 Before going out, I checked myself in the mirror.
理发	lǐfà	to get a haircut	我的头发太长了，想去理发。 My hair's too long; I want to get a haircut.
皮鞋	píxié	leather shoes	上班的时候，他总是穿皮鞋。 He always wears leather shoes to work.
底下	dǐxia	under, beneath	我的皮鞋在床底下。 My leather shoes are under the bed.
整	zhěng	whole, entire; exactly	我在家睡了一整天。 I slept at home all day.
整个	zhěnggè	whole, entire	整个周末我都在家待着。 I stayed at home the whole weekend.
待	dāi	to stay (spoken)	你在北京待了多久？ How long did you stay in Beijing?
公共	gōnggòng	public	我每天坐公共汽车上班。 I take the bus to work every day.

pattern x是x，y是y: keep them apart · 让你x你就x: just do as you're told

X 是 X ， Y 是 Y

X是X，Y是Y keeps two things apart: 工作是工作，生活是生活 (work is work, life is life: don't mix them). 让你X你就X (or 叫你X你就X) says "if you're told to X, just X", the voice of every parent.

工作是工作，休息是休息。 **gōngzuò shì gōngzuò xiūxi shì xiūxi** Work is work, and rest is rest.

你是你，我是我，我们不一样。 **nǐ shì nǐ wǒ shì wǒ wǒmen bù yíyàng** You're you and I'm me: we're different.

让你早睡你就早睡！ **ràng nǐ zǎo shuì nǐ jiù zǎo shuì** When you're told to go to bed early, go to bed early!

妈妈叫你穿皮鞋你就穿吧。 **māma jiào nǐ chuān píxié nǐ jiù chuān ba** If Mum says wear your leather shoes, just wear them.

dialogue an early start

reporter zhou 早！安娜，你今天怎么这么早？也坐公共汽车？
zǎo Ānnà nǐ jīntiān zěnme zhème zǎo yě zuò gōnggòng qìchē · Morning! Anna, why so early today? Taking the bus too?

anna 别说了，我昨天晚上一直睡不着，早晨五点就醒了。
bié shuō le wǒ zuótiān wǎnshang yìzhí shuì bu zháo zǎochen wǔ diǎn jiù xǐng le · Don't ask. I couldn't get to sleep last night, and I woke up at five.

reporter zhou 是不是工作太忙了？
shì bu shì gōngzuò tài máng le · Is work too busy?

anna 是啊，躺在床上还在想工作的事。
shì a tǎng zài chuáng shàng hái zài xiǎng gōngzuò de shì · Yes. Even lying in bed I was thinking about work.

reporter zhou 工作是工作，生活是生活，下班以后就别想了。
gōngzuò shì gōngzuò shēnghuó shì shēnghuó xiàbān yǐhòu jiù bié xiǎng le · Work is work and life is life: once you leave the office, stop thinking about it.

anna 你说得对。你每天几点起床？
nǐ shuō de duì nǐ měi tiān jǐ diǎn qǐchuáng · You're right. What time do you get up every day?

reporter zhou 我养成了六点起床的习惯。无论多晚睡，我都六点起。
wǒ yǎngchéng le liù diǎn qǐchuáng de xíguàn wúlùn duō wǎn shuì wǒ dōu liù diǎn qǐ · I'm in the habit of getting up at six. However late I go to bed, I'm up at six.

anna 那你一整天都不困吗？
nà nǐ yì zhěng tiān dōu bú kùn ma · So you're not sleepy all day?

reporter zhou 不困。我妈妈以前总说："让你早睡你就早睡！"我现在才明白。
bú kùn wǒ māma yǐqián zǒng shuō ràng nǐ zǎo shuì nǐ jiù zǎo shuì wǒ xiànzài cái míngbai · No. My mum always used to say: "When you're told to go to bed early, go to bed early!" Only now do I get it.

anna 好，今天晚上我也早睡。车来了！
hǎo jīntiān wǎnshang wǒ yě zǎo shuì chē lái le · OK, I'll go to bed early tonight too. Here's the bus!

write it trace the grey, then write your own

晨 晨 晨 晨 晨 晨 晨 晨 晨 晨 晨

晨
chen
dawn, morning

膏
gāo
paste, cream

good to know · 着 after a verb reads zháo when it means you managed it: 睡着 fall asleep, 睡不着 can't get to sleep. Elsewhere it's zhe. 醒 is waking up; 起床 is getting out of bed. You can 醒了 and still not 起床.

From the alarm to the mirror to the bus: your whole morning now runs in Chinese.
Do this day interactively, with audio and games, free at **wishyou.today/learning**

day 53 back to the village

Make holiday plans, talk about town and countryside, and use short punchy sentences like 不去不行, and say "maybe, who knows" with 说不定.

School holidays, pocket money and visiting grandparents in the countryside are a big part of Chinese family life.

words

word	pinyin	meaning	example
寒假	hánjià	winter holiday	寒假的时候，我们去南方玩。 In the winter holiday we're going south.
暑假	shǔjià	summer holiday	暑假妹妹要去农村看爷爷奶奶。 In the summer holiday Xiaoming's sister is going to the countryside to see her grandparents.
零花钱	línghuāqián	pocket money	妈妈每个月给妹妹两百块零花钱。 Mum gives Xiaoming's sister two hundred yuan pocket money a month.
月份	yuèfèn	month (as a period)	我们七月份去农村。 We're going to the countryside in July.
计划	jìhuà	plan; to plan	你暑假有什么计划? What are your plans for the summer holiday?
定	dìng	to fix, settle, decide	时间定了吗? Is the time settled?
内	nèi	inside, within	作业要在一个月内写完。 The homework has to be done within a month.
准	zhǔn	accurate; exactly	这块手表不准，慢了五分钟。 This watch is wrong: it's five minutes slow.
举	jǔ	to lift, raise	有问题请举手。 Put your hand up if you have a question.
改	gǎi	to change, correct	我们改个时间吧。 Let's change the time.
压力	yālì	pressure, stress	最近工作压力很大。 Work has been really stressful lately.
关键	guānjiàn	key, crucial (point)	学习语言，关键是每天练习。 The key to learning a language is practising every day.
城	chéng	city; city wall	我们住在城里，爷爷住在农村。 We live in town; Grandpa lives in the countryside.
村	cūn	village	这个村有三百多人。 This village has over three hundred people.
农村	nóngcūn	the countryside, rural area	我奶奶以前住在农村。 My grandma used to live in the countryside.

pattern 不……也……: even without · 不去不行: short sentences with no linking word · 说不定: maybe, who knows

不 condition 也 result

不……也…… says the result happens even without the condition: 你不说我也知道 (I know even if you don't say). Chinese also packs "if … then …" into a few words with no linking word at all: 不去不行 (literally: not go, not OK) = I have to go; 有空就来 = come when you're free. And 说不定 (literally: can't say for sure) is a lively spoken "maybe, who knows", like 也许.

你不说我也知道。 **nǐ bù shuō wǒ yě zhīdào** I know even if you don't tell me.

这么简单的题，不看书也会做。 **zhème jiǎndān de tí bú kàn shū yě huì zuò** A question this easy, I can do it without the book.

今天的会很关键，不去不行。 **jīntiān de huì hěn guānjiàn bú qù bùxíng** Today's meeting is crucial; I have to go.

有空就来我家吃饭。 **yǒu kòng jiù lái wǒ jiā chī fàn** Come round for a meal whenever you're free.

他还没来，说不定忘了。 **tā hái méi lái shuō bu dìng wàng le** He's not here yet; maybe he forgot.

说不定明天会下雨，带上伞吧。 **shuō bu dìng míngtiān huì xià yǔ dài shàng sǎn ba** It might rain tomorrow, who knows: take an umbrella.

dialogue summer plans

little sister 妈妈，暑假我想去农村看爷爷奶奶。
māma shǔjià wǒ xiǎng qù nóngcūn kàn yéye nǎinai · Mum, I want to go to the countryside to see Grandpa and Grandma in the summer holiday.

ms zhang 好啊。不过你的暑假计划呢？作业要在一个月内写完。
hǎo a búguò nǐ de shǔjià jìhuà ne zuòyè yào zài yí gè yuè nèi xiě wán · Sure. But what about your summer plan? Your homework has to be done within a month.

little sister 你不说我也知道。我每天上午写作业，下午跟爷爷去村里玩。
nǐ bù shuō wǒ yě zhīdào wǒ měi tiān shàngwǔ xiě zuòyè xiàwǔ gēn yéye qù cūn lǐ wán · I know, you don't have to tell me. I'll do homework every morning and go round the village with Grandpa in the afternoon.

xiaoming 寒假的时候你也这么说，最后作业都没写完。
hánjià de shíhou nǐ yě zhème shuō zuìhòu zuòyè dōu méi xiě wán · You said that in the winter holiday too, and in the end you didn't finish your homework.

little sister 那次是因为计划改了！这次我们七月份去，日子已经定了。
nà cì shì yīnwèi jìhuà gǎi le zhè cì wǒmen qī yuèfèn qù rìzi yǐjīng dìng le · That was because the plans changed! This time we're going in July, and the date is fixed.

xiaoming 说不定这次也一样。
shuō bu dìng zhè cì yě yíyàng · Who knows, this time might be the same.

ms zhang 对于你来说，城里的学习压力太大了，去农村放松一下也好。
duìyú nǐ lái shuō chéng lǐ de xuéxí yālì tài dà le qù nóngcūn fàngsōng yíxià yě hǎo · For you, school in town is a lot of pressure. Some time in the countryside to relax would be good.

little sister 妈妈，那零花钱呢？
māma nà línghuāqián ne · Mum, what about pocket money?

ms zhang 在爷爷奶奶家，不花钱也能过得很好。关键是要听爷爷奶奶的。
zài yéye nǎinai jiā bù huā qián yě néng guò de hěn hǎo guānjiàn shì yào tīng yéye nǎinai de · At your grandparents' you can have a great time without spending money. The key thing is to listen to them.

little sister 我举双手保证！
wǒ jǔ shuāng shǒu bǎozhèng · Hand on heart, I promise!

xiaoming 说不定你回来的时候，比我还会做饭呢！
shuō bu dìng nǐ huílái de shíhou bǐ wǒ hái huì zuòfàn ne · Who knows, by the time you're back you might cook better than me!

ms zhang 好。有事就给我打电话，不打不行！
hǎo yǒu shì jiù gěi wǒ dǎ diànhuà bù dǎ bùxíng · All right. If anything comes up, call me: that's not optional!

write it trace the grey, then write your own

划
huà
to draw a line, mark out

村
cūn
village



农 nóng farming	农	农	农	农	农					

good to know · Chinese schools have two long holidays: 寒假 in January–February (around Spring Festival) and 暑假 in July–August. 城里 (in town) and 农村 (the countryside) are often compared: in town, schools and jobs; in the country, family, space and fresh food.

Holidays, plans and promises: you can now organise a summer in Chinese, and keep it short and punchy.
Do this day interactively, with audio and games, free at **wishyou.today/learning**

day 54 moving house

Follow a whole story about moving house, using everything from this unit.

Moving house brings it all together: rent and landlords, packing and carrying, a first morning and the family who helps.

chapter 1 anna takes the flat

anna 小明，我又来看了一次，决定租这个房子了。
Xiǎomíng wǒ yòu lái kàn le yí cì juédìng zū zhège fángzi le · Xiaoming, I came to look again, and I've decided to rent this flat.

xiaoming 太好了！房东同意房租四千块吗?
tài hǎo le fángdōng tóngyì fángzū sìqiān kuài ma · Great! Did the landlord agree to four thousand?

anna 同意了。不过要先交三个月的房租，够贵的。
tóngyì le búguò yào xiān jiāo sān gè yuè de fángzū gòu guì de · Yes. But I have to pay three months' rent up front, which is pretty steep.

xiaoming 贵就贵吧，条件这么好。郊区跟市区不一样，这条街道很安静，周围都是树，还有一个小院子。
guì jiù guì ba tiáojiàn zhème hǎo jiāoqū gēn shìqū bù yíyàng zhè tiáo jiēdào hěn ānjìng zhōuwéi dōu shì shù hái yǒu yí gè xiǎo yuànzi · Pricey? Never mind: it's such a nice place. The suburbs aren't like the city centre: this street is quiet, there are trees all around, and there's a little yard too.

anna 房东说，这个房子出租了好几年，上一个人刚搬走，现在房间都是空的。
fángdōng shuō zhège fángzi chūzū le hǎo jǐ nián shàng yí gè rén gāng bān zǒu xiànzài fángjiān dōu shì kōng de · The landlord says he's let this flat for years. The last tenant has just moved out, so the rooms are empty now.

xiaoming 家具呢?
jiājù ne · What about furniture?

anna 家具下周就送来，都是新的。这个区的交通也方便，坐公共汽车就能到公司。
jiājù xià zhōu jiù sòng lái dōu shì xīn de zhège qū de jiāotōng yě fāngbiàn zuò gōnggòng qìchē jiù néng dào gōngsī · The furniture arrives next week, all new. The transport in this district is good too: I can get to work by bus.

xiaoming 日子定了吗?
rìzi dìng le ma · Have you fixed the date?

anna 定了，下个星期六搬家。本来想星期天搬，后来计划改了。
dìng le xià gè xīngqīliù bānjiā běnlái xiǎng xīngqītiān bān hòulái jìhuà gǎi le · Yes, I'm moving next Saturday. I meant to move on Sunday, but then the plan changed.

xiaoming 我叫上妹妹一起来帮你，我们俩有的是力气。
wǒ jiào shàng mèimei yìqǐ lái bāng nǐ wǒmen liǎ yǒudeshì lìqi · I'll bring my sister along to help. The two of us have plenty of muscle.

anna 你下个星期不是要考试吗？你忙你的吧，我自己来。
nǐ xià gè xīngqī bú shì yào kǎoshì ma nǐ máng nǐ de ba wǒ zìjǐ lái · Haven't you got an exam next week? You get on with your own things; I'll manage.

xiaoming 考试星期五就考完了。再说我妈妈说了：朋友搬家，不去不行！
kǎoshì xīngqīwǔ jiù kǎo wán le zàishuō wǒ māma shuō le péngyou bānjiā bú qù bùxíng · The exam's over by Friday. Besides, my mum says when a friend moves house, you have to go!

anna 那就麻烦你们了！
nà jiù máfan nǐmen le · Then I'll take you up on it. Thank you!

chapter 2 boxes everywhere

little sister 安娜姐姐，你的东西够多的！我先把这些书装在箱子里。
Ānnà jiějie nǐ de dōngxi gòu duō de wǒ xiān bǎ zhèxiē shū zhuāng zài xiāngzi lǐ · Anna, you've got loads of stuff! I'll pack these books into a box first.

anna 谢谢！房间太乱了，我还没整理完。这些旧杂志不要了，你帮我扔到垃圾桶里吧。
xièxie fángjiān tài luàn le wǒ hái méi zhěnglǐ wán zhèxiē jiù zázhì búyào le nǐ bāng wǒ rēng dào lājī tǒng lǐ ba · Thanks! The room's a mess, I haven't finished sorting it out. I don't need these old magazines; could you throw them in the bin?

little sister 床底下还有一双皮鞋，还有一面镜子！
chuáng dǐxia hái yǒu yì shuāng píxié hái yǒu yí miàn jìngzi · There's a pair of leather shoes under the bed, and a mirror!

anna 镜子我自己拿，别弄坏了。牙膏和毛巾在卫生间，也装进这个袋子里吧。
jìngzi wǒ zìjǐ ná bié nòng huài le yágāo hé máojīn zài wèishēngjiān yě zhuāng jìn zhège dàizi lǐ ba · I'll carry the mirror myself, so it doesn't get broken. The toothpaste and towels are in the bathroom: put them in this bag too.

xiaoming 这个箱子重是重，不过我一个人提得动。
zhège xiāngzi zhòng shì zhòng búguò wǒ yí gè rén tí de dòng · This box is heavy all right, but I can carry it on my own.

anna 沙发太重了，你们俩一起抬吧。
shāfā tài zhòng le nǐmen liǎ yìqǐ tái ba · The sofa is too heavy; you two lift it together.

little sister 哥哥，你还队长呢，连一个沙发都抬不动？
gēge nǐ hái duìzhǎng ne lián yí gè shāfā dōu tái bu dòng · Call yourself a captain? You can't even lift a sofa?

xiaoming 你别说了，你提你的书吧！
nǐ bié shuō le nǐ tí nǐ de shū ba · That's enough from you: you carry your books!

ms zhang 小明，少说两句，让你抬你就抬！
Xiǎomíng shǎo shuō liǎng jù ràng nǐ tái nǐ jiù tái · Xiaoming, less talk: if you're asked to lift it, lift it!

xiaoming 好吧，好吧。妹妹，帮我把沙发往门口推一下。
hǎo ba hǎo ba mèimei bāng wǒ bǎ shāfā wǎng ménkǒu tuī yíxià · All right, all right. Sis, help me push the sofa towards the door.

ms zhang 你们先干活儿，我把厨房擦干净。搬走以前得把房子打扫干净，这是租房子的人的责任。
nǐmen xiān gànhuór wǒ bǎ chúfáng cā gānjìng bān zǒu yǐqián děi bǎ fángzi dǎsǎo gānjìng zhè shì zū fángzi de rén de zérèn · You get on with the work, and I'll wipe the kitchen clean. Before you move out you have to leave the place clean: that's the tenant's job.

anna 门后面还挂着我的外套呢，差点儿忘了！
mén hòumiàn hái guà zhe wǒ de wàitào ne chàdiǎnr wàng le · My coat is still hanging behind the door. I nearly forgot it!

xiaoming 洗衣机的门坏了，要不要修一下？
xǐyījī de mén huài le yào búyào xiū yíxià · The washing machine door is broken. Shall I fix it?

anna 不用，洗衣机是房东的，他会找人来修理。
búyòng xǐyījī shì fángdōng de tā huì zhǎo rén lái xiūlǐ · No need. The washing machine is the landlord's; he'll get someone in to repair it.

chapter 3 a call at dawn

reporter zhou 喂，安娜？我是周记者。你搬到新家了吗？
wèi Ānnà wǒ shì Zhōujìzhě nǐ bān dào xīn jiā le ma · Hello, Anna? It's Reporter Zhou. Have you moved into your new place?

anna 搬了！可是昨天晚上我一直睡不着，早晨手机一响我就醒了。
bān le kěshì zuótiān wǎnshang wǒ yìzhí shuì bu zháo zǎochen shǒujī yì xiǎng wǒ jiù xǐng le · I have! But I couldn't sleep last night, and I woke up the moment my phone rang this morning.

reporter zhou 新家都这样，说不定过几天就习惯了。离公司远吗？
xīn jiā dōu zhèyàng shuō bu dìng guò jǐ tiān jiù xíguàn le lí gōngsī yuǎn ma · New homes are always like that. Who knows, in a few days you'll be used to it. Is it far from work?

anna 坐公共汽车要一个小时，不过窗户很大，天一亮，整个房间都很亮。
zuò gōnggòng qìchē yào yí gè xiǎoshí búguò chuānghu hěn dà tiān yí liàng zhěnggè fángjiān dōu hěn liàng · An hour by bus, but the windows are big: as soon as it's light, the whole room is bright.

reporter zhou 远是远，不过房间好就行。窗户那么大，天一亮，你不想起也得起！
yuǎn shì yuǎn búguò fángjiān hǎo jiù xíng chuānghu nàme dà tiān yí liàng nǐ bù xiǎng qǐ yě děi qǐ · It's far, sure, but as long as the place is nice, that's fine. With windows that big, once it's light you'll have to get up, like it or not!

anna 是啊，我得养成早起的习惯了。以后每天早晨六点起床，七点出门。
shì a wǒ děi yǎngchéng zǎo qǐ de xíguàn le yǐhòu měi tiān zǎochen liù diǎn qǐchuáng qī diǎn chūmén · True, I'll have to get into the habit of getting up early. From now on: up at six every morning, out of the door at seven.

reporter zhou 别太累了。工作是工作，休息是休息，周末就别想工作了。你周末有空吗？我带你在周围走走。
bié tài lèi le gōngzuò shì gōngzuò xiūxi shì xiūxi zhōumò jiù bié xiǎng gōngzuò le nǐ zhōumò yǒu kòng ma wǒ dài nǐ zài zhōuwéi zǒu zou · Don't wear yourself out. Work is work and rest is rest: at weekends, forget about work. Are you free this weekend? I'll show you around the neighbourhood.

anna 太好了，我正想去理发。不过你那么忙，你忙你的吧，我自己去找也行。
tài hǎo le wǒ zhèng xiǎng qù lǐfà búguò nǐ nàme máng nǐ máng nǐ de ba wǒ zìjǐ qù zhǎo yě xíng · Great, I was just thinking of getting a haircut. But you're so busy: you get on with your work, I can find a place myself.

reporter zhou 不忙。你不问我也会告诉你：附近有一家理发店又便宜又好。
bù máng nǐ bú wèn wǒ yě huì gàosu nǐ fùjìn yǒu yì jiā lǐfà diàn yòu piányi yòu hǎo · I'm not busy. And I'd have told you even if you hadn't asked: there's a hairdresser nearby that's cheap and good.

anna 谢谢！新家离超市也不远，日常生活很方便。
xièxie xīn jiā lí chāoshì yě bù yuǎn rìcháng shēnghuó hěn fāngbiàn · Thanks! The new place isn't far from the supermarket either, so everyday life is easy.

chapter 4 the li family comes to dinner

anna 欢迎欢迎！快进来，不用脱鞋。
huānyíng huānyíng kuài jinlai búyòng tuō xié · Welcome! Come in, no need to take your shoes off.

ms zhang 安娜，你的新家真不错！客厅大，厨房也很干净。
Ānnà nǐ de xīn jiā zhēn búcuò kètīng dà chúfáng yě hěn gānjìng · Anna, your new home is lovely! A big living room, and the kitchen is spotless.

anna 谢谢！快请坐。今天我做饭，你们聊你们的吧。
xièxie kuài qǐng zuò jīntiān wǒ zuòfàn nǐmen liáo nǐmen de ba · Thank you! Please sit down. I'm cooking today, so you all just relax and chat.

dr li 你搬家辛苦了。孩子们帮上忙了吗?
nǐ bānjiā xīnkǔ le háizimen bāng shàng máng le ma · Moving house is hard work. Were the kids any help?

anna 帮了很多！没有他们，我一个人搬三天也搬不完。你们把孩子教育得真好。
bāng le hěn duō méiyǒu tāmen wǒ yí gè rén bān sān tiān yě bān bu wán nǐmen bǎ háizi jiàoyù de zhēn hǎo · A lot! Without them, I couldn't have finished in three days on my own. You've brought them up so well.

dr li 我们做家长的，责任就是教育孩子。我是一个很严格的父亲，可是他们帮朋友干活儿，比在家里还认真。
wǒmen zuò jiāzhǎng de zérèn jiùshì jiàoyù háizi wǒ shì yí gè hěn yángé de fùqīn kěshì tāmen bāng péngyou gànhuór bǐ zài jiā lǐ hái rènzhēn · As parents, bringing up the children is our job. I'm a strict father, but when they help a friend they work even harder than at home.

ms zhang 你还说他们呢！你们父子俩都一样，在家里什么都不干！
nǐ hái shuō tāmen ne nǐmen fùzǐ liǎ dōu yíyàng zài jiā lǐ shénme dōu bú gàn · Listen to you! You and your son are just the same: you do nothing at home!

anna 你们这个家庭真有意思。我父母也很严格。我母亲说春节要来北京看我，现在我终于有地方让她住了。
nǐmen zhège jiātíng zhēn yǒu yìsi wǒ fùmǔ yě hěn yángé wǒ mǔqīn shuō Chūnjié yào lái Běijīng kàn wǒ xiànzài wǒ zhōngyú yǒu dìfang ràng tā zhù le · Your family is such fun. My parents are strict too. My mother says she's coming to Beijing to see me at Spring Festival, and now I finally have somewhere for her to stay.

ms zhang 太好了！你们母女俩可以好好聊聊。对了，这个暑假，妹妹七月份去农村看爷爷奶奶。你有空也去看看吧，村里的亲戚都很热情。
tài hǎo le nǐmen mǔnǚ liǎ kěyǐ hǎohǎo liáo liao duì le zhège shǔjià mèimei qī yuèfèn qù nóngcūn kàn yéye nǎinai nǐ yǒu kòng yě qù kàn kan ba cūn lǐ de qīnqi dōu hěn rèqíng · Wonderful! You and your mum can have a good long talk. Oh, and this summer holiday our daughter is going to the countryside in July to see her grandparents. Come along if you're free: our relatives in the village are very welcoming.

xiaoming 爷爷最喜欢孙女了。上次寒假，他给了妹妹很多零花钱。
yéye zuì xǐhuan sūnnǚ le shàng cì hánjià tā gěi le mèimei hěn duō línghuāqián · Grandpa loves his granddaughter best. Last winter holiday he gave her loads of pocket money.

dr li 对于她来说，城里的学习压力太大了，去农村放松一下也好。不过关键是，作业要在一个月内写完。
duìyú tā lái shuō chéng lǐ de xuéxí yālì tài dà le qù nóngcūn fàngsōng yíxià yě hǎo búguò guānjiàn shì zuòyè yào zài yí gè yuè nèi xiě wán · For her, school in town is a lot of pressure, so a break in the countryside will do her good. But the key thing is to finish her homework within a month.

little sister 我举双手保证！安娜姐姐，你也来吧！
wǒ jǔ shuāng shǒu bǎozhèng Ānnà jiějie nǐ yě lái ba · Hand on heart, I promise! Anna, you come too!

anna 好啊！那就说定了。来，大家吃饭吧！
hǎo a nà jiù shuō dìng le lái dàjiā chī fàn ba · I'd love to! It's a deal, then. Come on, everyone, let's eat!

Rent, pack, carry, wake up, welcome guests: a whole move, all in Chinese. Your new vocabulary has a home now.
Do this day interactively, with audio and games, free at **wishyou.today/learning**

day 55 exam season

Talk about exams: signing up, the written and speaking parts, right and wrong answers, and nerves.

Exams shape school life in China, and the gaokao is something every family talks about.

words

word	pinyin	meaning	example
高考	gāokǎo	the gaokao (university entrance exam)	她明年六月参加高考。 She takes the gaokao next June.
报考	bàokǎo	to apply for (an exam, a school)	他想报考北京的大学。 He wants to apply to universities in Beijing.
报名	bàomíng	to sign up, enrol	我报名了周末的汉语班。 I've signed up for the weekend Chinese class.
考生	kǎoshēng	exam candidate	每个考生都要带身份证。 Every candidate must bring their ID card.
试题	shìtí	exam questions, test paper	今年的试题不太难。 This year's exam questions weren't too hard.
笔试	bǐshì	written exam	笔试在上午，下午考口语。 The written exam is in the morning; the speaking test is in the afternoon.
听力	tīnglì	listening (skill)	我的听力比口语好。 My listening is better than my speaking.
口语	kǒuyǔ	speaking, spoken language	多说话，口语才能提高。 Only by talking a lot will your speaking improve.
答	dá	to answer	这个问题我答不上来。 I can't answer this question.
答案	dáàn	answer, solution	你的答案是什么? What's your answer?
正确	zhèngquè	correct, right	请选出正确的答案。 Please choose the correct answer.
错误	cuòwù	mistake; wrong	这里有一个小错误。 There's a small mistake here.
合格	hégé	up to standard; to pass	考到六十|分就合格了。 Score sixty and you pass.
期	qī	issue, session (measure word)	我报名了第二期汉语班。 I've signed up for the second session of the Chinese class.
期中	qīzhōng	midterm	下{=next}周有期中考试。 We have midterm exams next week.
期末	qīmò	end of term	期末考试以后就放假了。 After the end-of-term exams, the holidays start.
末	mò	end (of a period)	这个月末报名就结束了。 Registration closes at the end of this month.

紧张	jǐnzhāng	nervous; tense, tight	别紧张，慢慢说。 Don't be nervous, take your time.

pattern 谁不紧张呢？ questions that make a point · 为了……而……: in order to

谁 / 哪儿 / 什么 **question** **→ a strong statement**

A question word can turn a sentence into a point you're making. 谁不……呢？ means everybody does; 哪儿有……？ means there's none; ……什么？ means there's no reason to. The answer is so obvious that nobody gives one. Today's second pattern, 为了A而B, gives the purpose in a written way: 为了健康而运动, exercise for your health.

谁不想考个好成绩呢？ **shéi bù xiǎng kǎo gè hǎo chéngjì ne** Who doesn't want a good score? (Everyone does.)

考试快到了，他哪儿有时间玩？ **kǎoshì kuài dào le tā nǎr yǒu shíjiān wán** The exam is nearly here; he's got no time to play.

这个月末报名就结束了，你还等什么？ **zhège yuè mò bàomíng jiù jiéshù le nǐ hái děng shénme** Registration closes at the end of the month. What are you waiting for?

很多人为了健康而运动。 **hěn duō rén wèile jiànkāng ér yùndòng** Lots of people exercise for their health.

dialogue the gaokao countdown

anna 你在做什么？这么认真。
nǐ zài zuò shénme zhème rènzhēn · What are you working on? You look so focused.

little sister 做去年的高考试题。期末考试也快到了，我真紧张。
zuò qùnián de gāokǎo shìtí qīmò kǎoshì yě kuài dào le wǒ zhēn jǐnzhāng · Last year's gaokao papers. And end-of-term exams are coming up too. I'm so nervous.

anna 谁不紧张呢？我也报名了下个月的汉语考试。
shéi bù jǐnzhāng ne wǒ yě bàomíng le xià gè yuè de Hànyǔ kǎoshì · Who wouldn't be? I've signed up for a Chinese exam next month too.

little sister 你的口语那么好，还担心什么？
nǐ de kǒuyǔ nàme hǎo hái dānxīn shénme · Your spoken Chinese is so good. What is there to worry about?

anna 口语还可以，可是听力不太好。
kǒuyǔ hái kěyǐ kěshì tīnglì bú tài hǎo · My speaking's OK, but my listening isn't great.

little sister 我一方面想考上好大学，另一方面又怕考不上。
wǒ yì fāngmiàn xiǎng kǎo shàng hǎo dàxué lìng yì fāngmiàn yòu pà kǎo bu shàng · On the one hand I want to get into a good university; on the other, I'm scared I won't.

anna 别想太多。你是为了自己而学习，不是为了别人。
bié xiǎng tài duō nǐ shì wèile zìjǐ ér xuéxí bú shì wèile biérén · Don't overthink it. You're studying for yourself, not for anyone else.

little sister 你说得对。那我先休息一下，好有力气继续做题。
nǐ shuō de duì nà wǒ xiān xiūxi yíxià hǎo yǒu lìqi jìxù zuò tí · You're right. I'll take a short break, so I have the energy to keep going.

anna 好。我帮你看看答案：这道题你答对了，那道只有一个小错误。
hǎo wǒ bāng nǐ kàn kan dáàn zhè dào tí nǐ dá duì le nà dào zhǐ yǒu yí gè xiǎo cuòwù · Good. Let me check your answers: you got this question right, and that one has just one small mistake.

write it trace the grey, then write your own



案 àn table; case, file	案	案	案	案	案					

good to know · 为了……而…… sounds a little formal: good for writing and serious talk. In chat, 为了 alone is fine: 为了考试，我每天复习. 答对 / 答错 mean “answer right / wrong”; 合格 is a pass that meets a set standard, as on a driving test or a quality check.

Exams, nerves and answers: you can now chat about the biggest event of the Chinese school year and calm a nervous friend.
Do this day interactively, with audio and games, free at **wishyou.today/learning**

day 56 in class

Talk about lessons, homework, reading and essays, and back up a point with an example.

Whether you study Chinese or teach it, classroom words come up every day, and giving examples makes you sound clear.

words

word	pinyin	meaning	example
课堂	kètáng	class, classroom (setting)	课堂上不要玩手机。 Don't play on your phone in class.
课程	kèchéng	course, curriculum	这个课程一共有三十节课。 This course has thirty lessons in all.
功课	gōngkè	homework, schoolwork	做完功课再看电视。 Finish your homework before you watch TV.
预习	yùxí	to prepare a lesson (before class)	上课以前，我会先预习课文。 Before class I read through the text first.
自习	zìxí	to study on your own (in a study period)	晚上我们在教室自习。 In the evening we do self-study in the classroom.
自学	zìxué	to teach yourself	他自学了三年汉语。 He taught himself Chinese for three years.
教学	jiàoxué	teaching	这所学校的教学质量很高。 The teaching at this school is very good.
教师	jiàoshī	teacher (formal)	她是一名{=(measure word for people)}中学教师。 She is a secondary school teacher.
师生	shīshēng	teachers and students	学校的师生都来了。 All the school's teachers and students came.
点名	diǎnmíng	to take the register, call the roll	老师每节课都点名。 The teacher takes the register every lesson.
词语	cíyǔ	words and phrases	这些词语你都认识吗? Do you know all these words?
语法	yǔfǎ	grammar	汉语的语法不太难。 Chinese grammar isn't that hard.
篇	piān	(measure word for articles, essays)	我写了一篇作文。 I wrote an essay.
文章	wénzhāng	article, essay	这篇文章写得很好。 This article is very well written.
作文	zuòwén	essay, composition (at school)	今天的作业是写一篇作文。 Today's homework is to write an essay.
阅读	yuèdú	to read; reading	每天阅读半个小时，对学汉语很有帮助。

			Reading half an hour a day really helps your Chinese.
例如	lìrú	for example, such as	我喜欢运动，例如跑步、游泳。 I like sport, for example running and swimming.
例子	lìzi	example	你能举个例子吗? Can you give an example?

pattern 拿……来说: take … for example

拿 **one example** 来说 **, what it shows**

Make a general point, then back it up with 拿 + one example + 来说: “take … for example”. A good partner is 就是说 (that is to say), which says the same thing again more plainly.

学汉语要多阅读。拿我来说，我每天读一篇文章。 **xué Hànyǔ yào duō yuèdú ná wǒ lái shuō wǒ měi tiān dú yì piān wénzhāng** Learning Chinese takes lots of reading. Take me: I read an article every day.

这个课程很有用。拿语法来说，每课都有很多例子。 **zhège kèchéng hěn yǒuyòng ná yǔfǎ lái shuō měi kè dōu yǒu hěn duō lìzi** This course is really useful. Take the grammar: every lesson has lots of examples.

王老师的学生都很努力。拿安娜来说，她每天自习三个小时。 **Wánglǎoshī de xuéshēng dōu hěn nǔlì ná Ānnà lái shuō tā měi tiān zìxí sān gè xiǎoshí** Teacher Wang’s students all work hard. Take Anna: she studies on her own three hours a day.

明天放假，就是说，不用上课。 **míngtiān fàngjià jiùshìshuō búyòng shàngkè** Tomorrow’s a holiday; that is to say, no classes.

dialogue how to get ready for the exam

teacher wang 安娜，下个月就考试了，你的功课做得怎么样？
Ānnà xià gè yuè jiù kǎoshì le nǐ de gōngkè zuò de zěnmeyàng · Anna, the exam is next month. How is your work going?

anna 语法还可以，可是作文写得太慢。
yǔfǎ hái kěyǐ kěshì zuòwén xiě de tài màn · Grammar is OK, but I write essays too slowly.

teacher wang 作文要多练。拿我以前的学生来说，他们每周写两篇。
zuòwén yào duō liàn ná wǒ yǐqián de xuéshēng lái shuō tāmen měi zhōu xiě liǎng piān · Essays take practice. Take my former students: they wrote two a week.

anna 两篇？就是说，我每三天就要写一篇？
liǎng piān jiùshìshuō wǒ měi sān tiān jiù yào xiě yì piān · Two? So I'd have to write one every three days?

teacher wang 对。写完以后把作文发给我，我帮你看。
duì xiě wán yǐhòu bǎ zuòwén fā gěi wǒ wǒ bāng nǐ kàn · Yes. Send me each essay when it's done, and I'll go through it.

anna 太好了！还有，阅读的时候，很多词语我不认识，怎么办？
tài hǎo le hái yǒu yuèdú de shíhou hěn duō cíyǔ wǒ bú rènshi zěnme bàn · Great! And when I read, there are lots of words I don't know. What should I do?

teacher wang 先猜，再查词典。多看例子，例如这本书里的句子。
xiān cāi zài chá cídiǎn duō kàn lìzi lìrú zhè běn shū lǐ de jùzi · Guess first, then look them up. Read lots of examples, such as the sentences in this book.

anna 这本书是您写的吗？
zhè běn shū shì nín xiě de ma · Did you write this book?

teacher wang 是我们学校几位教师一起写的。我们教学的时候一直用它，师生都觉得很好。
shì wǒmen xuéxiào jǐ wèi jiàoshī yìqǐ xiě de wǒmen jiàoxué de shíhou yìzhí yòng tā shīshēng dōu juéde hěn hǎo · A few teachers at our school wrote it together. We always use it in our teaching, and teachers and students both like it.

anna 那我也把它认真读一遍！
nà wǒ yě bǎ tā rènzhēn dú yí biàn · Then I'll read it through carefully too!

write it trace the grey, then write your own

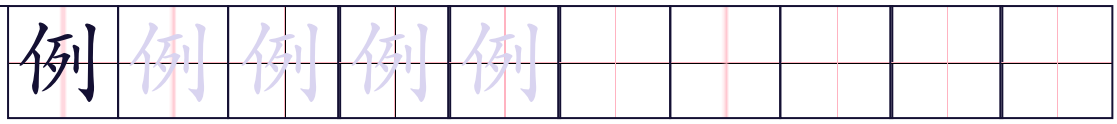
程
chéng
rule; journey

篇
piān
(measure word for articles, essays)

章
zhāng
chapter, section



例
lì
example



good to know · 预习 is studying before class; 复习 is reviewing after it. Chinese teachers expect both. Use 篇 for anything you write or read as one piece: 一篇文章, 一篇作文, 一篇新闻.

You can now talk about your lessons, ask for help with reading and essays, and make your points clear with examples.
Do this day interactively, with audio and games, free at **wishyou.today/learning**

day 57 university life

Talk about university: majors, degrees, fees, scholarships and graduating.

University is where many friendships in China begin, and graduation plans are a favourite topic.

words

word	pinyin	meaning	example
入学	rùxué	to start school, enrol	大学一般九月入学。 University usually starts in September.
学院	xuéyuàn	college, school (of a university)	他在外语学院学习。 He studies at the School of Foreign Languages.
本科	běnkē	undergraduate (course)	本科一般要读四年。 An undergraduate degree usually takes four years.
研究生	yánjiūshēng	postgraduate student	毕业以后，他想读研究生。 After graduating he wants to do a postgraduate degree.
硕士	shuòshì	master's degree	她在英国读了硕士。 She did her master's in the UK.
博士	bóshì	doctorate, PhD	他是历史博士。 He has a PhD in history.
教授	jiàoshòu	professor	我们的教授很有名。 Our professor is very well known.
院长	yuànzhǎng	dean, head (of a college or hospital)	医院的院长也是一位医生。 The head of the hospital is a doctor too.
专业	zhuānyè	major, field of study; professional	你学的是什么专业? What's your major?
学费	xuéfèi	tuition fees	这所大学的学费不太贵。 This university's fees aren't too high.
奖学金	jiǎngxuéjīn	scholarship	她成绩很好，获得了奖学金。 Her grades were excellent, so she got a scholarship.
操场	cāochǎng	sports ground (at a school)	下课以后，我们去操场跑步。 After class we go running on the sports ground.
毕业	bìyè	to graduate	小明明年六月毕业。 Xiaoming graduates next June.
毕业生	bìyèshēng	graduate	今年的毕业生很多，工作不好找。 There are lots of graduates this year, so jobs are hard to find.
知识	zhīshi	knowledge	读书能让我们得到很多知识。 Reading gives us a lot of knowledge.
基础	jīchǔ	foundation, basis	他的汉语基础很好。 He has a solid foundation in Chinese.
基本	jīběn	basic; basically	这些是最基本的语法。 This is the most basic grammar.

基本上	jīběnshàng	basically, on the whole	作业我基本上做完了。 I've basically finished my homework.

pattern 不是……就是……: either … or …

不是 A | A | ，就是 | B

不是 A，就是 B says it's always one of two things: if it isn't A, it's B. It often sounds like a friendly complaint about being busy: 不是上课，就是考试.

小明最近不是在图书馆，就是在操场。 **Xiǎomíng zuìjìn bú shì zài túshūguǎn jiùshì zài cāochǎng** Lately Xiaoming is either in the library or on the sports ground.

周末他不是睡觉，就是玩游戏。 **zhōumò tā bú shì shuìjiào jiùshì wán yóuxì** At weekends he either sleeps or plays games.

这个月我不是上课，就是考试，太累了。 **zhège yuè wǒ bú shì shàngkè jiùshì kǎoshì tài lèi le** This month it's been classes or exams, nothing else. I'm exhausted.

dialogue a walk round campus

anna 你们学校真大！那边是什么？
nǐmen xuéxiào zhēn dà nàbiān shì shénme · Your university is huge! What's that over there?

xiaoming 那是外语学院。外语学院的院长是一位很有名的教授。
nà shì wàiyǔ xuéyuàn wàiyǔ xuéyuàn de yuànzhǎng shì yí wèi hěn yǒumíng de jiàoshòu · That's the School of Foreign Languages. Its dean is a very well-known professor.

anna 你毕业以后想做什么？读研究生吗？
nǐ bìyè yǐhòu xiǎng zuò shénme dú yánjiūshēng ma · What do you want to do after you graduate? A postgraduate degree?

xiaoming 我想先工作。读硕士要两三年，读博士更久。
wǒ xiǎng xiān gōngzuò dú shuòshì yào liǎngsān nián dú bóshì gèng jiǔ · I want to work first. A master's takes two or three years, and a PhD even longer.

anna 也对。你这几个月不是上课，就是找工作，累不累？
yě duì nǐ zhè jǐ gè yuè bú shì shàngkè jiùshì zhǎo gōngzuò lèi bu lèi · Fair enough. These past months it's been classes or job hunting. Aren't you tired?

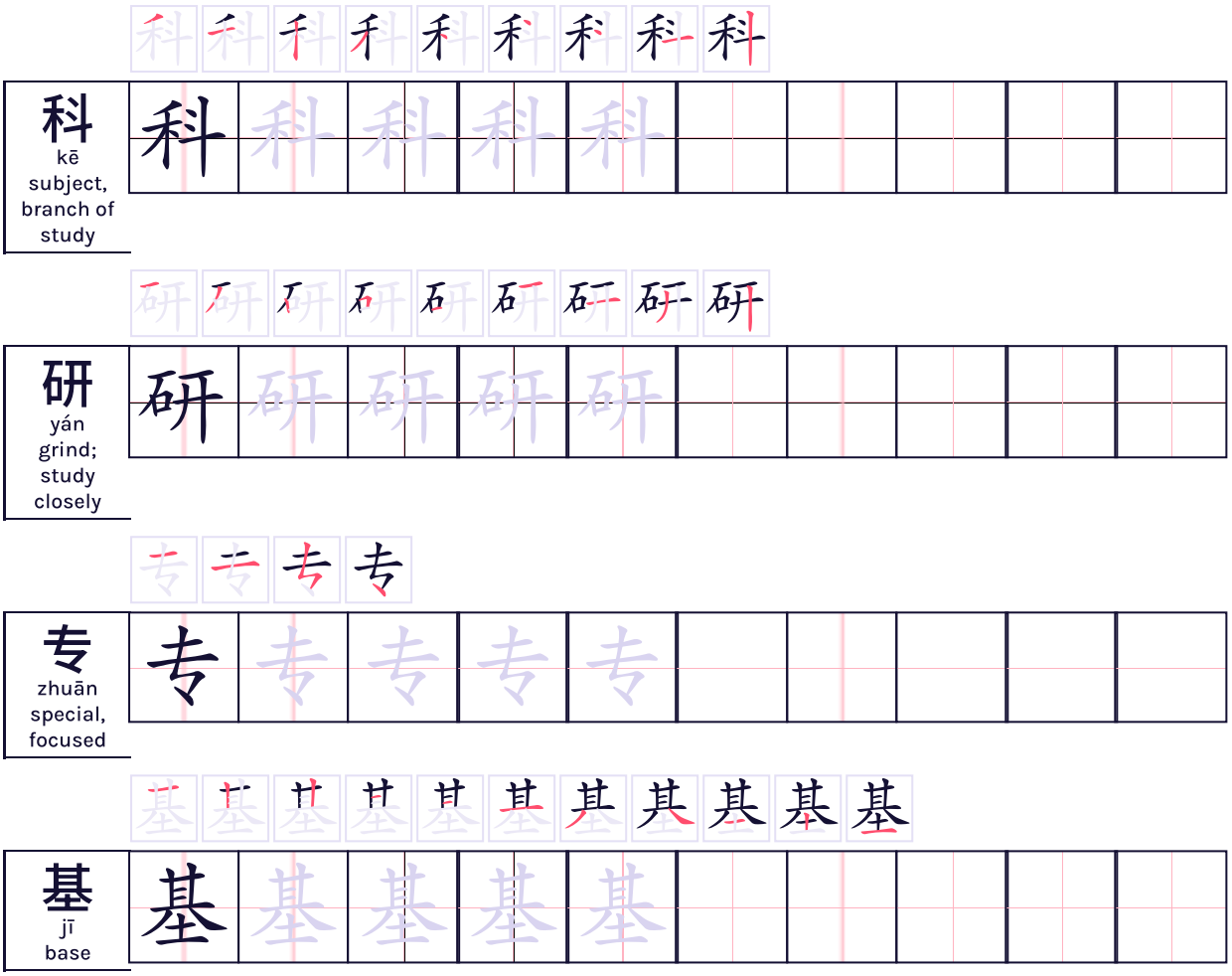
xiaoming 还好。课基本上上完了，连期末考试都考完了。
hái hǎo kè jīběnshàng shàng wán le lián qīmò kǎoshì dōu kǎo wán le · Not too bad. Classes are basically over, and I've even finished my end-of-term exams.

anna 真快！我记得你刚入学的时候，连食堂都找不到。
zhēn kuài wǒ jìde nǐ gāng rùxué de shíhou lián shítáng dōu zhǎo bu dào · That went fast! I remember when you'd just started, you couldn't even find the canteen.

xiaoming 是啊！现在我的专业基础很好，找工作也更有信心了。
shì a xiànzài wǒ de zhuānyè jīchǔ hěn hǎo zhǎo gōngzuò yě gèng yǒu xìnxīn le · True! Now I've got a solid grounding in my subject, and I feel more confident about finding a job.

anna 走，我们去食堂吃饭，我请客！
zǒu wǒmen qù shítáng chī fàn wǒ qǐngkè · Come on, let's eat at the canteen. My treat!

write it trace the grey, then write your own



good to know · Chinese degrees in order: 本科 (bachelor's), 硕士 (master's), 博士 (PhD). A 研究生 is anyone studying beyond the bachelor's. 毕业 takes no object: 大学毕业 or 从大学毕业, never "毕业大学".

Majors, degrees and graduation plans: you can now talk about university life and ask friends about their next steps.
Do this day interactively, with audio and games, free at **wishyou.today/learning**

day 58 studying well

Talk about how you study: key points, careful reading, translating, discussing and summing up.

Good study habits travel well: these words help in any class, meeting or study group.

words

word	pinyin	meaning	example
举例	jǔlì	to give an example	老师举例说明了这个语法。 The teacher explained this grammar with examples.
积累	jīlěi	to build up, accumulate	学语言要每天积累。 Learning a language means building up a little every day.
重点	zhòngdiǎn	key point; with a focus on	这是今天的重点，大家记一下。 This is today's key point; please write it down.
重视	zhòngshì	to value, take seriously	父母都很重视孩子的教育。 Parents take their children's education very seriously.
仔细	zǐxì	careful, thorough	考试的时候要仔细看题。 In an exam, read the questions carefully.
详细	xiángxì	detailed	请把你的计划写得详细一点儿。 Please write your plan in a bit more detail.
准确	zhǔnquè	accurate, exact	他的翻译很准确。 His translation is very accurate.
流利	liúlì	fluent	她的汉语说得很流利。 She speaks Chinese fluently.
普通话	pǔtōnghuà	Mandarin, standard Chinese	电视新闻都用普通话。 The TV news is all in Mandarin.
翻译	fānyì	to translate; translator	你能帮我翻译一下吗? Can you translate this for me?
顺序	shùnxù	order, sequence	请按顺序排队。 Please queue in order.
总结	zǒngjié	to sum up; summary	最后，我们总结一下今天的内容。 Finally, let's sum up what we did today.
判断	pànduàn	to judge, decide; judgement	这个句子对不对？请你判断一下。 Is this sentence right? Please decide.
提出	tíchū	to put forward, raise	他提出了一个好问题。 He raised a good question.
提到	tídào	to mention	老师提到了明天的考试。 The teacher mentioned tomorrow's exam.
指出	zhǐchū	to point out	老师指出了我作文里的错误。 The teacher pointed out the mistakes in my essay.
讨论	tǎolùn	to discuss	我们讨论了很长时间。 We discussed it for a long time.

小组	xiǎozǔ	group, team	我们小组有五个人。 There are five people in our group.

pattern 能学一点是一点: every bit counts

(能) verb **一 + X** **是** **一 + X**

Verb + 一X是一X means: however little you manage, each one counts. X is a measure word or 点: 能记一个是一个, every word you remember is one more. It's realistic and encouraging at the same time.

时间不多了，能复习一点是一点。 **shíjiān bù duō le néng fùxí yìdiǎn shì yìdiǎn** There's not much time left; every bit of revision helps.

词语太多了，能记一个是一个。 **cíyǔ tài duō le néng jì yí gè shì yí gè** There are so many words; every one you remember counts.

这些文章，能读一篇是一篇。 **zhèxiē wénzhāng néng dú yì piān shì yì piān** As for these articles, read as many as you can; each one counts.

dialogue the study group

teacher wang 今天我们小组讨论一下怎么准备考试。
jīntiān wǒmen xiǎozǔ tǎolùn yíxià zěnme zhǔnbèi kǎoshì · Today our group is going to discuss how to prepare for the exam.

anna 王老师，词语太多了，我说什么也得把它们记住。
Wánglǎoshī cíyǔ tài duō le wǒ shuō shénme yě děi bǎ tāmen jì zhù · Teacher Wang, there are so many words. Whatever it takes, I have to get them into my head.

teacher wang 别急，能记一个是一个。重点是每天积累。
bié jí néng jì yí gè shì yí gè zhòngdiǎn shì měi tiān jīlěi · Don't rush; every word counts. The key is to build up a little every day.

anna 您上次提到，要重视阅读。您能举例说明一下吗?
nín shàng cì tídào yào zhòngshì yuèdú nín néng jǔlì shuōmíng yíxià ma · Last time you mentioned that reading really matters. Could you give an example?

teacher wang 比如读一篇文章，先判断它讲的是什么，再仔细看每一段的顺序。
bǐrú dú yì piān wénzhāng xiān pànduàn tā jiǎng de shì shénme zài zǐxì kàn měi yí duàn de shùnxù · Say you read an article: first work out what it's about, then look carefully at the order of the paragraphs.

anna 我明白了。那写作文呢?
wǒ míngbai le nà xiě zuòwén ne · I see. And essays?

teacher wang 写之前，把你的计划写得详细一点儿。写完以后，自己总结一下。
xiě zhīqián bǎ nǐ de jìhuà xiě de xiángxì yìdiǎnr xiě wán yǐhòu zìjǐ zǒngjié yíxià · Before you write, make your plan a bit more detailed. When you've finished, sum it up for yourself.

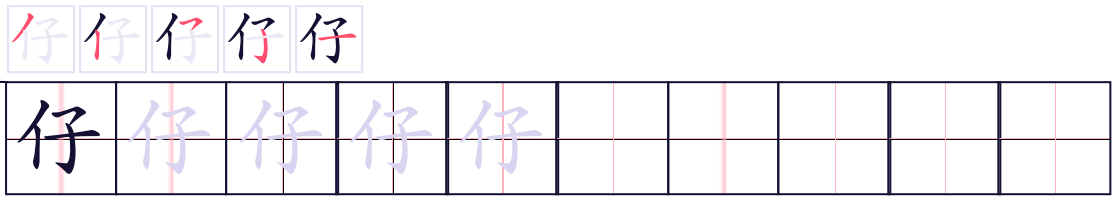
anna 我还想提出一个问题：口语怎么提高?
wǒ hái xiǎng tíchū yí gè wèntí kǒuyǔ zěnme tígāo · I'd like to raise one more question: how do I improve my speaking?

teacher wang 多说！能说一句是一句。
duō shuō néng shuō yí jù shì yí jù · Speak as much as you can! Every sentence counts.

write it trace the grey, then write your own



组
zǔ
group; to form; set



仔
zǐ
careful

good to know · 仔细 is how you do something (carefully); 详细 is what you give (in detail): 仔细看, 详细说明. 普通话 is the name for standard Mandarin in mainland China. People also say 中文 or 汉语 for the language in general.

Now you can talk about how you study, join a study group and encourage yourself: 能学一点是一点!
Do this day interactively, with audio and games, free at **wishyou.today/learning**

day 59 job hunting

Talk about job hunting: adverts, applications, interviews, pay, bonuses and experience.

Looking for work is a big topic for young people in China, and these words come up in every job advert.

words

word	pinyin	meaning	example
表扬	biǎoyáng	to praise	老师表扬他作业写得好。 The teacher praised him for doing his homework well.
批评	pīpíng	to criticise, tell off	经理批评他又迟到了。 The manager told him off for being late again.
表现	biǎoxiàn	to perform, show; performance	你今天的表现很好。 You did really well today.
招聘	zhāopìn	to recruit, advertise a job	这家{=(measure word for shops, firms)}公司正在招聘司机。 This company is hiring drivers.
应聘	yìngpìn	to apply for a job	我想应聘这个工作。 I'd like to apply for this job.
面试	miànshì	(job) interview; to interview	明天上午十点面试。 The interview is at ten tomorrow morning.
职业	zhíyè	occupation, profession	医生是一个很辛苦的职业。 Being a doctor is a hard job.
经验	jīngyàn	experience	他有五年的工作经验。 He has five years of work experience.
能够	nénggòu	to be able to, can	希望我能够找到一个好工作。 I hope I can find a good job.
打工	dǎgōng	to work a (part-time) job	暑假我在一家{=(measure word for shops, firms)}咖啡店打工。 In the summer holidays I work at a coffee shop.
工资	gōngzī	pay, wages	这个工作的工资不太高。 The pay for this job isn't very high.
奖金	jiǎngjīn	bonus	这个月我拿到了奖金。 I got a bonus this month.
加强	jiāqiáng	to strengthen, step up	我要加强口语练习。 I need to step up my speaking practice.
专门	zhuānmén	specially; specialised	他专门来北京参加面试。 He came to Beijing just for the interview.
年底	niándǐ	end of the year	我们公司年底最忙。 Our company is busiest at the end of the year.
人员	rényuán	staff, personnel	工作人员会告诉你在哪儿面试。 The staff will tell you where the interview is.

单位	dānwèi	workplace, employer (organisation)	你在哪个单位工作? Where do you work?
部门	bùmén	department	她在我们公司的广告部门工作。 She works in our company's advertising department.

pattern 表扬 / 批评 someone for doing something

who | 表扬 / 批评 | someone | what they did

Put the person straight after 表扬 (praise) or 批评 (criticise), then say what they did: 经理表扬小明工作认真. Chinese needs no word for "for" here. 感谢 (thank) works the same way: 感谢你帮助我.

陈经理表扬安娜工作很认真。 **Chénjīnglǐ biǎoyáng Ānnà gōngzuò hěn rènzhēn** Manager Chen praised Anna for working so hard.

妈妈批评妹妹玩手机玩得太晚。 **māma pīpíng mèimei wán shǒujī wán de tài wǎn** Mum told my little sister off for staying up so late on her phone.

老师表扬他帮助同学。 **lǎoshī biǎoyáng tā bāngzhù tóngxué** The teacher praised him for helping his classmates.

dialogue after the interview

ms zhang 小明，今天的面试怎么样?
Xiǎomíng jīntiān de miànshì zěnmeyàng · Xiaoming, how did today's interview go?

xiaoming 还行。我专门准备了一个星期，怎么也没想到问题那么难。
hái xíng wǒ zhuānmén zhǔnbèi le yí gè xīngqī zěnme yě méi xiǎng dào wèntí nàme nán · Not bad. I spent a whole week preparing for it, and I never imagined the questions would be so hard.

ms zhang 是哪个单位?
shì nǎge dānwèi · Which company was it?

xiaoming 一家广告公司，市场部门在招聘工作人员。
yì jiā guǎnggào gōngsī shìchǎng bùmén zài zhāopìn gōngzuò rényuán · An advertising company. Their marketing department is hiring staff.

ms zhang 他们觉得你怎么样?
tāmen juéde nǐ zěnmeyàng · What did they think of you?

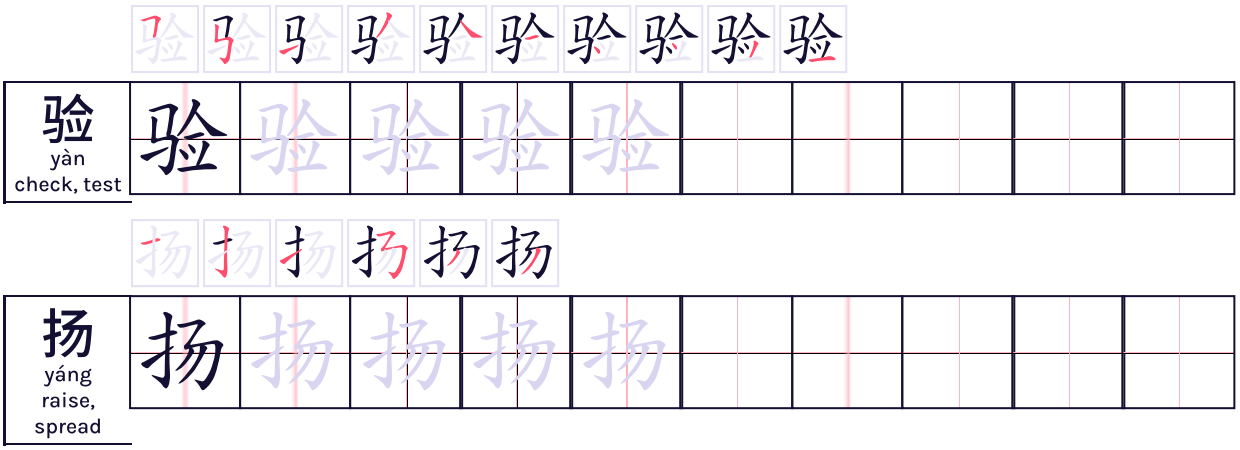
xiaoming 经理表扬我准备得很好，但是也指出我没有工作经验。
jīnglǐ biǎoyáng wǒ zhǔnbèi de hěn hǎo dànshì yě zhǐchū wǒ méiyǒu gōngzuò jīngyàn · The manager praised me for being well prepared, but also pointed out that I have no work experience.

ms zhang 没关系，经验是慢慢积累的。只要你能够认真学，他们会给你机会的。
méi guānxi jīngyàn shì màn màn jīlěi de zhǐyào nǐ nénggòu rènzhēn xué tāmen huì gěi nǐ jīhuì de · Never mind; experience comes slowly. As long as you can learn properly, they'll give you a chance.

xiaoming 就是说，我得多积累经验。我也要加强自己的能力。
jiùshìshuō wǒ děi duō jīlěi jīngyàn wǒ yě yào jiāqiáng zìjǐ de nénglì · That is to say, I need to build up more experience. I need to build up my skills too.

ms zhang 不管做什么职业，认真最重要。
bùguǎn zuò shénme zhíyè rènzhēn zuì zhòngyào · Whatever career you choose, being conscientious matters most.

write it trace the grey, then write your own



good to know · The company 招聘 (recruits) and you 应聘 (apply): the same 聘 “hire”, seen from both sides. 单位 is the everyday word for your workplace, especially a school, hospital or government office: 你在哪个单位工作?

You can now read a job advert, talk about an interview and praise someone properly for a job well done.
Do this day interactively, with audio and games, free at **wishyou.today/learning**

day 60 at the office

Talk about office life: tasks, meetings, business trips, overtime, printing and who is in charge.

Office words help you at any Chinese workplace, and saying who was chosen for a role is something you need every week.

words

word	pinyin	meaning	example
为	wéi	to act as, be (written)	大家选他为{wei2}小组的负责人。 Everyone chose him to lead the group.
办公	bàngōng	to work (in an office)	我们周末不办公。 Our office is closed at weekends.
安排	ānpái	to arrange; arrangement	明天的工作我已经安排好了。 I've already arranged tomorrow's work.
任务	rènwu	task, assignment	这个任务很急，今天要完成。 This task is urgent; it has to be done today.
进行	jìnxíng	to carry out, be under way	会议正在进行。 The meeting is in progress.
过程	guòchéng	process, course	在工作的过程中，我学到了很多。 I learned a lot in the course of the work.
出差	chūchāi	to go on a business trip	经理下{=next}周去上海出差。 The manager is going to Shanghai on business next week.
加班	jiābān	to work overtime	这个星期我天天加班。 I've worked late every day this week.
打印	dǎyìn	to print	请帮我打印一下这份文件。 Could you print this document for me?
打印机	dǎyìnjī	printer	打印机又坏了。 The printer's broken again.
复印	fùyìn	to photocopy	我把材料复印了三份。 I made three copies of the materials.
项	xiàng	item (measure word for tasks, rules)	我今天有三项任务。 I have three tasks today.
组	zǔ	group; to form; set	我们组一共有六个人。 There are six of us in our group.
工厂	gōngchǎng	factory	他爸爸在一家{=(measure word for shops, firms)}工厂工作。 His dad works in a factory.
厂	chǎng	factory, plant	这个厂有两千多个工人。 This factory has over two thousand workers.
工人	gōngrén	worker	工人们每天早上八点上班。 The workers start at eight every morning.
管	guǎn	to be in charge of, look after	这件事谁管? Who's in charge of this?

管理	guǎnlǐ	to manage; management	陈经理管理我们部门。 Manager Chen runs our department.

pattern 选 / 收 someone 当 / 做 / 为 a role

who | 选 / 收 | someone | 当 / 做 / 为 | role

To say who was picked or taken on for a role: 选 (choose) or 收 (accept, take on) + person + 当 / 做 / 为 + role. 为 (wéi) is the written one; in speech say 当 or 做.

大家选安娜当小组的负责人。 **dàjiā xuǎn Ānnà dāng xiǎozǔ de fùzérén** Everyone chose Anna to lead the group.

王老师收他做学生。 **Wánglǎoshī shōu tā zuò xuéshēng** Teacher Wang took him on as a student.

这个厂收了很多年轻人当工人。 **zhège chǎng shōu le hěn duō niánqīng rén dāng gōngrén** This factory has taken on lots of young people as workers.

dialogue a new task

manager chen 安娜，下周我去上海出差，这项工作你来管吧。
Ānnà xià zhōu wǒ qù Shànghǎi chūchāi zhè xiàng gōngzuò nǐ lái guǎn ba · Anna, I'm away in Shanghai on business next week. Can you take charge of this?

anna 我？我才来一个月，能管理好吗？
wǒ wǒ cái lái yí gè yuè néng guǎnlǐ hǎo ma · Me? I've only been here a month. Can I manage it?

manager chen 没问题。上次开会，你和大家一问一答，说得很清楚，所以大家选你当负责人。
méi wèntí shàng cì kāihuì nǐ hé dàjiā yí wèn yì dá shuō de hěn qīngchu suǒyǐ dàjiā xuǎn nǐ dāng fùzérén · No problem. At the last meeting you took everyone's questions one by one and explained things clearly, so they chose you to lead it.

anna 谢谢您！那我需要做什么？
xièxie nín nà wǒ xūyào zuò shénme · Thank you! So what do I need to do?

manager chen 先去厂里看看，跟工人们聊一聊。
xiān qù chǎng lǐ kàn kan gēn gōngrénmen liáo yi liao · First go and see the factory, and have a chat with the workers.

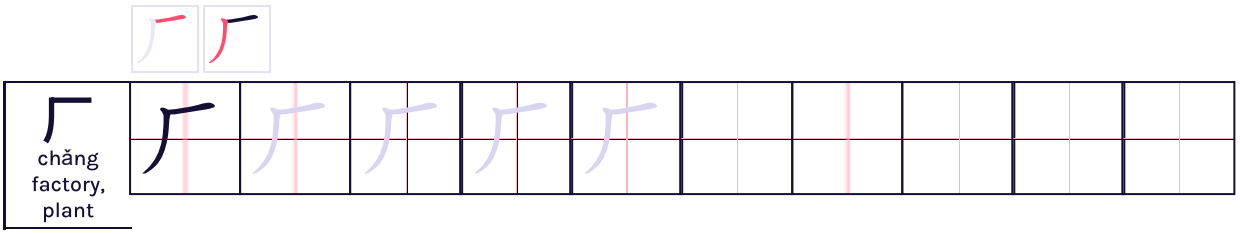
anna 好的。在这个过程中，有问题我可以给您打电话吗？
hǎo de zài zhège guòchéng zhōng yǒu wèntí wǒ kěyǐ gěi nín dǎ diànhuà ma · OK. If anything comes up along the way, can I call you?

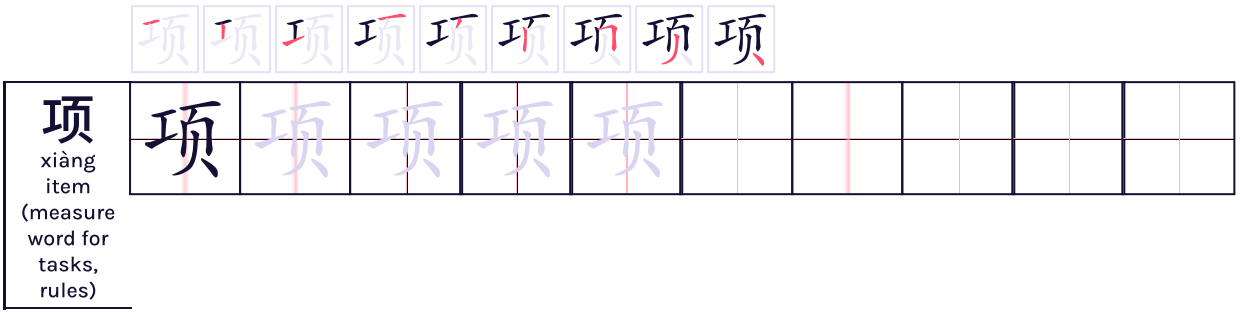
manager chen 当然。这些材料你先打印一下，每个组发一份。
dāngrán zhèxiē cáiliào nǐ xiān dǎyìn yíxià měi gè zǔ fā yí fèn · Of course. Print out these materials first and give one copy to each team.

anna 好！我们组的人每天有说有笑，工作也很认真。
hǎo wǒmen zǔ de rén měi tiān yǒu shuō yǒu xiào gōngzuò yě hěn rènzhēn · Sure! The people in our team are always chatting and laughing, and they work hard too.

manager chen 那就好。大家都表扬你工作认真。别太累了，周末不办公，好好休息。
nà jiù hǎo dàjiā dōu biǎoyáng nǐ gōngzuò rènzhēn bié tài lèi le zhōumò bú bàngōng hǎohǎo xiūxi · Good. Everyone has praised you for working so hard. Don't wear yourself out; the office is closed at the weekend, so get some rest.

write it trace the grey, then write your own





good to know · 进行 is formal and goes before a two-syllable action: 进行讨论, 进行检查. In chat, just use the verb. 加班 is overtime; 出差 is a work trip. In 出差, 差 reads chāi.

Tasks, meetings and printers: you can now find your way around a Chinese office and say who is in charge of what.
Do this day interactively, with audio and games, free at **wishyou.today/learning**

day 61 anna's first month at work

Follow a story about a first month at work, a new job, exam nerves and a study group, using the whole unit.

A mission puts the week's words back together in real conversations, so they stick.

chapter 1 one month in

manager chen 安娜，你来公司一个月了，觉得怎么样？
Ānnà nǐ lái gōngsī yí gè yuè le juéde zěnmeyàng · Anna, you've been with us a month now. How are you finding it?

anna 挺好的。就是任务比较多，有时候要加班。
tǐng hǎo de jiùshì rènwu bǐjiào duō yǒu shíhou yào jiābān · Pretty good. There's just a lot to do, and sometimes I have to work late.

manager chen 谁刚开始工作不忙呢？我第一年天天加班。
shéi gāng kāishǐ gōngzuò bù máng ne wǒ dì yī nián tiān tiān jiābān · Who isn't busy when they've just started? I worked late every day in my first year.

anna 真的吗？那您是怎么积累经验的？
zhēn de ma nà nín shì zěnme jīlěi jīngyàn de · Really? So how did you build up your experience?

manager chen 多做，多问。能学一点是一点。那时候，我的经理还常常批评我做事不仔细呢。
duō zuò duō wèn néng xué yìdiǎn shì yìdiǎn nà shíhou wǒ de jīnglǐ hái chángcháng pīpíng wǒ zuò shì bù zǐxì ne · Do a lot and ask a lot. Every bit you learn counts. Back then my manager was always telling me off for being careless.

anna 我明白了。对了，上周的材料我已经打印好了，每个组一份。打印机又坏了，有几份是复印的。
wǒ míngbai le duì le shàng zhōu de cáiliào wǒ yǐjīng dǎyìn hǎo le měi gè zǔ yí fèn dǎyìnjī yòu huài le yǒu jǐ fèn shì fùyìn de · I see. By the way, I've printed last week's materials, one copy for each team. The printer broke again, so a few are photocopies.

manager chen 没关系。下周我去上海出差，这段时间的工作我都安排好了。周末不办公，你好好休息。
méi guānxi xià zhōu wǒ qù Shànghǎi chūchāi zhè duàn shíjiān de gōngzuò wǒ dōu ānpái hǎo le zhōumò bú bàngōng nǐ hǎohǎo xiūxi · No problem. I'm off to Shanghai on a business trip next week, and I've arranged the work for while I'm away. The office is closed at the weekend, so get some rest.

anna 工厂的那项任务也是我管吗？
gōngchǎng de nà xiàng rènwu yě shì wǒ guǎn ma · Am I in charge of the factory task too?

manager chen 对。上次开会，大家选你为负责人，就是说，大家都相信你。
duì shàng cì kāihuì dàjiā xuǎn nǐ wéi fùzérén jiùshìshuō dàjiā dōu xiāngxìn nǐ · Yes. At the last meeting everyone chose you to lead it, which means they all trust you.

anna 那我明天先去厂里，跟工人们了解一下工作进行得怎么样。
nà wǒ míngtiān xiān qù chǎng lǐ gēn gōngrénmen liǎojiě yíxià gōngzuò jìnxíng de zěnmeyàng · Then tomorrow I'll go to the factory first and find out from the workers how the work is going.

manager chen 很好。在这个过程中，有什么问题就给我打电话。
hěn hǎo zài zhège guòchéng zhōng yǒu shénme wèntí jiù gěi wǒ dǎ diànhuà · Good. If anything comes up along the way, just call me.

anna 好的。我会加强管理，不让您失望。
hǎo de wǒ huì jiāqiáng guǎnlǐ bú ràng nín shīwàng · OK. I'll keep a closer eye on things and won't let you down.

manager chen 你这个月表现得很好。下午开会的时候，我要表扬你工作认真。年底还有奖金呢！
nǐ zhège yuè biǎoxiàn de hěn hǎo xiàwǔ kāihuì de shíhou wǒ yào biǎoyáng nǐ gōngzuò rènzhēn niándǐ hái yǒu jiǎngjīn ne · You've done really well this month. At this afternoon's meeting I'm going to praise you for working so hard. And there's a bonus at the end of the year!

anna 谢谢经理！我会继续努力的。
xièxie jīnglǐ wǒ huì jìxù nǔlì de · Thank you! I'll keep working hard.

chapter 2 xiaoming's good news

xiaoming 安娜，告诉你一个好消息：我找到工作了！
Ānnà gàosu nǐ yí gè hǎo xiāoxi wǒ zhǎo dào gōngzuò le · Anna, I've got good news: I've found a job!

anna 太好了！是哪个单位？
tài hǎo le shì nǎge dānwèi · Brilliant! Where?

xiaoming 就是那家广告公司。他们在招聘市场部门的工作人员，我就去应聘了。
jiùshì nà jiā guǎnggào gōngsī tāmen zài zhāopìn shìchǎng bùmén de gōngzuò rényuán wǒ jiù qù yìngpìn le · That advertising company. They were recruiting staff for the marketing department, so I applied.

anna 面试难不难？
miànshì nán bu nán · Was the interview hard?

xiaoming 一共面试了两次，第一次是笔试，第二次跟经理聊天。我专门准备了一个星期。
yígòng miànshì le liǎng cì dì yī cì shì bǐshì dì èr cì gēn jīnglǐ liáotiān wǒ zhuānmén zhǔnbèi le yí gè xīngqī · There were two rounds: a written test first, then a chat with the manager. I spent a whole week preparing just for it.

anna 我就知道你能够成功！
wǒ jiù zhīdào nǐ nénggòu chénggōng · I knew you could do it!

xiaoming 经理说我的专业基础很好，就是说，没有经验也没关系。那么多毕业生，他们只选了三个。
jīnglǐ shuō wǒ de zhuānyè jīchǔ hěn hǎo jiùshìshuō méiyǒu jīngyàn yě méi guānxi nàme duō bìyèshēng tāmen zhǐ xuǎn le sān gè · The manager said I have a solid grounding in my subject; in other words, my lack of experience doesn't matter. Out of all those graduates, they only picked three.

anna 你读了四年本科，学到的知识终于有用了！
nǐ dú le sì nián běnkē xué dào de zhīshi zhōngyú yǒuyòng le · Four years of your degree, and all that knowledge is finally paying off!

xiaoming 是啊。我本来还想读研究生，可是读硕士的学费太贵了，我又拿不到奖学金。
shì a wǒ běnlái hái xiǎng dú yánjiūshēng kěshì dú shuòshì de xuéfèi tài guì le wǒ yòu ná bu dào jiǎngxuéjīn · Yes. I did think about postgraduate study, but a master's costs so much in fees, and I couldn't get a scholarship.

anna 工作几年以后再读也不晚。工资怎么样？
gōngzuò jǐ nián yǐhòu zài dú yě bù wǎn gōngzī zěnmeyàng · You can always study later, after a few years of work. What's the pay like?

xiaoming 还可以，比我以前打工的时候高多了。这么好的工作，我上哪儿找去？
hái kěyǐ bǐ wǒ yǐqián dǎgōng de shíhou gāo duō le zhème hǎo de gōngzuò wǒ shàng nǎr zhǎo qù · Not bad, much more than I got in my part-time jobs. Where else would I find a job this good?

anna 什么时候开始上班？
shénme shíhou kāishǐ shàngbān · When do you start?

xiaoming 我六月毕业，七月就去上班。我觉得这个职业很适合我。
wǒ liù yuè bìyè qī yuè jiù qù shàngbān wǒ juéde zhège zhíyè hěn shìhé wǒ · I graduate in June and start work in July. I think this line of work really suits me.

chapter 3 a family celebration

ms zhang 安娜，快坐。今天我们给小明庆祝一下！
Ānnà kuài zuò jīntiān wǒmen gěi Xiǎomíng qìngzhù yíxià · Anna, sit down! Today we're celebrating Xiaoming's news.

dr li 小明这几个月不是面试，就是写材料，真辛苦。
Xiǎomíng zhè jǐ gè yuè bú shì miànshì jiùshì xiě cáiliào zhēn xīnkǔ · These past few months Xiaoming has done nothing but interviews and applications. It's been hard work.

anna 妹妹，你的高考准备得怎么样了？
mèimei nǐ de gāokǎo zhǔnbèi de zěnmeyàng le · And how's your gaokao preparation going?

little sister 期中考试的成绩出来了，比上次好！数学的试题特别难，可是每道题我都答了，答案基本上都正确。
qīzhōng kǎoshì de chéngjì chūlái le bǐ shàng cì hǎo shùxué de shìtí tèbié nán kěshì měi dào tí wǒ dōu dá le dáàn jīběnshàng dōu zhèngquè · My midterm results are out. Better than last time! The maths paper was really hard, but I answered every question, and nearly all my answers were right.

ms zhang 老师还表扬她作文写得好呢。
lǎoshī hái biǎoyáng tā zuòwén xiě de hǎo ne · Her teacher even praised her for writing such a good essay.

little sister 可是听力还是不合格，口语也有几个错误。
kěshì tīnglì háishi bù hégé kǒuyǔ yě yǒu jǐ gè cuòwù · But my listening still didn't pass, and I made a few mistakes in speaking.

anna 别着急。拿我来说，我刚学汉语的时候，听力也很差。
bié zháojí ná wǒ lái shuō wǒ gāng xué Hànyǔ de shíhou tīnglì yě hěn chà · Don't worry. Take me: when I first started learning Chinese, my listening was terrible too.

little sister 为了这次考试，我每天阅读一篇文章。期末以前，我还要每天去学校自习。
wèile zhè cì kǎoshì wǒ měi tiān yuèdú yì piān wénzhāng qīmò yǐqián wǒ hái yào měi tiān qù xuéxiào zìxí · To get ready for this exam, I read an article every day. And before the end of term I'll be doing self-study at school every day.

dr li 别太累了。你是为了自己的将来而努力，不是为了我们。
bié tài lèi le nǐ shì wèile zìjǐ de jiānglái ér nǔlì bú shì wèile wǒmen · Don't wear yourself out. You're working hard for your own future, not for us.

little sister 我知道。我明年要报考北京的大学，下个月就要报名了。考生那么多，我真紧张。
wǒ zhīdào wǒ míngnián yào bàokǎo Běijīng de dàxué xià gè yuè jiù yào bàomíng le kǎoshēng nàme duō wǒ zhēn jǐnzhāng · I know. Next year I'm applying to universities in Beijing, and registration is next month. There are so many candidates, I'm really nervous.

anna 你每天先预习，再认真上课，功课也都做完了，谁比你准备得更好呢？
nǐ měi tiān xiān yùxí zài rènzhēn shàngkè gōngkè yě dōu zuò wán le shéi bǐ nǐ zhǔnbèi de gèng hǎo ne · You prepare before every lesson, pay attention in class and finish all your homework. Who could be better prepared than you?

dr li 大家都有好消息，谁不高兴呢？来，我们用果汁干杯！
dàjiā dōu yǒu hǎo xiāoxi shéi bù gāoxìng ne lái wǒmen yòng guǒzhī gānbēi · Everyone has good news. Who wouldn't be happy? Come on, let's raise our juice glasses!

chapter 4 every sentence counts

teacher wang 我先点名……安娜？
wǒ xiān diǎnmíng Ānnà · Let me take the register first... Anna?

anna 到！王老师，下周就考试了，我们今天讨论什么？
dào Wánglǎoshī xià zhōu jiù kǎoshì le wǒmen jīntiān tǎolùn shénme · Here! Teacher Wang, the exam is next week. What are we discussing today?

teacher wang 今天我们小组讨论一下考试的重点。首先，大家要重视语法和词语。
jīntiān wǒmen xiǎozǔ tǎolùn yíxià kǎoshì de zhòngdiǎn shǒuxiān dàjiā yào zhòngshì yǔfǎ hé cíyǔ · Today our group will go over the key points of the exam. First of all, take grammar and vocabulary seriously.

anna 您上次提到，阅读的时候要先判断文章讲的是什么，再看每段的顺序。
nín shàng cì tídào yuèdú de shíhou yào xiān pànduàn wénzhāng jiǎng de shì shénme zài kàn měi duàn de shùnxù · Last time you mentioned that when reading, you should first work out what the text is about, then look at the order of the paragraphs.

teacher wang 对。我来举例说明。例如这篇文章，第一段提出问题，第二段指出原因，最后一段总结。
duì wǒ lái jǔlì shuōmíng lìrú zhè piān wénzhāng dì yī duàn tíchū wèntí dì èr duàn zhǐchū yuányīn zuìhòu yí duàn zǒngjié · Right. Let me give an example. Take this text: the first paragraph raises a question, the second points out the cause, and the last one sums up.

anna 我明白了。那翻译题呢？我总是翻译得不准确。
wǒ míngbai le nà fānyì tí ne wǒ zǒngshì fānyì de bù zhǔnquè · I see. What about the translation questions? My translations are never accurate.

teacher wang 翻译的时候要仔细，别着急。能翻译对一句是一句。
fānyì de shíhou yào zǐxì bié zháojí néng fānyì duì yí jù shì yí jù · Take your time and be careful when you translate. Every sentence you get right counts.

anna 还有，我的普通话还不够流利。
hái yǒu wǒ de pǔtōnghuà hái búgòu liúlì · Also, my Mandarin still isn't fluent enough.

teacher wang 你还记得吗？我收你做学生的时候，你连“你好”都说不清楚。现在你说得多流利啊！
nǐ hái jìde ma wǒ shōu nǐ zuò xuéshēng de shíhou nǐ lián nǐhǎo dōu shuō bu qīngchu xiànzài nǐ shuō de duō liúlì a · Do you remember? When I took you on as my student, you couldn't even say “nǐ hǎo” clearly. Look how fluent you are now!

anna 那是因为您的课程安排得好。课堂上，师生之间也常常交流。
nà shì yīnwèi nín de kèchéng ānpái de hǎo kètáng shàng shīshēng zhījiān yě chángcháng jiāoliú · That's because your course is so well planned. And in class, teacher and students talk with each other all the time.

teacher wang 我做教师这么多年，最重要的经验就是：教学不是老师一个人的事。你们自学的时候，也要多总结。
wǒ zuò jiàoshī zhème duō nián zuì zhòngyào de jīngyàn jiùshì jiàoxué bú shì lǎoshī yí gè rén de shì nǐmen zìxué de shíhou yě yào duō zǒngjié · In all my years as a teacher, the most important thing I've learnt is that teaching isn't just the teacher's job. When you study on your own, keep summing up what you've learnt.

teacher wang 下周开始，我们选安娜当小组负责人，带大家一起预习，好不好？
xià zhōu kāishǐ wǒmen xuǎn Ānnà dāng xiǎozǔ fùzérén dài dàjiā yìqǐ yùxí hǎo bu hǎo · From next week, let's choose Anna as group leader to lead everyone's preparation. What do you say?

anna 我？好吧，我一定不让大家失望！
wǒ hǎo ba wǒ yídìng bú ràng dàjiā shīwàng · Me? All right, I won't let you all down!

From exam nerves to a first job: you can now follow and join real conversations about study and work in Chinese.
Do this day interactively, with audio and games, free at **wishyou.today/learning**

day 62 weather & climate

Talk about weather and climate: temperatures, cold snaps, sunshine, wind and clouds.

Weather is the easiest small talk in any language, and Beijing's winters give you plenty to say.

words

word	pinyin	meaning	example
气候	qìhòu	climate	云南的气候很舒服。 Yunnan's climate is really pleasant.
气温	qìwēn	air temperature	今天的气温比昨天高。 It's warmer today than yesterday.
温度	wēndù	temperature	房间里的温度太低了。 The temperature in the room is too low.
摄氏度	shèshìdù	degrees Celsius	明天最高气温三十五摄氏度。 Tomorrow's high is 35 °C.
零下	língxià	below zero	北京的冬天常常零下十摄氏度。 Beijing winters are often ten below zero.
高温	gāowēn	high temperature, heat	这几天高温，大家要多喝水。 It's very hot these days; drink plenty of water.
低温	dīwēn	low temperature	低温天气，出门要多穿衣服。 In cold weather, wear plenty of layers when you go out.
寒冷	hánlěng	cold, freezing	东北的冬天非常寒冷。 Winters in the north-east are bitterly cold.
暖和	nuǎnhuo	warm; to warm up	屋子里很暖和。 It's nice and warm inside.
降温	jiàngwēn	to get colder (of weather)	明天要降温了，多穿一点儿。 It's turning cold tomorrow; wear something warmer.
降	jiàng	to fall, drop, come down	这几天气温降得很快。 The temperature has dropped fast these past few days.
干	gān	dry	北方的冬天很干{gan1}。 Winters in the north are very dry.
云	yún	cloud	天上一片云也没有。 There isn't a single cloud in the sky.
吹	chuī	to blow	外面风很大，吹得我很冷。 It's really windy out; the wind is making me cold.
阳光	yángguāng	sunshine	今天阳光很好，我们出去走走吧。 It's sunny today; let's go out for a walk.
落	luò	to fall, drop; (of the sun) to set	太阳落山了。 The sun has set.
厚	hòu	thick	今天很冷，穿厚一点儿的衣服吧。 It's cold today; wear something thicker.

低	dī	low; to lower	今天的气温很低。 The temperature is very low today.

pattern 一天比一天冷: more and more, day by day

一 + measure word **比** **一 + measure word** **adjective**

一天比一天 + adjective: each day more than the one before, a steady change. Swap in any measure word: 一年比一年 (year by year), 一次比一次 (each time), 一个比一个 (each one more … than the last).

冬天快到了，天气一天比一天冷。 **dōngtiān kuài dào le tiānqì yì tiān bǐ yì tiān lěng** Winter's nearly here; it's colder every day.

他的口语一次比一次好。 **tā de kǒuyǔ yí cì bǐ yí cì hǎo** His speaking gets better every time.

这几个苹果一个比一个大。 **zhè jǐ gè píngguǒ yí gè bǐ yí gè dà** Each of these apples is bigger than the last.

dialogue the first cold snap

reporter zhou 安娜，早！今天外面风真大。
Ānnà zǎo jīntiān wàimiàn fēng zhēn dà · Morning, Anna! It's really windy out today.

anna 是啊，风吹得我脸都疼了。
shì a fēng chuī de wǒ liǎn dōu téng le · Yes, the wind is so strong my face hurts.

reporter zhou 我刚写完一篇天气新闻：明天最低温度零下五摄氏度。
wǒ gāng xiě wán yì piān tiānqì xīnwén míngtiān zuì dī wēndù líng xià wǔ shèshìdù · I've just finished a weather story: tomorrow's low is minus five degrees.

anna 零下？北京的冬天来得真早！天气一天比一天冷了。
líng xià Běijīng de dōngtiān lái de zhēn zǎo tiānqì yì tiān bǐ yì tiān lěng le · Below zero? Winter comes early in Beijing! It's getting colder by the day.

reporter zhou 说不定后天还会下雪呢。
shuōbùdìng hòutiān hái huì xià xuě ne · It might even snow the day after tomorrow.

anna 我的厚衣服还在老家，怎么办？
wǒ de hòu yīfu hái zài lǎojiā zěnme bàn · My winter clothes are still back home. What do I do?

reporter zhou 别担心，商场里厚衣服有的是。
bié dānxīn shāngchǎng lǐ hòu yīfu yǒudeshì · Don't worry, the shops are full of warm clothes.

anna 那我下班就去买。低温天气，我最怕冷了。
nà wǒ xiàbān jiù qù mǎi dīwēn tiānqì wǒ zuì pà lěng le · Then I'll go and buy some after work. I really can't stand the cold.

reporter zhou 我还挺喜欢冬天的：太阳落山以后，在家喝杯热茶，多舒服！
wǒ hái tǐng xǐhuan dōngtiān de tàiyáng luò shān yǐhòu zài jiā hē bēi rè chá duō shūfu · I quite like winter, actually: once the sun's gone down, a cup of hot tea at home. Lovely!

write it trace the grey, then write your own

云 yún cloud



吹 chuī to blow										

good to know · Forecasts say 摄氏度 (degrees Celsius); in conversation people just say 度: 今天三十度. 天气 is today's weather; 气候 is what a place is like all year round.

Wind, sun, frost and forecasts: you can now make small talk about the weather and say how it's changing day by day.
Do this day interactively, with audio and games, free at **wishyou.today/learning**

day 63 plants & animals

Talk about plants, animals and nature, and use the little written words 等, 者 and 之.

Zoos, parks and the outdoors are favourite weekend plans, and 等, 者 and 之 turn up on every sign and notice.

words

word	pinyin	meaning	example
等	děng	and so on, etc.	动物园里有老虎、熊等{deng3-4}动物。 The zoo has tigers, bears and other animals.
者	zhě	-er, person who (suffix)	他是一个动物爱好者。 He's an animal lover.
植物	zhíwù	plant	我家里有很多植物。 I have lots of plants at home.
叶子	yèzi	leaf	秋天，很多叶子变成了红色。 In autumn lots of leaves turn red.
鲜花	xiānhuā	fresh flowers	我买了一些鲜花送给妈妈。 I bought some flowers for my mum.
树林	shùlín	woods	我们在树林里散步。 We went for a walk in the woods.
森林	sēnlín	forest	森林里有很多动物。 Lots of animals live in the forest.
老虎	lǎohǔ	tiger	老虎是很危险的动物。 Tigers are dangerous animals.
熊	xióng	bear	大熊猫也是一种熊。 The giant panda is a kind of bear too.
生命	shēngmìng	life	每一个生命都很重要。 Every life matters.
活	huó	to live; alive	这棵树已经活了三百多年。 This tree has lived for over three hundred years.
种	zhòng	to plant, grow	我们在院子里种{zhong4}了一棵树。 We planted a tree in the yard.
土	tǔ	soil, earth	这里的土很适合种{zhong4}茶。 The soil here is good for growing tea.
自然	zìrán	nature; natural; naturally	他说汉语说得很自然。 His Chinese sounds very natural.
大自然	dàzìrán	nature, the natural world	周末我们去山里感受大自然。 At the weekend we go to the mountains to enjoy nature.
少见	shǎojiàn	rare, seldom seen	这种鸟在北京很少见。 This bird is rare in Beijing.
多样	duōyàng	varied, diverse	云南的植物非常多样。 Yunnan's plant life is extremely diverse.

pattern 等, 者, 之: little written words

A、B **等** **group word**

等 after a list means “and so on”: 老虎、熊等动物. 者 after a word makes a person: 爱好者, a fan. 之 is a written 的: 之一 (one of), 百分之十 (10%). And 就是了 at the end means “that’s all, don’t worry”: 你放心就是了.

动物园里有老虎、熊、大熊猫等动物。 **dòngwùyuán lǐ yǒu lǎohǔ xióng dàxióngmāo děng dòngwù** The zoo has tigers, bears, giant pandas and other animals.

我妹妹是一个植物爱好者。 **wǒ mèimei shì yí gè zhíwù àihào zhě** My little sister is a plant lover.

大熊猫是中国最有名的动物之一。 **dàxióngmāo shì Zhōngguó zuì yǒumíng de dòngwù zhī yī** The giant panda is one of China’s most famous animals.

我会好好照顾这些花的，你放心就是了。 **wǒ huì hǎohǎo zhàogù zhèxiē huā de nǐ fàngxīn jiùshì le** I’ll look after these flowers properly; don’t you worry.

dialogue a day at the zoo

little sister 快看，那只老虎在睡觉！
kuài kàn nà zhī lǎohǔ zài shuìjiào · Look, that tiger’s asleep!

anna 这里的动物真多样！
zhèlǐ de dòngwù zhēn duōyàng · There’s such a variety of animals here!

little sister 哥哥，大熊猫是不是熊？
gēge dàxióngmāo shì bu shì xióng · Is the giant panda a bear?

xiaoming 嗯……大熊猫不是猫吗？
ǹg dàxióngmāo bú shì māo ma · Um… isn’t it a cat?

little sister 你还大学生呢！大熊猫是一种熊。
nǐ hái dàxuéshēng ne dàxióngmāo shì yì zhǒng xióng · And you call yourself a university student! The giant panda is a kind of bear.

anna 我在书里看到，大熊猫在自然环境中能活二十年左右。
wǒ zài shū lǐ kàn dào dàxióngmāo zài zìrán huánjìng zhōng néng huó èrshí nián zuǒyòu · I read in a book that giant pandas can live about twenty years in the wild.

xiaoming 好吧，我错了。你们看你们的吧，我去给大家买水。
hǎo ba wǒ cuò le nǐmen kàn nǐmen de ba wǒ qù gěi dàjiā mǎi shuǐ · OK, I was wrong. You two carry on looking; I’ll go and get everyone some water.

little sister 等一下！我们还要去那边的树林看看鸟呢。
děng yíxià wǒmen hái yào qù nàbiān de shùlín kàn kan niǎo ne · Wait! We still want to go and look at the birds in the woods over there.

write it trace the grey, then write your own

虎
hǔ
tiger

土
tǔ
soil, earth

good to know · 等 after a list is written style: in conversation people often say 什么的 instead: 老虎、熊什么的. 种 zhòng (4th tone) is “to plant”; 种 zhǒng (3rd) is “kind”. 种一种花 means “plant a kind of flower”.

Tigers, leaves and forests: you can now talk about a day out in nature and read the little words on every sign.
Do this day interactively, with audio and games, free at **wishyou.today/learning**

day 64 our planet

Talk about the environment: the Earth, oceans, rivers, pollution, plastic and saving water.

The environment is a common topic in the news, in essays and in exams, and you can join in with simple, practical ideas.

words

word	pinyin	meaning	example
无	wú	to have no, without (written)	这种饮料无糖。 This drink is sugar-free.
地球	dìqiú	the Earth	地球是我们共同的家。 The Earth is the home we all share.
全球	quánqiú	the whole world; global	全球的气温越来越高。 Temperatures around the world keep rising.
海洋	hǎiyáng	ocean, the seas	地球的大部分是海洋。 Most of the Earth is ocean.
江	jiāng	(big) river	长江是中国最长的河。 The Yangtze is China's longest river.
流	liú	to flow	河水流得很慢。 The river flows slowly.
深	shēn	deep; dark (colour)	这条河很深，不要在这里游泳。 This river is deep; don't swim here.
底	dǐ	bottom	海底有很多美丽的鱼。 There are lots of beautiful fish at the bottom of the sea.
环保	huánbǎo	environmental protection; eco-friendly	坐地铁出门，又快又环保。 Taking the metro is quick and green.
保护	bǎohù	to protect	我们要保护环境。 We need to protect the environment.
污染	wūrǎn	pollution; to pollute	工厂不能污染河水。 Factories must not pollute the river.
塑料	sùliào	plastic	去超市带个包，少用塑料袋。 Take a bag to the supermarket and use fewer plastic bags.
节约	jiéyuē	to save, economise	我们要节约用水。 We should save water.
减少	jiǎnshǎo	to reduce, cut	少开车能减少污染。 Driving less cuts pollution.
远离	yuǎnlí	to keep away from	小孩子要远离危险的地方。 Little children should keep away from dangerous places.
吸	xī	to breathe in, absorb; to smoke	到了山上，我们吸{xi1-4}了一口新鲜空气。 Up on the mountain, we took a breath of fresh air.

烟	yān	smoke; cigarette	这里禁止吸{xi1-4}烟。 No smoking here.
空气	kōngqì	air	下过{guo}雨以后，空气特别新鲜。 After the rain the air is so fresh.

pattern 在……方面: when it comes to … · 无a无b: without a or b

在 | topic | 方面 | ，what about it

在 + topic + 方面 narrows what you're talking about: "when it comes to …, in terms of …". Put it at the start of the sentence, or just before the verb: 他在环保方面做了很多. 无 is a written 没有, and 无A无B means "with no A and no B": 无病无痛 (free of illness and pain), 无法无天 (with no law and no heaven: running wild). 无时无刻不…… is a fixed saying: "at every moment", all the time.

在环保方面，我们每个人都能做一点儿。 zài huánbǎo fāngmiàn wǒmen měi gè rén dōu néng zuò yìdiǎnr When it comes to the environment, every one of us can do something.

在节约用水方面，这个城市做得很好。 zài jiéyuē yòng shuǐ fāngmiàn zhège chéngshì zuò de hěn hǎo When it comes to saving water, this city does well.

他在保护动物方面做了很多工作。 tā zài bǎohù dòngwù fāngmiàn zuò le hěn duō gōngzuò He has done a lot of work on protecting animals.

希望爷爷奶奶无病无痛，身体健康。 xīwàng yéye nǎinai wú bìng wú tòng shēntǐ jiànkāng I hope Grandpa and Grandma stay well, free of illness and pain.

没人管的时候，这些孩子无法无天。 méi rén guǎn de shíhou zhèxiē háizi wúfǎwútiān When nobody is watching them, these kids run wild.

dialogue a story about the sea

anna 周记者，你最近在写什么新闻？
Zhōujìzhě nǐ zuìjìn zài xiě shénme xīnwén · Reporter Zhou, what are you writing about at the moment?

reporter zhou 一篇关于海洋污染的文章。全球每年有很多塑料流到海里。
yì piān guānyú hǎiyáng wūrǎn de wénzhāng quánqiú měi nián yǒu hěn duō sùliào liú dào hǎi lǐ · An article on ocean pollution. Every year, lots of plastic around the world ends up in the sea.

anna 我看过照片，连很深的海底都有塑料袋。
wǒ kàn guo zhàopiàn lián hěn shēn de hǎi dǐ dōu yǒu sùliào dài · I've seen photos: there are plastic bags even at the bottom of the deep sea.

reporter zhou 对。很多塑料是从江河里流进海洋的。
duì hěn duō sùliào shì cóng jiāng hé lǐ liú jìn hǎiyáng de · Right. A lot of the plastic flows into the sea from rivers.

anna 那我们在环保方面能做什么？
nà wǒmen zài huánbǎo fāngmiàn néng zuò shénme · So what can we do for the environment?

reporter zhou 少用塑料，节约用水用电，这些都不难。
shǎo yòng sùliào jiéyuē yòng shuǐ yòng diàn zhèxiē dōu bù nán · Use less plastic, save water and electricity. None of it is hard.

anna 可是我买咖啡的时候总是忘了带杯子。
kěshì wǒ mǎi kāfēi de shíhou zǒngshì wàng le dài bēizi · But I always forget to bring my own cup when I buy coffee.

reporter zhou 忘了就忘了吧，下次记得就行。
wàng le jiù wàng le ba xià cì jìde jiù xíng · If you forget, you forget. Just remember next time.

anna 你看，那个工厂的烟真大！
nǐ kàn nàge gōngchǎng de yān zhēn dà · Look how much smoke that factory is putting out!

reporter zhou 听说那家工厂明年就要搬走了。我们往前走走吧，那边空气好多了。
tīngshuō nà jiā gōngchǎng míngnián jiù yào bān zǒu le wǒmen wǎng qián zǒu zou ba nàbiān kōngqì hǎo duō le · I hear that factory is moving out next year. Let's walk on a bit; the air's much better over there.

anna 太好了！希望这里的人都无病无痛，健康地生活。
tài hǎo le xīwàng zhèlǐ de rén dōu wú bìng wú tòng jiànkāng de shēnghuó · Great! I hope the people here can all live healthy lives, free of illness.

write it trace the grey, then write your own

江
jiāng
(big) river

深
shēn
deep; dark (colour)

good to know · 节 is also a verb meaning "to save": 节水 save water, 节电 save electricity. 节约 is the two-syllable version. 无A无B comes from written Chinese: 无 is a formal 没有. Learn the sets as whole chunks (无病无痛, 无法无天). 无时无刻不..... (with 不!) means "all the time". 绿色 can also mean eco-friendly: 绿色出行 is green travel, by bus, bike or on foot.

You can now talk about the planet in Chinese: what the problem is, and what each of us can do about it.
Do this day interactively, with audio and games, free at **wishyou.today/learning**

day 65 china & the world

Talk about China's geography and people: provinces, regions, ethnic groups and history, and say "there's nothing to worry about".

Knowing where places are, and a little about the people who live there, makes travel plans and conversations much richer.

words

word	pinyin	meaning	example
首都	shǒudū	capital (city)	北京是中国的首都。 Beijing is the capital of China.
省	shěng	province	你是哪个省的人? Which province are you from?
北部	běibù	the north (of a country or area)	北京在中国的北部。 Beijing is in the north of China.
南部	nánbù	the south (of a country or area)	这个省的南部很热。 The south of this province is very hot.
东部	dōngbù	the east (of a country or area)	上海在中国的东部。 Shanghai is in the east of China.
西部	xībù	the west (of a country or area)	中国西部有很多高山。 There are lots of high mountains in western China.
各地	gèdì	all over, every place	春节的时候，全国各地都很热闹。 At Spring Festival, the whole country is buzzing.
亚洲	Yàzhōu	Asia	中国在亚洲的东部。 China is in eastern Asia.
国际	guójì	international	上海有很多国际公司。 Shanghai has lots of international companies.
民族	mínzú	ethnic group; nation	中国有五十六个民族。 China has 56 officially recognised ethnic groups.
少数	shǎoshù	minority, a small number	云南有很多少数民族。 Many ethnic minorities live in Yunnan.
世纪	shìjì	century	这本书是十九世纪写的。 This book was written in the 19th century.
叫作	jiàozuò	to be called, be known as	春节也叫作“过年”。 The Spring Festival is also called “guònián”.
有着	yǒuzhe	to have, possess (written)	中国有着很长的历史。 China has a long history.
之中	zhīzhōng	among, in the middle of	在这些城市之中，我最喜欢杭州。 Of all these cities, I like Hangzhou best.
星星	xīngxing	star	晚上，天上有很多星星。 At night there are lots of stars in the sky.

夜晚	yèwǎn	night	城市的夜晚很热闹。 The city is lively at night.
夜	yè	night	昨天夜里下了一场大雪。 There was heavy snow last night.

pattern 有什么好担心的? nothing to ... about

有什么 (好) verb / adjective 的

有什么（好）+ verb + 的? is a question that means “there’s nothing to ... about”: 有什么好担心的? Nothing to worry about! The plain statement is 没什么（好）X的: 没什么好说的, there’s nothing to say.

坐飞机三个小时就到，有什么好担心的? **zuò fēijī sān gè xiǎoshí jiù dào yǒu shénme hǎo dānxīn de** It’s only a three-hour flight. What’s there to worry about?

这个地方没什么好玩的。 **zhège dìfang méi shénme hǎowán de** There’s not much to do here.

只是下一点儿雨，有什么好怕的? **zhǐ shì xià yìdiǎnr yǔ yǒu shénme hǎo pà de** It’s only a bit of rain. What’s there to be afraid of?

dialogue where shall we go?

xiao liu 安娜，下个月放假，你想去哪儿玩?
Ānnà xià gè yuè fàngjià nǐ xiǎng qù nǎr wán · Anna, there’s a holiday next month. Where do you want to go?

anna 我还没想好。你是导游，你说呢?
wǒ hái méi xiǎng hǎo nǐ shì dǎoyóu nǐ shuō ne · I haven’t decided. You’re the guide. What do you think?

xiao liu 去云南吧！云南省的南部有森林，北部有高山。
qù Yúnnán ba Yúnnán shěng de nánbù yǒu sēnlín běibù yǒu gāo shān · Go to Yunnan! The south of the province has forests, and the north has high mountains.

anna 远是远，可是我早就想去了。
yuǎn shì yuǎn kěshì wǒ zǎo jiù xiǎng qù le · It is far, but I’ve wanted to go for ages.

xiao liu 云南的夜里能看见很多星星。在我去过的地方之中，那里的星星最美。
Yúnnán de yè lǐ néng kànjiàn hěn duō xīngxing zài wǒ qù guo de dìfang zhīzhōng nàlǐ de xīngxing zuì měi · At night in Yunnan you can see so many stars. Of all the places I’ve been, the stars there are the most beautiful.

anna 那里的少数民族都有自己的语言吗?
nàlǐ de shǎoshù mínzú dōu yǒu zìjǐ de yǔyán ma · Do the ethnic minorities there all have their own languages?

xiao liu 很多都有。不过大家都会说普通话，有什么好担心的?
hěn duō dōu yǒu búguò dàjiā dōu huì shuō pǔtōnghuà yǒu shénme hǎo dānxīn de · Many do. But everyone speaks Mandarin too, so what’s there to worry about?

anna 也是。去那里要多长时间?
yě shì qù nàlǐ yào duō cháng shíjiān · True. How long does it take to get there?

xiao liu 上个世纪去云南要坐好几天火车，现在坐飞机三个多小时就到了。
shàng gè shìjì qù Yúnnán yào zuò hǎo jǐ tiān huǒchē xiànzài zuò fēijī sān gè duō xiǎoshí jiù dào le · Last century it took days by train; now it’s just over three hours by plane.

anna 太好了，就这么定了!
tài hǎo le jiù zhème dìng le · Perfect, it’s settled!

write it trace the grey, then write your own



good to know · 夜 is the written word for night: 夜里, 夜晚. In everyday chat, 晚上 is more common. Directions in Chinese go east–west first: 东北 north-east, 西南 south-west. Add 部 for a part of a country: 西南部. In written Chinese, 日 also means “day”: 每日 every day, 日期 date, 日常 everyday. In speech, say 天: 每天.

You can now find your way around the map of China, ask where people are from and talk a friend out of their travel worries.
Do this day interactively, with audio and games, free at **wishyou.today/learning**

wishyou.today learning

day 66 science & discovery

Chinese HSK 4 in 69 days
unit 10 · nature, science & culture

Talk about science and technology: research, discoveries, causes and effects, and how writing began.

Science and technology are in the news every day, and these verbs (cause, produce, appear, stop) help you explain how anything works.

words

word	pinyin	meaning	example
科学	kēxué	science; scientific	我对科学很感兴趣。 I'm very interested in science.
研究	yánjiū	to research, study; research	他在大学研究植物。 He researches plants at a university.
科技	kējì	science and technology	科技让生活更方便了。 Technology has made life more convenient.
产生	chǎnshēng	to produce, give rise to	这个问题是怎么产生的? How did this problem come about?
出现	chūxiàn	to appear, come up	手机出现以后，生活变化很大。 Life changed a lot after mobile phones came along.
发出	fāchū	to give off, send out (sound, light)	电脑发出了奇怪的声音。 The computer made a strange noise.
分为	fēnwéi	to divide into	一年分为四个季节。 A year is divided into four seasons.
到来	dàolái	arrival; to arrive (written)	春天的到来让大家很高兴。 Everyone was happy that spring had come.
起到	qǐdào	to have (an effect), play (a role)	运动对健康起到很大的作用。 Exercise plays a big part in staying healthy.
引起	yǐnqǐ	to cause, give rise to	这个新闻引起了大家的关注。 The news caught everyone's attention.
作用	zuòyòng	effect, role, function	这种药对我没什么作用。 This medicine doesn't do much for me.
停止	tíngzhǐ	to stop	因为下大雨，比赛停止了。 The match was stopped because of heavy rain.
文字	wénzì	writing, script; text	汉字是世界上最老的文字之一。 Chinese characters are one of the oldest scripts in the world.
桥	qiáo	bridge	河上有一座很老的桥。 There's a very old bridge over the river.
性	xìng	-ness, -ity (suffix); nature	大家都明白了环保的重要性。 Everyone now understands how important it is to protect the environment.

pattern 科学是科学，故事是故事: keep them apart

X 是 X，Y 是 Y

You met this on day 52: X是X，Y是Y says two things are separate and shouldn't be mixed up. Today it keeps facts and stories apart, which is exactly what science does.

科学是科学，故事是故事，不能放在一起说。 **kēxué shì kēxué gùshi shì gùshi bù néng fàng zài yìqǐ shuō** Science is science and stories are stories; don't mix them up.

工作是工作，休息是休息。 **gōngzuò shì gōngzuò xiūxi shì xiūxi** Work is work, and rest is rest.

你是你，我是我，我们的想法不一样。 **nǐ shì nǐ wǒ shì wǒ wǒmen de xiǎngfǎ bù yíyàng** You're you and I'm me; we see things differently.

dialogue at the science museum

reporter zhou 安娜，你看，这是最早的汉字，已经有三千多年了。
Ānnà nǐ kàn zhè shì zuì zǎo de Hànzì yǐjīng yǒu sānqiān duō nián le · Look, Anna: these are the earliest Chinese characters. They're over three thousand years old.

anna 真没想到！文字是怎么产生的?
zhēn méi xiǎng dào wénzì shì zěnme chǎnshēng de · Amazing! How did writing come about?

reporter zhou 科学家还在研究。很多人认为，最早的文字是从画开始的。
kēxué jiā hái zài yánjiū hěn duō rén rènwéi zuì zǎo de wénzì shì cóng huà kāishǐ de · Scientists are still studying it. Many think the first writing started as pictures.

anna 我听过一个故事，说汉字是一个人想出来的。
wǒ tīng guo yí gè gùshi shuō Hànzì shì yí gè rén xiǎng chūlái de · I've heard a story that Chinese characters were invented by one man.

reporter zhou 故事是故事，科学是科学。文字是很多人用了很长时间慢慢发展的。
gùshi shì gùshi kēxué shì kēxué wénzì shì hěn duō rén yòng le hěn cháng shíjiān màn màn fāzhǎn de · Stories are stories, and science is science. Writing grew slowly, over a long time, through many people.

anna 那边那座桥是什么？看起来很老。
nàbiān nà zuò qiáo shì shénme kànqǐlai hěn lǎo · What's that bridge over there? It looks really old.

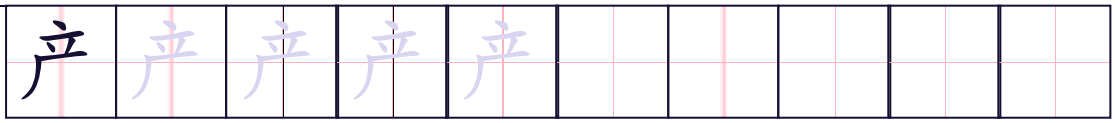
reporter zhou 那是一座一千多年的老桥，到现在还能走。这说明了科学的重要性。
nà shì yí zuò yìqiān duō nián de lǎo qiáo dào xiànzài hái néng zǒu zhè shuōmíng le kēxué de zhòngyào xìng · It's a bridge over a thousand years old, and you can still walk on it. That shows how important science is.

anna 你听，广播发出通知了：五点停止参观。
nǐ tīng guǎngbō fāchū tōngzhī le wǔ diǎn tíngzhǐ cānguān · Listen, there's an announcement: the museum closes to visitors at five.

reporter zhou 还有半个小时，我们快去看最后一个！
hái yǒu bàn gè xiǎoshí wǒmen kuài qù kàn zuìhòu yí gè · We've got half an hour. Quick, let's see the last one!

write it trace the grey, then write your own



产 chǎn produce	



桥
qiáo
bridge

good to know · 起到 almost always goes with 作用 (role) or 效果 (effect): 起到很大的作用, play a big part. 性 turns a word into a quality: 重要性 importance, 安全性 safety. It's like English -ness or -ity.

You can now explain causes and effects, talk about new technology and keep facts and stories apart, in Chinese.
Do this day interactively, with audio and games, free at **wishyou.today/learning**

day 67 a trip to yunnan

Follow a whole trip to Yunnan, from the weather on arrival to forests, villages and starry nights, and look back on the course.

This last mission brings together the unit, and much of the course, in one real journey.

chapter 1 landing in yunnan

xiao liu 欢迎来到云南！这里的气候怎么样?
huānyíng lái dào Yúnnán zhèlǐ de qìhòu zěnmeyàng · Welcome to Yunnan! How do you like the climate?

anna 太舒服了！北京已经零下了，这里还这么暖和。
tài shūfu le Běijīng yǐjīng líng xià le zhèlǐ hái zhème nuǎnhuo · It's wonderful! It's already below zero in Beijing, and it's still so warm here.

xiaoming 我看了一下，现在的气温是20摄氏度。
wǒ kàn le yíxià xiànzài de qìwēn shì shèshìdù · I just checked: it's 20 degrees Celsius right now.

anna 北京最近一天比一天冷。昨天又降温了，最低气温降到了零下八摄氏度。
Běijīng zuìjìn yì tiān bǐ yì tiān lěng zuótiān yòu jiàngwēn le zuì dī qìwēn jiàng dào le líng xià bā shèshìdù · Beijing is getting colder by the day. The temperature dropped again yesterday: the low was minus eight.

xiaoming 北京的冬天又寒冷又干，风吹得脸都疼。
Běijīng de dōngtiān yòu hánlěng yòu gān fēng chuī de liǎn dōu téng · Winter in Beijing is freezing and dry, and the wind makes your face hurt.

xiao liu 云南一年四季都不太冷，夏天也很少有高温天气。不过早晚温度比较低，太阳落山以后，要多穿一件衣服。
Yúnnán yì nián sìjì dōu bú tài lěng xiàtiān yě hěn shǎo yǒu gāowēn tiānqì búguò zǎo wǎn wēndù bǐjiào dī tàiyáng luò shān yǐhòu yào duō chuān yí jiàn yīfu · Yunnan is never very cold, and it rarely gets very hot in summer either. But mornings and evenings are cooler, so once the sun goes down, put on an extra layer.

anna 我带了厚衣服，你放心就是了。
wǒ dài le hòu yīfu nǐ fàngxīn jiùshì le · I've brought warm clothes; don't you worry.

xiaoming 阳光真好，天上一片云也没有。说不定我们回去的时候，北京已经下雪了。
yángguāng zhēn hǎo tiān shàng yí piàn yún yě méiyǒu shuōbùdìng wǒmen huíqù de shíhou Běijīng yǐjīng xià xuě le · Lovely sunshine, and not a cloud in the sky. Who knows, maybe by the time we get back it'll be snowing in Beijing.

anna 那我真不想回去了！跟北京比，这里就像春天一样。
nà wǒ zhēn bù xiǎng huíqù le gēn Běijīng bǐ zhèlǐ jiù xiàng chūntiān yíyàng · Then I really don't want to go back! Compared with Beijing, it's like spring here.

xiaoming 我们先去哪儿?
wǒmen xiān qù nǎr · Where do we go first?

xiao liu 先去酒店放行李，明天去南部的森林。
xiān qù jiǔdiàn fàng xíngli míngtiān qù nánbù de sēnlín · First we drop the bags at the hotel. Tomorrow we're off to the forests in the south.

anna 太好了，我已经开始喜欢云南了！
tài hǎo le wǒ yǐjīng kāishǐ xǐhuan Yúnnán le · Brilliant. I'm already starting to love Yunnan!

chapter 2 in the forest

xiao liu 这片森林里的植物非常多样，有大树、鲜花、小草等，还有很多少见的鸟。
zhè piàn sēnlín lǐ de zhíwù fēicháng duōyàng yǒu dà shù xiānhuā xiǎo cǎo děng hái yǒu hěn duō shǎojiàn de niǎo · The plant life in this forest is incredibly varied: big trees, flowers, grasses and more, and lots of rare birds too.

anna 这些叶子比我的头还大！你们听，树林里的鸟发出的声音真好听。
zhèxiē yèzi bǐ wǒ de tóu hái dà nǐmen tīng shùlín lǐ de niǎo fāchū de shēngyīn zhēn hǎotīng · These leaves are bigger than my head! Listen, the birds in the woods sound lovely.

xiaoming 小刘，这里有老虎吗？有熊吗？
XiǎoLiú zhèlǐ yǒu lǎohǔ ma yǒu xióng ma · Xiao Liu, are there tigers here? Bears?

xiao liu 现在很少见了。为了保护动物，有的地方游客不能进去。
xiànzài hěn shǎojiàn le wèile bǎohù dòngwù yǒude dìfang yóukè bù néng jìnqù · You hardly ever see them now. To protect the animals, visitors can't go into some areas.

anna 在保护大自然方面，云南做了很多工作吧？
zài bǎohù dàzìrán fāngmiàn Yúnnán zuò le hěn duō gōngzuò ba · Yunnan must do a lot when it comes to protecting nature?

xiao liu 对。云南是中国植物最多的地方之一。你们看，这棵大树种在这么少的土里，已经活了几百年了。
duì Yúnnán shì Zhōngguó zhíwù zuì duō de dìfang zhī yī nǐmen kàn zhè kē dà shù zhòng zài zhème shǎo de tǔ lǐ yǐjīng huó le jǐ bǎi nián le · Yes. Yunnan is one of the places in China with the most plants. Look, this big tree has lived for hundreds of years in so little soil.

anna 每一棵树都是一个生命啊。
měi yì kē shù dōu shì yí gè shēngmìng a · Every tree is a life.

xiaoming 我是一个自然爱好者，以后我也要来这儿种树。
wǒ shì yí gè zìrán àihào zhě yǐhòu wǒ yě yào lái zhèr zhòng shù · I love nature. One day I'll come back here and plant trees.

xiao liu 大家都明白了环保的重要性。你们看，这里一个塑料袋都没有。
dàjiā dōu míngbai le huánbǎo de zhòngyào xìng nǐmen kàn zhèlǐ yí gè sùliào dài dōu méiyǒu · Everyone here understands how important the environment is. Look, there isn't a single plastic bag.

xiaoming 空气也够新鲜的！远离城市的烟，真舒服。我要多吸几口。
kōngqì yě gòu xīnxiān de yuǎnlí chéngshì de yān zhēn shūfu wǒ yào duō xī jǐ kǒu · And the air is really fresh! It's great to be away from the city smoke. I'm going to breathe in as much as I can.

anna 回北京以后，我们也要减少用塑料袋，节约用水。
huí Běijīng yǐhòu wǒmen yě yào jiǎnshǎo yòng sùliào dài jiéyuē yòng shuǐ · When we're back in Beijing, we should use fewer plastic bags and save water too.

xiao liu 对。保护地球是全球的事。要是大家都不管，江河和海洋的污染会一天比一天严重。
duì bǎohù dìqiú shì quánqiú de shì yàoshi dàjiā dōu bùguǎn jiāng hé hé hǎiyáng de wūrǎn huì yì tiān bǐ yì tiān yánzhòng · Right. Protecting the Earth is the whole world's job. If nobody cares, the pollution in our rivers and seas will get worse day by day.

chapter 3 a night in the village

xiaoming 这个村子的房子真有特点。
zhège cūn zi de fángzi zhēn yǒu tèdiǎn · The houses in this village are so distinctive.

xiao liu 这些房子是上个世纪留下来的。云南省是中国少数民族最多的省，这里的人有着自己的语言和文化，每年还有很多节日。
zhèxiē fángzi shì shàng gè shìjì liú xialai de Yúnnán shěng shì Zhōngguó shǎoshù mínzú zuì duō de shěng zhèlǐ de rén yǒuzhe zìjǐ de yǔyán hé wénhuà měi nián hái yǒu hěn duō jiérì · These houses are from the last century. Yunnan has more ethnic minorities than any other province, and the people here have their own language and culture, and lots of festivals every year.

anna 他们的文字和汉字一样吗?
tāmen de wénzì hé Hànzì yíyàng ma · Is their writing the same as Chinese characters?

xiao liu 有的民族有自己的文字，有的没有。
yǒude mínzú yǒu zìjǐ de wénzì yǒude méiyǒu · Some ethnic groups have their own script, and some don't.

xiaoming 你看那位老人，听说已经九十多岁了，到现在还无病无痛。
nǐ kàn nà wèi lǎorén tīngshuō yǐjīng jiǔshí duō suì le dào xiànzài hái wú bìng wú tòng · Look at that old man. They say he's over ninety and still fit and healthy.

xiao liu 这里空气好，大家吃得也简单。现在来这儿的不光是全国各地的人，还有很多国际游客，有的从亚洲别的国家来，有的从美国、英国来。
zhèlǐ kōngqì hǎo dàjiā chī de yě jiǎndān xiànzài lái zhèr de bùguāng shì quán guó gèdì de rén hái yǒu hěn duō guójì yóukè yǒude cóng Yàzhōu biéde guójiā lái yǒude cóng Měiguó Yīngguó lái · The air is good here and people eat simply. These days visitors come not just from all over China, but from abroad too: some from elsewhere in Asia, some from the USA and the UK.

anna 我老家在英国的东部，那里的人也很喜欢来中国的西部旅游。啊，你们看，天上出现了好多星星!
wǒ lǎojiā zài Yīngguó de dōngbù nàlǐ de rén yě hěn xǐhuan lái Zhōngguó de xībù lǚyóu a nǐmen kàn tiān shàng chūxiàn le hǎoduō xīngxing · My home town is in the east of England, and people there love travelling in western China too. Oh, look, so many stars have come out!

xiaoming 在北京哪儿有这么多星星？我们的首都太亮了。
zài Běijīng nǎr yǒu zhème duō xīngxing wǒmen de shǒudū tài liàng le · Where in Beijing would you ever see this many stars? Our capital is far too bright.

xiao liu 城市的夜晚太亮了，所以看不到。在我去过的地方之中，这里的夜最安静。
chéngshì de yèwǎn tài liàng le suǒyǐ kàn bu dào zài wǒ qù guo de dìfang zhīzhōng zhèlǐ de yè zuì ānjìng · Cities are too bright at night, so you can't see them. Of all the places I've been, the nights here are the quietest.

anna 我们明天就要回去了，真不想走。
wǒmen míngtiān jiù yào huíqù le zhēn bù xiǎng zǒu · We go back tomorrow. I really don't want to leave.

xiao liu 有什么好难过的？下次我再带你们去北部看雪山!
yǒu shénme hǎo nánguò de xià cì wǒ zài dài nǐmen qù běibù kàn xuě shān · What's there to be sad about? Next time I'll take you north to see the snowy mountains!

chapter 4 back with teacher wang

teacher wang 安娜，云南好玩吗？
Ānnà Yúnnán hǎowán ma · Anna, did you enjoy Yunnan?

anna 太好玩了！我还写了一篇关于这次旅行的作文，分为三个部分：天气、森林和村子。
tài hǎowán le wǒ hái xiě le yì piān guānyú zhè cì lǚxíng de zuòwén fēnwéi sān gè bùfen tiānqì sēnlín hé cūn zi · I loved it! I even wrote an essay about the trip, in three parts: the weather, the forest and the village.

teacher wang 我看了，写得很流利，语法也基本上正确。我最喜欢写森林的那一段，读者看了，也会想去保护大自然。
wǒ kàn le xiě de hěn liúlì yǔfǎ yě jīběnshàng zhèngquè wǒ zuì xǐhuan xiě sēnlín de nà yí duàn dúzhě kàn le yě huì xiǎng qù bǎohù dàzìrán · I've read it. It's very fluent, and the grammar is basically correct. I liked the part about the forest best: anyone who reads it will want to protect nature too.

anna 谢谢！小刘说，科学家一直在研究那里的植物，现在的科技也起到了很大的作用。
xièxie XiǎoLiú shuō kēxué jiā yìzhí zài yánjiū nàlǐ de zhíwù xiànzài de kējì yě qǐdào le hěn dà de zuòyòng · Thank you! Xiao Liu says scientists have been studying the plants there for years, and modern technology has made a big difference too.

teacher wang 是啊。很多环境问题是人引起的，所以我们每个人都要想办法解决。
shì a hěn duō huánjìng wèntí shì rén yǐnqǐ de suǒyǐ wǒmen měi gè rén dōu yào xiǎng bànfǎ jiějué · Yes. A lot of environmental problems are caused by people, so every one of us has to help find a way to solve them.

anna 我们还走过一座很老的桥。在森林里，我觉得时间好像停止了。我还产生了一个想法：以后每年都要找时间去大自然里走走。
wǒmen hái zǒu guo yí zuò hěn lǎo de qiáo zài sēnlín lǐ wǒ juéde shíjiān hǎoxiàng tíngzhǐ le wǒ hái chǎnshēng le yí gè xiǎngfǎ yǐhòu měi nián dōu yào zhǎo shíjiān qù dàzìrán lǐ zǒu zou · We also walked over a very old bridge. In the forest, it felt like time had stopped. And I had an idea: from now on I'll spend time in nature every year.

teacher wang 这个想法不错！作者自己对这篇作文满意吗？
zhège xiǎngfǎ búcuò zuòzhě zìjǐ duì zhè piān zuòwén mǎnyì ma · Great idea! And is the author happy with her essay?

anna 还可以。可是下个月就要考试了，我还是有点儿紧张。
hái kěyǐ kěshì xià gè yuè jiù yào kǎoshì le wǒ háishi yǒudiǎnr jǐnzhāng · More or less. But the exam is next month, and I'm still a bit nervous.

teacher wang 谁考试不紧张呢？你的成绩一天比一天好，上次练习你答对了百分之九十的题。有什么好担心的？
shéi kǎoshì bù jǐnzhāng ne nǐ de chéngjì yì tiān bǐ yì tiān hǎo shàng cìliànxínǐdáduìlebǎifēnzhī jiǔshí de tí yǒu shénme hǎo dānxīn de · Who isn't nervous before an exam? Your results get better every day: last practice you got ninety per cent right. What's there to worry about?

anna 那我回去再复习一遍，能记一个是一个！
nà wǒ huíqù zài fùxí yí biàn néng jì yí gè shì yí gè · Then I'll go home and revise once more. Every word counts!

teacher wang 好！考完以后，我们一起庆祝。新年就要到来了，祝你考出好成绩！
hǎo kǎo wán yǐhòu wǒmen yìqǐ qìngzhù xīnnián jiù yào dàolái le zhù nǐ kǎo chū hǎo chéngjì · Good! After the exam, we'll celebrate together. The new year is almost here: good luck in the exam!

Sixty-seven days, a thousand new words: you can now travel, work, study and share your thoughts in Chinese. Well done!
Do this day interactively, with audio and games, free at **wishyou.today/learning**